Madinah
to
Karbala
Holy Blood on Unholy Hands
Volume One
The Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama‘ah
أهل السنة والجماعة
Chishti Sufi Perspective
Madinah to Karbala
Madinah
to
Karbala
Holy Blood on Unholy Hands
Volume One
The Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama‘ah
أهل السنة والجماعة
Chishti Sufi Perspective
By
Irshad Soofi Siddiqui
Chishti

Abd al-Qadir Soofi Publications
South Africa
© 2010 Abd al-Qadir Soofi Publications
http://www.sufi.co.za
chishti@telkomsa.net
Madinah to Karbala

All Rights Reserved including that of translation into other languages. No part of this book may be re-produced or transmitted into in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photo-copying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Any queries, comments or suggestions may be directed to chishti@telkomsa.net

First Publication
Muharram1432
December 2010

ISBN
978-0-9802682-5-6
Almighty and Glorious
In Your Name Dedicated Most Respectfully
To
The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ
The Cause of Creation and Beloved of Allah ﷺ
The Righteous Caliphs
al-Khulafā’u r-Rāshidūn
The Spiritual Dispensers, Purified under the Blessed Cloak
Ahl al-Kisā’
The Noble Household
Ahl al-Bayt
All the Noble Companions
As-Sahābah
The Saviour of Pure Islam, dearly beloved of the Holy Prophet ﷺ
The Martyrs of Karbala
Who taught the Community of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ not to submit to a tyrant and tyranny and, if need be, to offer one’s life for truth.
My Master
Hazrath Soofie Saheb ﷺ
The Sufi Masters
Of the Qadri, Chishti, Suharwardi and Naqshbandi Sufi Orders
Who have not strayed from the original teachings of Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jamā’ah due to ignorance or religious/political/economic convenience and for the perpetual blessings all the deceased of the Community of Lovers
Especially my grandparents
Hazrath Abd Al-Qaadir Soofi Siddiqui ﷺ
Sayyida Khatun Bibi Soofi ﷺ
My father
Ghulam Muhayuddeen Soofi Siddiqui
And
Mrs. Sabera Bibi Khan of Rustenburg
Daughter of Mr. Ghulam Hussain Nassir
Say (O My Beloved Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ), 'I ask no other reward of you except love of my family'

Say (O My Beloved Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ), 'I ask no other reward of you except love of my family'

[Holy Qur’aan 42nd Sura, ash-Shūrā (the Consultation) Verse 23]

I swear by Him in whose Grasp of Power my life is (Allah ﷻ)! Faith (Imaan) will never enter the hearts of any person who does not love my relatives for the sake of Allah ﷻ and their being my family

I swear by Him in whose Grasp of Power my life is (Allah ﷻ)! Faith (Imaan) will never enter the hearts of any person who does not love my relatives for the sake of Allah ﷻ and their being my family
Dedicated to my beloved Mother and Father who
Descended from two different oceans of spirituality
Yet, showered me with love, despite their separation
To my two sisters, Irma and Sherbanu
And
To my beloved wife Rooksana,
My dearly loved son Kamil Ahmad
And
My adorable daughters, Fatimah Zahra and Rif’at
Khatoon

No one gets to heaven by following the
rules or breaking them.
Heaven must burst forth from your
centre of perception; the sadr صدر
# Madinah to Karbala

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

**SUPPLICATION AND SALUTATION**  15

**INTRODUCTION** 16

**ISLAM** 21

*Abraham the Father of Mankind* 21

Tasked by God to re-build the Sacred Kaaba.............. 21

Three Supplications...................................................... 22

*The Holy Prophet Muhammad 🕌 (570 TO 632 CE)*

.................................................. 26

Conditions in Pre-Islamic Arabia............................... 26

Divine Revelation ......................................................... 27

Knowledge is inborn..................................................... 30

Sincerity....................................................................... 31

Spreading the Message.................................................. 31

Restoring faith in the One God................................. 31

The Holy Qur'aan and the Holy Prophet 🕌 ................... 32

Loving the Messenger and the Message ....................... 33

Divine Alignment ......................................................... 33

Persecution................................................................. 34

Migration....................................................................... 35

Madinah: Religion and Economics............................. 35

Jews and Hypocrites...................................................... 36

Change of Qiblah.......................................................... 37

War and Peace .............................................................. 38

The Conquest of Makkah and Mercy.......................... 38

**CONSTITUTION OF MADINAH** 42

**THE FIRST WRITTEN CONSTITUTION IN THE WORLD** 42

Rights and responsibilities of the Muslim,
Jewish, and pagan communities of Madinah.............. 42

**The Madina Charter: Full Arabic and Translated Text** 43
TOLERANCE OF THE HOLY PROPHET
MUHAMMAD ﷺ ....59
Islam has been misrepresented ........................................ 59
Condemn Extremism .......................................................... 60
Message of the Holy Qur’aan ........................................ 60
No Compulsion in Religion ............................................. 62
A Muslim does not Insult .................................................. 63
Journey to Taif ................................................................... 66
Dua at Taif ........................................................................ 66
Migration to Madinah ....................................................... 67
The only bloodless conquest in history ......................... 68
Sultan Salauddin Ayoubi .................................................... 70
Emulate the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ ....................... 72

JIHAD IN ITS PROPER PERSPECTIVE 73
Literal meaning of the word Islam .................................... 73
Wrong perception of Jihad جہاد in this modern age ............. 73
Jihad in the Holy Qur’aan ............................................... 74
Lawful Defensive war ...................................................... 74
Different Categories of Jihad ........................................... 76
Who can order a defensive war ..................................... 77

THE ASHĀBUS-SUFFA 79
Description ........................................................................ 79
The Benevolent Gaze ...................................................... 80

THE SACRED SANCTUARY 81
Khanqah of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ ................. 81
Preservation of the pure teaching .................................... 85
Non-Muslims adopted these lofty principles ................. 88
Tolerance .......................................................................... 89
Who is a Kaafir ................................................................. 90
Madinah to Karbala

Intolerance in the modern world.................................91
Spiritual Nourishment..................................................93
Simplicity.......................................................................93

THE BLESSING OF SERVING THE HOLY PROPHET MUHAMMAD ﷺ AND HIS HOUSEHOLD ..................................96

Hazrath Anas bin Maalik...............................................96
Five branches of the deen .............................................97
Metaphorical language .................................................103
Comprehension beyond intellect.................................105

SIGNS OF THE END OF DAYS 109

A Slave Woman gives Birth to her Mistress..............109
Muslim Ummah ﷺ gave birth to Europe ..................112
Womb Hire...............................................................113
The Bare-footed Shepherds building high-rise buildings.........................................................114
Salaah has become Ritual Gymnastics ......................115

THE CONFLICT BETWEEN PHILOSOPHIES OF LIFE........118

Glorious Fondations....................................................118
Foundation of Modern Civilization..........................119
The Challenge facing us ...........................................119
Reclaim Knowledge ..................................................120
Beware who you take your deen from .....................121
The Majority is not necessarily right .......................121
The Holy Prophet ﷺ Knew All Languages ..............123
The Spiritual Heartland of Islam ...............................124
Love the Holy Prophet ﷺ more than your self ..........125
Arrogance................................................................126
What is ‘the wisdom ﺍﻟْـِ~
HEALING THE SICK HEART.................................................128

THE HOLY PROPHET ♂ LEADER UNPARALLELED129

WEALTH AND POWER CORRUPTS.................................129

IMAMS or leaders belonging to the Holy Prophet Muhammad ♂’s family .........................130

IGNORANCE AND MATERIALISM........................................130

TRUE TAZKIYAH or Sufism ...............................................131

THE INNER DIMENSION OF THE SUNNAH ..................132

INTELLECTUAL AND POLITICAL TRADITIONS .................133

TAZKIYAH AND ISLAMIC LEADERSHIP ..............................134

THE RIGHTLY GUIDED CALIPHS AND IMAMS OF AHL AL-BAYT138

LEADERSHIP OF THE UMMAH..........................................138

A UNIQUE SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT ..............................139

LEGACY INHERITED BY THE COMPANIONS ..................140

TWO CATEGORIES OF CALIPHATE ........................................140

SPIRITUAL SOVEREIGNITY................................................141

HOLY PROPHET ♂’S SONS PASSED AWAY ..........................145

HOLY PROPHET ♂’S FAMILY LINE CONTINUES through his daughter ..........................147

TWELVE IMAMS .................................................................151

HAZRATH ABU BAKR AS-SIDDIQUE ♂ 162

LINEAGE AND TITLE OF ABU BAKR ♂ ..........................162

EARLY LIFE .................................................................163

ACCEPTANCE OF ISLAM ..................................................164

LIFE AFTER ACCEPTING ISLAM ........................................165

PERSECUTION BY THE QURAYSH .................................166

MIGRATION TO MADINAH ..............................................167

ARRIVAL IN MADINAH ..................................................170

SPENDING FOR ISLAM ....................................................175
Madinah to Karbala

Life in Madinah .......................................................... 177
Merits of the Immigrants and Helpers....................... 180
Status of the Immigrants (Muhaajireen) and the Helpers (Ansaar) .................................................... 181
Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ excels all the muhajireen ........... 183
Passing away of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ ................................................................................. 183
Caliphate..................................................................... 185
Abu Bakr ﷺ Elected as Caliph ................................... 186
Descendants of Abu Bakr ........................................... 188
Asma bint Umais ibn Ma’bad ﷺ 188
Passing away of Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ and his Burial................................................................................ 189
The Burial of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ .......... 190
Three things Abu Bakr ﷺ loved most ......................... 192
Awliya Descending from Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ ................................................................................. 195

HAZRATH UMAR IBN AL-KHATTAB ﷺ 196
Early life ...................................................................... 196
Hazrath Umar ﷺ embraces Islam .............................. 196
Migration to Madinah ................................................ 199
Life in Madinah .......................................................... 199
Title of ‘al-Faruq’ ......................................................... 200
Hazrath Umar ﷺ as Caliph ........................................ 201
Mu'awiyah appointed Governor of Damascus .......... 203
Hazrath Umar ﷺ martyred ........................................... 203
Burial of Hazrath Umar ............................................. 203
Awliya from the lineage of Umar ............................. 206

HAZRATH ‘UTHMĀN IBN ‘AFFĀN ﷺ 207
Life before accepting Islam ................................. 207
Acceptance of Islam ........................................... 207
Migration and life in Madinah ......................... 208
Caliphate of Uthman ................................. 208
Reign as a Caliph (644 CE–656 CE) ........... 209
Public works ..................................................... 209
Economic reforms ........................................... 209
Administration .................................................. 210
Anti-Uthman sentiment .................................. 211
Uthman’s emissaries to the provinces ........... 212
Protest in Madinah .......................................... 214
Armed revolt against Uthman ....................... 214
Rebels in Madinah .......................................... 215
Blockade of Uthman ....................................... 215
Assassination .................................................. 216
The Funeral ...................................................... 217
The Burial ......................................................... 217
Aftermath ......................................................... 217
Awliya from lineage of Uthman ...................... 218

HAZRATH ALI IBN ABU TALIB ............................. 219
Born in the Kaaba ............................................. 219
First of the Forty to Accept Islam Is Hazrath Ali .............................................. 223
Migration to Madinah ..................................... 224
Life in Madinah .............................................. 225
The Marriage of Ali to Fatimah the Bonding of Two Spiritual Oceans ............. 226
Family Life ......................................................... 236
Military Career .................................................. 240
La fattah illa Ali, la saif illa Zulfikaar .......... 241
Madinah to Karbala

The Conqueror of Khyber.........................................................241
Service for Islam...........................................................................244
The Status of Hazrath Ali .........................................................244
Realise the status of loving Hazrath Ali ....................................250
Nabi and Wali...............................................................................252
Hazrath Ali left his salaah for the Holy Prophet Muhammad ........255
Ali and the Rashidun Caliphs.....................................................261
Election as Caliph.........................................................................262
Opposition to Ali .........................................................................262
The clash between Ali and Muawiyah ......................................263
The Battles of Jamal (the Camel) ................................................264
Kufa, the Administrative Capital...............................................268
Rivalry between the Hashimites and the Umayyads .................268
Ali attempts to resolve conflict with Muawiyah peacefully .........269
Battle of Siffin 37 AH/ 657 CE....................................................270
Kharijites (Khawaarij خوارج), literally "Those who Went Out of the fold of Mainstream Islam.........................................................271
The Battle of Nahrawan...............................................................274
Betrayal.......................................................................................275
Ummayyad Rule...........................................................................275

ENDNOTES ..........280
Allah ﷲ' Blessed Name I begin with, the Most Compassionate the Ever Merciful. O Allah ﷲ, send benediction upon Our Master Muhammad ﷺ, his Blessed Family, Noble Companions and Gracious Wives just as You love and You desire for them. Allah ﷲ be praised, Lord of the Worlds, Who has guided us to a faith of boundless compassion and love, Islam! Made us follow the way of His Beloved Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, the single Source of Being, Source of the Intricate Evolution of an ever expanding Universe. May the love dispensed by the Intimates of Allah ﷲ, guide us upon the Path of Return to the Source, transform us into Beacons of Light that guide others, who wander among shadows, back to the Source of Light, the exalted Muhammad ﷺ of Light, upon whom was revealed the Light of Divine Guidance. Light upon Light is the Illumined Qur’aan, May this Light of Guidance stream into every human heart, making it conscious of His living presence in human affairs. So that with every breath we take refuge in The Living Truth alone released from bondage, truly following the First Light, Beloved of Allah ﷲ, Perfect Soul, Moon of Tenderness, Forever Resplendent, Sun of Knowledge, Guide of Guides, the Most Beloved of Allah ﷲ, Muhammad of Light ﷺ.

Kisses of Loving Respect to the hands and feet of all the Holy Prophets of Allah ﷲ; to the Holy Household and the Companions of our Master, Muhammad ﷺ, The Intimates and the Awliya Allah ﷲ, who inherit the spiritual wealth of the Prophets.

Blessings and peace be upon you O Messenger of Allah, Blessings and peace be upon you O Beloved of Allah, Heartfelt and Profound greetings to your Sublime Soul, O Incomparable Prophet and Uniquely Beloved one of Allah ﷲ.

INTRODUCTION

O Allah 🙏 for the sake of the honour the Holy Prophet Muhammad 🙏, the Splendor of Allah 🙏, the Cause of Creation; Hazrath Fatima Zahra 🙏, the Mother of Her Father, the First Pole (Qutb) in Islam, the Imam of her Age, who is the origin (umm) of the Two Divine Lights, Imam al-Hasan 🙏 and Imam al-Husayn 🙏 and the Lion of Allah 🙏 and Door to the City of All-Knowledge, Imam Ali ibn Abi Talib 🙏 I ask You to grant us immense love for the Holy Prophet Muhammad 🙏 and acquaint us with his reality and rank, make us fit to follow him and uphold his manners and his way, join us with him and allow us a vision of him, and encourage us with his conversation free of all hindrances, attachments, means and veils, pleasing our ears with the delights of his addressing us. Prepare us to meet him and make us fit for his service.

Make my request for Your blessings him a perfect and absolutely pure and purified shining light which dispels all darkness and gloom, all doubt and association, all unbelief all falsehood and all iniquity and make it a means of my increasing in sincerity and a way of obtaining the Highest Station of Sincerity and Distinction so that there remains for me no Lord but You and so that I am fit for Your Presence and I am one of Your Distinguished People holding firm to his manners and his way, Allah 🙏’s blessings and peace be upon him, his family, his Companions and all the People of his House at every moment and on every occasion.

My first spiritual teacher, in the sixties and seventies was my paternal grandmother, Sayyida Khatun Bibi Soofie 🙏 who reared me at the Khanqah of my paternal great grandfather Hazrath Soofie Saheb 🙏 in Pietermaritzburg, South Africa. My grandfather Hazrath Abd al-Qaadir Soofie 🙏 passed into the realm of Divine Beauty on 20 Rabi the Second 1359 AH corresponding to 28 May 1940 CE and my grandmother a young widow of twenty-five, granddaughter of Hazrath Sayed Ghulam Rasul 🙏 whose Mazaar is in Hazelmer, Durban, South Africa, assumed the position of the head of the Chishti Nizami Habibi Sufi spiritual order in Pietermaritzburg. She was a true Sufi who served humanity until her last breath. My loving paternal aunts Zohra, Rabia and Fatimah showered me with love after my parents had divorced when I was still an infant. May Allah 🙏 grant them the highest abode in Paradise in the company of His Beloved, Holy Prophet 🙏.

I spent weekends and holidays with my mother who loved me and still does immensely. I love you immensely Mum and always will, for my paradise is at your feet. My mother personifies the Sufi qualities of:
Love all, hate none and hate evil but not the evil-doer.

I was reared in an atmosphere of love and constant commemoration of Meelad un-Nabi, Ur’s Shareef and Remembrance of the Shuhadae Karbala which instilled a great love for The Holy Prophet Muhammad, Ahl al-Bayt, Panj-tan Paak and Aulia Allah in my heart. The beating of the duff (drum) heralded the start of Muharram, the first month of the Islamic New Year, which was always welcomed with sorrow since it rekindled the memory of the Martyrdom of the grandson of the Holy Prophet, Imam Husayn. The ten days of this month ushers in a hive of activity at our Khanqah. To me, the sound of the Dupti and Taasa (drums); the tone of the Majalis being read daily, amidst sobs and cries; the aroma of saffron being used to prepare the niaz, my waiting at the house gate for Ibrahim Bhai to come by and carry me to the centre where the Tazia was being prepared will always be the fondest childhood memories of Muharram.

In Jan 1975 at the age of fifteen I was blessed to perform Hajj with my Grandmother. After Hajj we proceeded to Iraq, visiting amongst others the great Saint of Jilaan. I clearly remember being at the Mazaar of Imam Husayn, in Karbala, on the 10 day of Muharram. The next five months were spent visiting all the great Aulia in Pakistan and India. This had been my grandmother’s second journey to the great ones and this confirmed to me that she was surely loved by them.

With my teen years behind me and as a University student and schoolteacher I had been caught up in the false attraction of the sensate culture coming from the west. My meeting with my Murshid, Hazrath Ghulam Muhayuddin Kazi in 1979 (I had only known him as my uncle previously) rekindled the flame of the Sufi culture of Ishq-o-Adab (love and respect) which had been deeply imprinted, but dormant in my heart. The spiritual awakening had begun.

In 1985, on the bidding of my grandmother; father, Ghulam Muhayuddin; and uncle, Ghulam Muhammad; I returned to the Khanqah in Pietermaritzburg, at the age of 26. Through the loving guidance of my elders I was humbled to be became an active servant in the functioning of the Khanqah. In the same year I became Mureed of my loving Uncle Hazrath Ghulam Muhayuddin Kazi, who accepted me as his disciple after six long years of attachment. Under the guidance of my Shaykh, elders of my family and my cousin, Maulana Abd ur-Raouf Soofie, I began studying the classics of Sufism. The writings and speeches Hazrath Maulana Fazl-ur Rahman Ansari had a great impact on my thinking. I still seek guidance from his son-in-law and disciple Maulana Imran Nazar Hosein.

In 1986 I married Rooksana Bibi the daughter of my paternal Aunt Fatimah Bibi. My aunt was a great lover of Aulia and Panjattan Paak and this love brushed onto my wife. She today lovingly serves at the Khanqah. Allah, through the intercession of Baba
Madinah to Karbala

Fariduddin Ganje Shakar, blessed us with three beautiful children; a son, Kamil Ahmad and two daughters; Fatimah Zahra and Rif'at Khatoon. The remembrance ceremonies continue up till this day at our Khanqah, under the guidance of my paternal uncle, Hazrath Ghulam Muhammad Soofie. Muhammad Habib Batwa Ismail (Jaap Mamoo) and Ghulam Husayn Adam (Ghulam Bhai), the relatives of the late Ibrahim Bhai still lovingly prepare the Tazia, Alhamdulillah my children are being reared in this beautiful Khanqah of Hazrath Soofie Saheb.

Seeing many people adopting external Islam devoid of love, under the impact of Wahabism, made me determined to attempt to kindle the fire of love in people's hearts. It is with this in mind that I wrote my first book *Islam the Sunni Way*; then the concise version of *Madinah to Karbala*, thereafter the lectures of Maulana Shafi Okarvi translated from the Urdu recordings into English in a book named *Discourses of Love*. In 2010 I wrote ‘Attack on the Spiritual Heart of Islam’. I now present to you the revised comprehensive version of *Madinah to Karbala*, in two volumes after eight years, hopefully wiser and able to present it with more research. The first volume, covers the period from the Holy Prophet Muhammad to the Caliphate of Hazrath Ali whilst the second volume covers from Imam Hasan to Karbala and beyond. Some people, under the impact of present day Protestant Islam, disguised in the garb of Salafi, do not accept the authenticity of a hadith unless it is accepted by particular scholars. Therefore, I have taken Ahadith from the Sihah Sittah which, ironically, are also in original books of Hadith, which the present day Wahabis and Salafis dismiss as unauthentic. Imam Ibn Qudamah was a noted Islamic scholar of the Hanbali Madhhab, author of many treatises of Hanbali jurisprudence and doctrine, including *al-Mughni* (the most widely known textbook of *Hanbali fiqh* and *Al-Ruqqah wal-Bukaa* (a treatise on Sufism). He met Shaykh Abd al-Qaadir Jilaani stayed at his school, learned from him, became his murid and was granted the khirqa of Khilafat from him. Readers will be surprised to know that he is the grand-Shaykh of Hafiz Taqi ad-Din Ahmad ibn Taymiyyah, the guru of the Yahudi’s sorry Saudis.

The Caliphate was abolished on the 3 March1924 / 27 Rajab 1342 due to a Euro / Zionist plot. This had paved the way for the Spiritual Heartland of Islam, Makkah and Madinah, under Abd al-Aziz ibn Saud, to be transformed into the Monarchy of Saudi Arabia under the protection of an unholy ‘predatory elite’ alliance of the Euro/Zionist’s and Saudi’s. Only those scholars who were prepared to skilfully skip and dance to the tunes of those who control power were allowed the unfettered...
freedom to preach a sanitized cosmetic version of Islam acceptable to the godless rulers of the world and their ‘so-called’ spiritual voice, the ‘house-Ulama’. Ulama and Muftis emerged from the Islamic Institutions built with petro-dollars, declaring all who did not follow this sanitized cosmetic version of Islam as being out of the pale of Islam. Islamic books, including classical texts were manipulated and changed. Books reprinted in later editions have certain important issues related to the basic faith of Islam removed from it with the help of publishing houses which where purchased by the Saudi Regime. Many innocent students, very sincerely wanting to study in the Spiritual Heartland of Islam didn’t even realize that their Islamic books had been changed, and teachings with a deep spiritual bearing, the essence of Islam, had been removed with the help of modern computers and printing technology.

The spiritual virus has been released into the Muslim World. This has led to families being split, communities being at loggerheads with one another and division in the community of unison. Those who should have waged a jihad against an interest-centred economy and a caliph-less Muslim world were tricked into waging an obnoxious jihad against the belief system of Islam. Some Muslims as a result of their intellectual perversion have ceased to live soulfully i.e. from within. The present moment is one of the greatest crises in the history of Islam. My purpose for writing this book is a humble attempt to firstly enlighten my immediate family, which has also been infected with this virus and my brothers and sisters in Islam. It is my obligation to identify the truth and lovingly pray for the victim's salvation.

I am eternally grateful to my Spiritual Guide, Hazrat Ghulam Muhayudddeen Kazi Chishti Nizami Soofie for clasping the hand of this unworthy lowly slave of his, with his blessed hand, fixing his spiritual gaze upon the spark of love in my heart, setting it ablaze with the exquisite Wine of Love and placing me in the radiant circle of eternal Divine Remembrance formed by the highest companions of love. It is through my Spiritual Guides spiritual gaze that I was blessed to sit in the company of great spiritual luminaries and learn from them. Whatever bounties come to a Murid comes from his own guide.

I remain eternally grateful to Dr Maulana Fazlur Rahman Ansari al-Qadri, whose taught provoking lectures, answered questions knocking on the door of my intellect, thereby setting me on the path of researching, for the pleasure of Allah. Allah indeed blessed me to meet with, Dr Maulana Fazlur Rahman Ansari al-Qadri’s finest product, in my opinion, Shaykh Imran Nazar Hosein, who taught me the importance of seeing with both eyes. For the bulk of my material utilised in the opening chapters of this book I acknowledge Shaykh Hamza Yusuf, whose lectures, shaped my trend of thought, I acknowledge using some of his words, as is, due to the paucity of my language skills. I am forever indebted to Shaykh al-Islam Maulana Shafi Okarvi al-Qadri, Shaykh al-Islam Sayyid Muhammad Madni Ashrafi al-Jilaani, and all
Madinah to Karbala

the Ulama and Spiritual Guides of the Ahle as-Sunnah wa'l-Jam'ah for their guidance and knowledge in keeping us under the blessed feet of those who truly possess the intense love of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Shaykh al-Islam Dr. Maulana Muhammad Tahir al-Qadri, has taken researching and presentation of Islam in its original purity and as an upholder of Dynamic Orthodoxy, as opposed to conservatism and Modernism to another level. I am grateful to him for his research sites and well researched lectures that inspire me to write.

My beloved cousin, and the son of my Spiritual Guide, Raashid Kazi’s cover design reflects his passion, love and inner beauty. My nephews Hafiz Fuzail Soofie and Maulana Farouk Soofie I am profoundly grateful for your guidance, from your wealth of knowledge. My spiritual brother, Naem Khan Sabri, I pray Allah ﻪIGATION to bless you with even more ishq to continue serving the Khwajagaan, for always spiritually nourishing me with valuable gems of the Spiritual Masters. Imtiaz Ahmad Khan of Rustenburg may Allah ﻪIGATION grant your mother Sabera Bibi Khan the highest abode in Jannah in the company of the Sayyid Family of the Chishti Nizami Edroosi Sufi Order with their noble ancestor Hazrath Imam Husayn ﷺ.

Allah ﻪIGATION accept my efforts! I pray the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ be pleased with me and make me loved by the Khwajagaan (Great Sufi Masters). I pray that the benefit received from this book serve as esale sawaab for my father Ghulam Muhayuddin Soofie who passed away on the 26th March 2008/ 17th Rabi al-Awwal 1429. I am not worthy to write or preach but it is the ‘pangs of love’ (dard) in me, through the Khwajagaan that writes. This unworthy servant has received the khilafath of the Chishti Nizami Sufi Order from my Murshid, Hazrath Ghulam Muhayuddin Qazi Chishti Nizami Habibi Soofie, and the khilafath of the Chishti Sabri Sufi Order from Hazrath Maulana Sufi Iqram Sabri ﷺ of Kalyar Shareef. This is not my work but a transmission from my Murshid, Hazrath Ghulam Muhayuddin Qazi Chishti Nizami Habibi Soofie. All praise is due to Allah ﻪIGATION and all shortcomings are mine. Irshad Soofi Siddiqui

10th Muharram 1432
16th December 2010
ABRAHAM THE FATHER OF MANKIND

Prophet Abraham [Hazrath Ibrahim ﷺ] the spiritual father of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam is the only Prophet, who along with the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is mentioned by name in each of the five daily prayers that Muslims perform, facing the Holy Kaaba in Makkah.

Tasked by God to re-build the Sacred Kaaba

At the sacred ground in Makkah, Hazrath Ibrahim ﷺ who is accompanied by his son Prophet Ishmael [Hazrath Ismail ﷺ] was given the order by Allah ﷻ to rebuild the Holy Kaaba, a cube-shaped building in Makkah, Arabia, the most sacred site in Islam. The Kaaba is astronomically aligned to the star Suhail. Suhail is called Canopus⁸. It’s in the constellation of Carina. Astronauts don’t use the North Star when they go out of the Earth’s orbit they use Suhail. [It is used by NASA as a marker for setting space-flight coordinates. Spacecraft carry devices called Canopus star trackers’.] They use it to ensure that they are on course when they get out into the heaven. Allah ﷻ was setting the co-ordinates for an erring mankind to re-connect with Him. The Kaaba is a sacred place; it’s a sanctuary. It’s called al-Haram. Haram means ‘sanctuary’. It was the first building ever built on earth by the first man and Prophet Adam ﷺ wherein he resided and prayed to God. It’s foundations had been covered after the flood during the period of the Prophet Noah [Hazrath Nuh ﷺ] When they began the task they prayed as mentioned in the Holy Qur’aan in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) verse 127:

وَأَذِّ يَرَفَعُ إِبْرَاهِيمُ القَوَاعِدَ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ وَإِسْمَاعِيلُ رَبَّنَا تَعَلَّمْ مِنْهَا

إِنَّكَ أَنتَ السَّمِيعُ الْعَلِيمُ

And when Ibrahim ﷺ and Ismail ﷺ were raising the foundations of the Sacred House (they supplicated):

‘O our Sustainer! Accept this (humble service) from us. You are, indeed, All-Hearing, All-Knowing’.
Madinah to Karbala

Three Supplications

They stood on a rock, utilizing it as scaffolding to raise the walls whilst praying to Allah ﷺ to accept their service. They made three invocations (duas) to Allah ﷺ as mentioned in the Holy Qur’aan in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) verse 128:

وَأَجْعَلْنَا مُسْلِمِيْنَ لَكَ وَمِن ذَرِّيَّتِنَا أُمَّةً مُسْلِمَةً لَكَ

O our Sustainer! Make both of us submissive to You and raise out of our future generations (offspring) a Community (Ummah) exclusively surrendering to You

They had heard that a ‘community submitted to Allah ﷺ’, (أمّة مُسْلَٰتة) would be born in a later age, whose excellence would excel all previous communities. When Allah ﷺ asked them what reward they desired for this service they prayed that this community should be from their family. Allah ﷺ accepted this plea of theirs. They further asked Allah ﷺ to make that personality through whom that ummate Muslima would be granted the highest status, and in whose honour this Kaaba is being rebuilt; for whom the universe was created; whose coming was mentioned by every prophet, that seal of the Prophets, the greatest creation of Allah ﷺ, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ must be born in their family.

These questions and answers are not in books, it is a means of explaining and some questions are part of our ‘ecstatic state of being’ (wijdania khayfiat) and are not in any books. Allah ﷺ must have asked them:

You are also blessed as prophets so why do you desire that the last prophet be from your progeny?

Ibrahim ﷺ must have answered that:

I wish for him to be from my family so that on the Day of Judgment, I may be called the ‘Grand Father of Muhammad’. You have granted me a great status and much excellence but this honour, of being addressed as, ‘Grand Father of Muhammad’, will outweigh all others.
So they are supplicating whilst raising the walls of the Sacred Kaaba standing on the rock, as mentioned in the Holy Qur’aan in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) verse 129:

ربّنا وآبٌعث فيهم رسلُك منهم يتلو عليهم آياتك ويعلِمُهم الكتبة والحكمَة ويزكيهم

O our Sustainer! Raise up from the midst of our offspring the (Last and the Exalted) Messenger (i.e. Muhammad ﷺ), who shall convey to them Your Message, and teach them the Book and wisdom (logic and good judgment, making them Gnostics of the Divine Secret) and purify and sanctify well (their hearts and ill-commanding selves).

Whilst they were making this supplication that the Beloved of Allah be born in their family then Allah ﷻ spoke to the rock, saying:

O fortunate rock, your lot in life has been enhanced; these are the moments of Divine Acceptance. My Intimate Prophet, The Intimate (Khalil) of Allah ﷻ, Ibrahim ﷻ is standing on you asking that My Beloved Prophet, The Habib of Allah ﷻ, Muhammad ﷺ, be born from his progeny; so preserve this Moment for eternity, by becoming soft like wax and retain the footprints of Hazrath Ibrahim ﷺ on your being, so that your Temporal Originated Existence (al-wujud al-hadith) may be transformed into Eternal Existence (al-wujud al-qadim).

That stone on which the remembrance of the Holy Prophet ﷺ takes place becomes wax due to the descent of Divine Mercy (rahmah). For all time, those who see the blessed footprint think about Hazrath Ibrahim ﷺ but those who know this inner secret think of the blessed supplication for the blessed birth of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ to be from his progeny.

ربّنا وآبٌعث فيهم رسلُك منهم

O Our Lord! Raise up from among them (our family) the (Last and the Exalted) Messenger (i.e. Muhammad ﷺ)

The place where the supplication for the Birth of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, was performed, was preserved on the rock and Allah ﷻ protected and preserved this rock together with the Holy Kaaba. Those
Madinah to Karbala

who circumbulate of the House of Allah ﷺ (Tawaaf) complete their tawaaf by reading two cycles of salaah at the Station of Abraham. During the physical term of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ when he took all the stone figures of the idolaters out of the Holy Kaaba and its precincts, he retained the Station of Abraham. All other stones and rocks of worship constituted shirk but the rock that was the Sign of his Ministry (Risaalat) was retained. Allah ﷺ says in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) verse 125:

واَتْحَدَّوْاً مِّن مَّيْقَامِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ مُصْلِّي

Make the place where Ibrahim ﷺ (Abraham) stood as a place of Prayer.

The seekers of knowledge will know that مَّيْقَامُ مَّائَامَ means, the ‘place of standing’ and Allah ﷺ orders that spot where Ibrahim ﷺ stood to be the spot where one must prostrate or make sajda for Allah ﷺ. Sajda is exclusively for Allah ﷺ but it has greater merit at the blessed ‘place of standing’ of His beloveds. There is also another rock preserved on the Kaaba which was also retained to be kissed and revered. Hazrath Umar Faruq ﷺ addressing this stone during Hajj said:

آَنْهُ جَاءَ إِلَى الْحَجْرِ الْأَسْوُدَ فَقَبَلَهُ فَقَالَ إِنِّي أَعْلَمُ أَنَّكَ حَجْرٌ

لَا تَضْرُّ وَلَا تَنْفَعُ وَلَوْلَا أَنَّي رَايْتُ الْبَيْنَيِّ صَلِّي اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ

وَسَلِمْ يُقِبْلَكَ مَا فَتَّلِكَ

Narrated Abis bin Rabia ﷺ: Umar came near the Black Stone and kissed it and said:

‘No doubt, I know that you are a stone and can neither benefit anyone nor harm anyone. Had I not seen the Holy Prophet ﷺ (my beloved) kissing you I would not have kissed you.’

[Sahih Bukhari, Vol 2, The Book of Hajj, Chapter 50, Page 385, Hadith Number 1597]

Hazrath Umar ﷺ said, ‘if I had not seen’ the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ ‘s blessed lips kissing you I would not have kissed you. Hazrath Umar ﷺ said he saw the Holy Prophet ﷺ kiss the stone but Allah ﷺ knows the reality whether the Holy Prophet ﷺ kissed the black
stone or if the stone kissed the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Hazrath Halima Saadia ﷺ says that when she took the blessed infant Holy Prophet ﷺ from the lap of his mother, Hazrath Amina ﷺ to nurse him in the countryside, she decided to first make tawaf and then leave for home. She says she carried the infant Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in her lap and performed the tawaf and when she went to kiss The Black Stone (الحجر الأسود) she also put the infant Holy Prophet ﷺ blessed lips near the Black Stone and she reports:

I swear by the Lord, in whose hands is my life, as I took his blessed lips close to the al-Hajar-ul-Aswad it came out of its embedded place from the Holy Kaaba and kissed the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ

Qadi Thanaullah Panipati⁹ (d. 1225 AH) a great muhaqqiq (verifier), commentator of the Holy Qur’aan and renowned author of Tafsir al-Mazhari, has related this incident in Tafsir al-Mazhari.

All these stones carry blessings and are revered due to a link (nisbah) with Allah’s blessed Prophets or servants. One gushed out water due to connection with the feet of Hazrath Ismail ﷺ and the area between two Mountains, Safa and Marwa, became blessed due to being the place where the blessed feet of Hazrath Hajra ﷺ walked.

So two supplications were made; firstly that the ‘blessed community’, the ‘community submitted to Allah ﷺ’ be from their progeny; secondly, that personality through whom that ‘community submitted to Allah ﷺ’ would be granted the highest status, the seal of the Prophets, the greatest creation of Allah ﷺ, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ must be born in their family. The third dua was accepted when Allah ﷺ announced His being pleased with Hazrath Ibrahim ﷺ and said that as a further reward as mentioned in the Holy Qur’aan in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) verse 124:

إِنَّمَا يَجَّالِيكُ لِلنَّاسِ إِمَامًا

Behold I shall make you the leader (Imam) of mankind.

The Ibrahim ﷺ made the third supplication for his progeny:
Madinah to Karbala

[O Allah] will you [grant leadership (Imamate) to my offspring as well?}

Allah then answered:

I will, but not to those who transgress (only those who follow on your path)

One supplication was for Prophethood (Nabuwwat) whilst the other was for Spiritual Leadership (Imamat). The last stages of Prophethood had come after all prophets had come from the children of Hazrath Ibrahim’s son Hazrath Ishaq whilst the last prophet came from Hazrath Ishmael. So the fulfilment of the third supplication remained. That Spiritual Leaders (Imams) should be born in Hazrath Ibrahim’s family. The door of Prophethood was closed with the advent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, but the Divine Effusion (fayz) of Prophethood (nabuwwah) and Messengership (risaalah) had to flow into the universe via Spiritual Leadership. This we will discuss as the book progresses.

THE HOLY PROPHET MUHAMMAD (570 TO 632 CE)

Conditions in Pre-Islamic Arabia

Arab society had lost its old tribal values, of taking care of the weaker members of their tribe. The rich had been consumed by greed, and were intent on enriching themselves by any means, fair or foul. The tribe of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, the Quraysh, had become powerful and the most dominant due to their wealth. He belonged to the Banu Hashim, the most prominent family of the tribe. The city of Makkah had become the commercial hub of Arabia. Exploitation had reached a peak. The tribes fought against each other, for years, and eventually forgot what they were fighting for. They were in a state of ignorance. Although they knew about Christianity and Judaism which were practiced by the Byzantine and Persian Empires they persisted in the worship of pagan
idols. The Divine Model of a monotheistic faith no more existed. The Jews had come to Arabia to seek an asylum from the persecution of the Romans; the Christians had also come there in order to escape the massacres perpetrated by the Nestorian, Eutychianism and Arian opposition. It is not easy to picture anything more terrible than the condition of Christianity at this time. The scattered branches of the Christian Church in Asia and Africa were in conflict with each other, and had deviated, from the Divine Truth. They were engaged in continuous controversies and torn to pieces by the disputes. Ignorance had replaced the place of the simple worship instituted by the great Messenger of God, Jesus— that of an All-wise, Almighty, and all-Beneficent Being, without equal and without similitude. At the time of Holy Prophet Muhammad’s arrival the Christians and Jews had abandoned the principles of their religion to indulge in never-ending wrangling upon dogmas of a secondary importance, and the Arabian people could not see that they had lost sight of the most essential point of the religious doctrine—the pure and true worship of God. This ugly situation has emerged because Judaism, from where true Christianity took a continuation, lost the Message of God preached and taught by the Jewish Prophets, in respect of its original purity. What remained was a tainted and corrupted form of religious teaching and incorrect history, and on that Judaism has been fed ever since.

Divine Revelation

There were intelligent people who realised that they were in a state of loss. The Holy Prophet Muhammad was disturbed by the state of affairs. Being orphaned at birth, he was caring of the poor and the needy, the widow and the orphan, the slave and the exploited. At twenty he was already a successful businessman, and soon became director of camel caravans for a wealthy widow, Hazrath Khadijah Al-Kubra. When he reached twenty-five, his employer, recognizing his talent proposed marriage. She was fifteen years older yet he married her. In his forties he had a loving wife, children and wealth. Any selfish man would be satisfied with his life, but had other ideals than material ambition. He was one of those who God had appointed to be sincere. This great soul could see the reality of the situation amidst illusion. His soul, which in reality is the soul of the universe, wherein God’s inspiration resided, was preparing
him for his mission, his innermost being asking was asking: What is life? What is death? What am I to believe? What am I to do? He had two of the most important characteristics of the prophetic order. He saw truth about God which his society did not see and he had an irresistible inward calling to establish this truth. He occasionally went to the Cave of Hira, on the Mount of Light, to contemplate. Who can doubt the sincerity of that search after truth and the living God, that drove the affluent merchant from his comfortable home and family, to spend months at a time in the gloomy cave of Mount Hira? Then he experienced, a presence, the Archangel Gabriel ـالله صلى الله عليه وسلم، who embraced him firmly and the first few words of the Last and Final revelation, the Holy Qur’aan was uttered by his blessed mouth; the first word, being the first word of the 96th Sura, al-‘Alaq (the Attached mass); ـئآرآ ‘Iqraa’. Due to the scantiness of the English language as compared to Arabic ـئآرآ ‘Iqraa’ would mean ‘proclaim’ or ‘make known’. Education in the form of Divine Guidance was needed to lead mankind back to morality and Godliness. This knowledge was already in this great soul and what God was doing through the means of Archangel Gabriel ـالله صلى الله عليه وسلم, was ‘activating’ or ‘bringing out’ what was already stored in that great soul. The word education comes from the Latin educere meaning ‘to lead out of’ or ‘to bring out of’. In this light let’s examine the first five verses revealed:

أَقُرِّهِ بِنَامِسِ رَبِّكَ الَّذِي خَلَقَهُ

Proclaim! [The truth which is in you] In the Name of Allah ـ عَلَهُمَا، Who has created (everything).

خَلَقَ الْإِنسَانَ مِنْ عَلَقٍ

Allah ـ عَلَهُمَا created man to be attached (to you) and The Truth within you.

أَقُرِّهِ وَرَبِّكَ اَلْأَكْرَمُ

Proclaim (the Truth) for Your Lord’s generosity to an erring mankind is your being

‘Iqraa’ is derived from the verb ـئآرآ (qa-ra-a) ـئآرآ (qa) ـئآرآ (ra) ـئآرآ (alif). According to dictionaries, this ‘root word’ ـئآرآ (qa-ra-a) means; to put
something together piece by piece; and part by part and one of the derivatives from the root; *muqre-tun* means ‘a pregnant woman’. Thus the essence of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was impregnated with a message/proclamation from Allah ﷺ.

Thus the essence of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was impregnated with a message/proclamation from Allah ﷺ.

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said as recorded by Hazrath Imam al-Hafidh Abi Bakrin Abdi’r-Razzaq ibn Husam as-San’ani (126 AH - 211 AH)\(^{15}\) the teacher of Imam Bukhari ﷺ, in his book *al-Musannaf* narrates a Hadith Shareef, narrated by Hazrath Jaabir bin Abdullah ﷺ in which the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is reported to have stated:

O Jaabir! Most certainly Allah ﷺ created the *Nur* (Light) of your *Nabi* before anything else. Then, when He decided to create the world, He divided the *Nur* (light) of your *Nabi* ﷺ into four portions. From the first portion, He created the *Qalam* [The Divine Pen that records on the *lauh al-mahfuz*] of destiny, from the second, the *lauh al-mahfuz* and the third He subdivided into Divine Portions. From the first of these portions, He created those Angels who are the bearers of the *Arsh* [The Divine Throne of Allah ﷺ] from the second, the Divine Chair [The *Kursi*, which is mentioned in the
Madinah to Karbala

famous *Ayatul-Kursi* and from the third, the rest of the Angels etc... (So a portion remains for an ever evolving universe)

This means; the *Qalam* [The Divine Pen that records on the *lauh al-mahfuz*] and The Inscribed Guarded Tablet *lauh al-mahfuz*₁₆ are all one; i.e. the Muhammadan Reality [Al-Haqiqat al-Muhammadiyya]₁₇.

The verses of the 96th Sura, *al-'Alaq* اَلْعَلَاقَ (the Attached mass) continues:

\[
\text{اَلْعَلَاقَ المُّهَٰشِمَةَ مَا لَمْ يَعْلَمَ}
\]

Who (has already) taught man which he (man) is unaware of.

(Sura 92, al-Alaq, verse 5) means Allah ☪ has already imprinted in the human being knowledge.

Stilling time’s unyielding wheel with love’s art,
Eternal Beloved, your name is held hid in my heart...
[Vladimir Sergeyevich Solovyov]

**Knowledge is inborn**

Therefore knowledge in reality is recollection. It’s actually memory. Therefore the Holy Qur’aan is called *dhikr*, ‘the remembrance’- because what you are doing is remembering what was already put in you. These words had their immediate source in the inner reality of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, since he lived in constant harmony with this reality. The soul (*ruh*) or ‘essential being’ is that centre within man which is attracted and drawn back to its source, Allah ☪. The *ruh* endeavours to pull the ‘essential being’ (*qalb*) towards Allah ☪, whilst the lower self (*nafs*) exerts a downward pull on the heart. The human spirit (*ruh*) is also Allah ☪’s Spirit because Allah ☪ breathed His Spirit into man. Thus it is the essence of man, and the spiritual heart (*qalb*) is the nucleus of the soul, thus it never ceases to function. According to Islam, the universe, which is of an expanding and evolutionary character, began within the ‘waves of probability’, as a nucleus of Light - known in Islamic terminology as the ‘Light of Muhammad’ that has been continuously ‘unfolding’ itself. The Hadith is:
I exist because of the Light of Allah and all existence comes into existence due to my light.\(^{18}\)

Therefore the essential Muhammad is the foundation of the universe and all creation came through him.

**Sincerity**

The fact that confirms the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s sincerity is the fact that the earliest converts to Islam were his closest friends and the people of his household, who were intimately acquainted with his private life; and could not detect any difference in his public life and his behaviour at home. Slaves and the most oppressed were the first converts to Islam because it liberated their souls.

**Spreading the Message**

For two years he had kept his experience a secret only revealed to his wife and her cousin Waraqa bin Naufal, a Christian scholar. In 612 CE he was divinely ordered to openly spread the message. Amongst the first converts were his closest friend and neighbour Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique, his young cousin Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib, who was being reared in his home and Hazrath Uthman ibn Affan from the powerful Umayyad family (also known as the Banu Abd-Shams) of the Quraysh tribe. Many converts were women from the poorer clans because he liberated women from the oppression in which local custom and the deterioration of the Christian and Jewish faith, held them and preached general social justice. He knew what many Muslims have forgotten in this modern era that the spiritual and moral survival of a community can exist only so long as the womenfolk remain reliable custodians of the community’s spiritual and moral values.

**Restoring faith in the One God**

He taught nothing new for most of the Quraysh already knew that Allah is the Creator, and the Jews and Christians, knew about the final Day of Judgment. He was restoring faith in the One God. Teaching the value of sharing wealth and creating a society in which the poor and oppressed would be treated with respect. The fundamental Law of Existence was being introduced. Any society to avoid collapse has to mend its ways. This
Madinah to Karbala

made it imperative that the economic system should be such as to provide a fair measure of equality of opportunity to all the members of the society for securing decent means of livelihood, and thereby sharing in the national wealth honourably through honest labour and sincere achievement. Over twenty three years he provided Divine solutions to problems, through revelation. It was providing guidance from the womb to the tomb.

The Holy Qur'aan and the Holy Prophet ﷺ
The verses of the Holy Qur'aan were a work of genius of Arab prose and poetry. At the time of the 7th century, the Arabs had reached their pinnacle of language, therefore the great poets of the Arabian Peninsula, either they had just died, at the time the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ arrived or a few of them were still alive. When the Holy Prophet ﷺ brought the Holy Qur’aan they were unable to imitate the Holy Qur’aan. The other Arabs, who were eloquent by their nature, saying poetry off hand and giving an impromptu speech with great eloquence were confounded by the Holy Qur’aan for it was neither poetry nor prose and did not fit into any of the categories of language they were aware of. Yet they recognized in it a phenomenon that they had not seen.

Some word in Arabic carry such depth of meaning that they cannot be translated and only a master in the language can even approximate the meaning. You can’t convince any English speaker that the Holy Qur’aan is a miracle from Allah ﷺ based on English translation. They may get something out of the translation but not a moving response. The majority of Arabs being illiterate, non-Arabs responded to the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Therefore wherever you go in the non-Arab world, there is an immense love of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ. Go to Pakistan, India, Turkey, Indonesia or Malaysia and you will see that there is an immense love for the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. It was through the character of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ that those people entered Islam. It was through the akhlaq or high character of the Yemeni merchants that went to Indonesia and South India, which convinced people that this is a true religion. They would never cheat in their transactions. They were more concerned about a fair price than making profit. They would forgive a person who was unable to pay his debts because they wanted forgiveness
from Allah ﷽. They were an embodiment of the character of the Holy Prophet ﷺ. The character of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is what is absent from the Muslim World today. Wonderful ethical principles are framed and put on walls but are not in the heart. Inculcating love of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is something that has to be done from an early age. Hazrath Umar bin Al-Khattab ﷺ was an expert in Arabic poetry and on hearing the Holy Qur'an, he immediately submitted.

**Loving the Messenger and the Message**

The testification (Kalimah) of submission only to Allah ﷽ and His manifest representative on earth (khalifatullah par excellence), the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, and the teachings that human beings be just and compassionate to each other attracted many slaves and those in bondage to Islam. It awoken the consciousness of many oppressors and brought them into the fold. The prostration on the ground, reserved for no creature but exclusively for the Creator, made even the haughtiest realise that before God they were nothing. They loved the bringer of this message so much that they prostrated in prayer to God but out of reverence they kissed the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s hand and feet. Instead of amassing personal fortunes they were required as an obligatory act to give a portion of their annual income to the poor (Zakaat). The ten fold return promised for a voluntary dispensing of charity gave them a new economic perspective changing greed into acts of competing with each to be generous. Eventually they were taught that even to smile or remove an obstacle from a footpath was an act of charity. The fasting, in imitation of the Holy Prophet ﷺ whom they adored, made them experience the plight of those who did not have anything to eat or drink.

**Divine Alignment**

The greatest striving (Jihad) was to align ones being to live in accordance with the Law of God (Shariah). The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ reminded them of the 124000 prophets [symbolising many], that preceded him. He therefore never insisted that Jews and Christians convert, but return to the proper untainted Divine Scriptures of their own. The Holy Qur'an says in the 29th Sura, al’Ankabūt (the Spider) in verse 46:
Madinah to Karbala

وَلَا تُحَادِلُوا أهلَ الْكِتَابِ إِلَّا بِالْحَسَنِ ۚ إِنَّهُمْ أُحْسَنُ أَهْلُ الْدِّينِ
ۗ وَلَبِدَّ مِنْهُمْ وَقُولُوا أَمَّا الَّذِي أَنْزَلَ إِلَيْنَا وَأَنْزَلَ إِلَيْكُمْ وَإِلَيْهِمْ
ۗ وَإِلَيْهِمْ وَاحِدٌ وَتَحْنَّى لَهُ مُسْلِمُونَ

And, (O you who have committed to Allah ﷺ) do not argue with the followers of earlier revelation but in a suitable and decent way – unless it be such of them who are bent on evil doing. And say: ‘We believe in that which has been revealed to us and which was sent down to you and our God and your God is but One and we obey Him alone.’

Continuity was crucial and thus the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ did not visualize a shattering of the past or culture. Each culture has its own traditions and ways of doing things and if one forces ones own acceptability upon them, then one end up being unjust towards another tradition. The fact that the pagans and the Arabs of the northern tribes on the borders of Byzantine who had converted to Christianity came to the Kaaba pointed to the fact that they had been lost members of a monotheistic family. Thus he longed to bring them back to the Divine.

Persecution

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ initially acquired a small following and the most powerful men in Makkah, most from his family, ignored the Muslims. By 616 CE the barbaric (jahili) Arabian society felt challenged as the Holy Qur’aan was progressively being revealed. They were losing their economic and oppressive grip on the weak, poor and oppressed. They were losing their authority; for people were beginning to follow the man receiving instructions from Allah ﷺ and not ordinary mortals, propped up by wealth and false positions. They boycotted the Muslims, deprived them of food, physically tortured them and even plotted to assassinate the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. The conditions in Makkah forced the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ to look for another base of operation. A delegation of chiefs of the Aws and Khazraj tribes from Yathrib (the old name of Madinah) an agricultural settlement, 250 miles or 400 kms from Makkah, who were aware of the impending emergence of a prophet, due to their living side by side with Jews, invited him to live in Yathrib and offered the Muslims protection.
Migration
Eventually the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and the Muslims emigrated (hijrah) to Yathrib and this marked the beginning of the Muslim Era. The people of Yathrib were more open in accepting a monotheistic faith due to living side by side with Jews. This had become the nucleus upon which Islamic power and political structure was erected. The pagans of Quraysh were infuriated for they considered severing ties with family and joining another group blasphemy. A new ‘super tribe’ had been born. They were the embodiment of truth, sincerity, selflessness, sacrifice and dedication. This group were not bound together by bloodline but a Divine ideology.

Madinah: Religion and Economics
Yathrib became known as al-Madinah المدينة (the City). It was the model of the perfect Muslim society. It is interesting that the root word from which al-Madinah المدينة is derived is Deen دين, or the path along which righteous Muslims travel in order to comply with Divine Law, or Shar’ia, and to the Divine Judgement. Islam had taken root to be a civilising force. When the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ arrived in al-Madinah المدينة his first action was to build a simple Masjid المسجد (literally a place of prostration or Sajda سجدة). The Al-Masjid al-Nabawi المسجد النبوي (Masjid of the Prophet), as the final resting place of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is the second holiest site in Islam by Muslims (the first being the Masjid al-Haram in Makkah. The land upon which Al-Masjid al-Nabawi المسجد النبوي was built belonged to two orphans Sahl سهل and Suhail سهیل. It is amazing to note that from the same root we get also Ahlan Wasahlan اهلاً وسهلاً (Welcome). The Muslims of Makkah arrived in Madinah with nothing to offer but faith and commitment were received in Madinah with welcoming open arms and hearts and a brotherhood that immediately integrated them into the Madinan society. The pioneer Muslims set a standard of brotherhood that challenges even today’s committed Muslims. It’s also a point of note that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ offered to buy the land from the orphans, who wanted to give it to him; but he insisted on paying for it. This again is a learning point for the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is not using his position of authority to exploit people. Everyone who loves him wants to give him
Madinah to Karbala

whatever he wants but he is not exploiting the situation. Another interesting point is that this land was a graveyard of the idolaters (mushrikeen). The remains had to be removed to build the Masjid. Therefore the Maliki School of Law says a Masjid can be built on or at the graveyard. Another interesting observation is that the first chapters to be revealed in Madinah were The 83rd Sura al-Mutaffifin (Fraudulent dealing) or in the modern context I will call it "Capitalist Mentality". Some commentators regard this as a Makkan Sura. Those who support the Madinan revelation refer to a tradition from Ibn Abbas according to which when the Holy Prophet arrived in Madinah, the evil of giving short weight and measure was widespread among the people there. The title of the Sura has taken from its first verse, that the fate of the capitalistic system and business mentality will ultimately be doom. Either way the Holy Prophet Muhammad had taken on the Fraudulent Capitalists in Makkah and he had to purge his adopted home and model city of this exploitative economics. So the Holy Prophet Muhammad enquires, from the Aus and Khazraj, who were farmers, as to where the marketplace is and he is informed that it controlled by the Jews. So the Holy Prophet Muhammad got the Muslims to set up their own marketplace and started building the Masjid. So this points to deen and duniya. This teaches us an important lesson of worship as well as maintaining our economic integrity and independence. Hazrath Ali said:

There is no good in a people that eat what they don’t grow and wear what they don’t weave

Jews and Hypocrites
This was a powerful political act that would obviously upset the Jews. The Muslims in Makkah were all faithful Muslims (Mukhlisun) but now we see the emergence of a new group the Hypocrites (Munafiqun). The people of Makkah in their frames of reference had never experienced a religious hypocrite - those who swing between Truth and Falsehood. In Makkah when Islam was only a doctrine and creed, rather than an operational model it became in Madinah, there were no class of people referred to as hypocrites. Hypocrisy is a product of power. The hypocrite’s motive is only to be with the side in power, right or wrong, moral or evil, Islamic or otherwise. As the Muslim prestige increased after the victory in the Battle
of Badr so did the number of hypocrites. Many high ranking kuffaar and mushriks joined the Muslims. They had to do so in a business sense, to protect their status and possessions. They changed sides but did not undergo a change of heart. These were ‘dual-loyalists’ out of convenience they perform their part in a ritual Islam, but when it comes to honour their commitment to Allah, in struggling and sacrificing, they show their inclination to the anti-Islamic camps, states or powers. They delude even themselves that they are Muslims, while in reality they owe their allegiance to the forces of kufr. Duplicity, which is a deeper phase of hypocrisy, corrupts a person’s moral tone, on the one hand, and brings loss of face to him, on the other. Thus, side by side with being unjust to others, he who practices duplicity also damages himself. Hence it is a ‘duty to self’ to abstain from it completely. Wherever hypocrisy is practised it is a grave vice, and it is the duty of a Muslim to abstain from it totally if he has to be true to his Faith. The Muslims were now faced with a struggle of simultaneously being at war on the outside with the Makkans and on the inside with the Jews and hypocrites.

The Jews claim that they are God’s chosen people, and only from their ranks emerged Prophets and Divine Scripture, took a dent. They felt humiliated and threatened that the final prophet emerged from the Arabs. They had become self-centred racists and ethnicists whose pride was injured. They were also infuriated because their interest based business and market monopoly was being challenged. They had a difficult choice, either join Islam, with its equality, brotherhood and anti-usury principles or fight to maintain their interest-based economic stranglehold. It was not a difficult choice for them who preferred wealth to true faith. The three main Jewish tribes united and were determined to get rid of the Holy Prophet Muhammad.

**Change of Qiblah**

Remember that the prayer direction, of the Masjid the 53 year old Holy Prophet Muhammad, toiled to build with his own hands, was still Jerusalem. The realisation that the majority of the People of the Book [a term used to designate Jews and Christians, adherents to faiths that received Divine revelation] had deviated from the pure teachings of Abraham made him change the direction of prayer (Qiblah), as per Divine revelation,
from Jerusalem to the Kaaba in Makkah in January 624 CE. This was a strong statement to the Jews and Christians that the Muslims were preaching the pure monotheism of Abraham ᵃˡ-yḥᵦṣ-s̱-ḻ-m̱-ʿᵃˡ-a who lived before the revelation of the Torah or the Bible. Muslims made it clear that it was idolatrous to bow before a human system or a corrupted religious system, rather than submitting to God.

**War and Peace**

Arabia was a violent society and the Muslims had to fight their way to peace. After the Battles of Badr, Uhad and the Trench, when the Muslims had crushed the Makkans and overturned the Madinan opposition, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ᵃˡ-l-aḥ-s-s̱-ḻ-m̱-ʿᵃˡ-a began the peaceful conquest. In March 628 CE, he set out for pilgrimage to Makkah, his birth-city, which he had left 6 years ago. He was joined by over a thousand Muslims. He knew that if the Quraysh attacked pilgrims they would be betraying their sacred duty of custodians of the Kaaba. The disgraced Quraysh however dispatched troops to attack the Muslims who, managed to evade them, and reached the borders of the Sacred Sanctuary, camping at Hudaiibiya. This was a peaceful protest. Eventually the Quraysh agreed to sign a treaty with the Muslims. In 630 CE, the Quraysh violated the terms of the treaty by attacking a tribe, allied to the Muslims.

**The Conquest of Makkah and Mercy**

This prompted the Holy Prophet Muhammad ᵃˡ-l-aḥ-s-s̱-ḻ-m̱-ʿᵃˡ-a to march to Makkah with ten thousand men. He conquered Makkah without spilling a drop of blood demonstrating the practice of Mercy in all situations,—the conquest of Makkah demonstrating it at its climax. Stanley Lane-Poole¹⁹ in his book 'The Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad, London 1882, Introduction, pp. 46, and 47 said: (Bold lettering is the present writer’s)

“The day of Mohammad’s greatest triumph over his enemies was also the day of his grandest victory over himself. He freely forgave the Koraysh all the years of sorrow and cruel scorn in which they had afflicted him and gave an amnesty to the whole population of Mekka. Four criminals whom justice condemned made up Mohammad’s proscription list when he entered as a conqueror to the city of his bitterest enemies. The army followed his example, and entered quietly and peacefully; no house was robbed, no women insulted. One thing alone
suffered destruction. Going to the Kaaba, Mohammad stood before each of the three hundred and sixty idols, and pointed to it with his staff, saying, ‘Truth is come and falsehood is fled away!’ , and at these words his attendants hewed them down, and all the idols and household gods of Mekka and round about were destroyed.”

“It was thus Mohammad entered again his native city”.

**Through all the annals of conquest there is no triumphant entry comparable to this one.**

Arthur Gilman in his book; The Saracens, London 1887 pp. 184, 185 said:

“... in comparison, for example, with the cruelty of the Crusaders, who, in 1099, put seventy thousand Muslims, men, women and helpless children to death when Jerusalem fell into their hands; or with that of the English army, also fighting under the Cross, which in the year of grace 1874 burned an African capital, in its war on the Gold Coast. Muhammad’s victory was in very truth one of religion and not of politics; he rejected every token of personal homage, and declined all regal authority; and when the haughty chiefs of the Koreishites appeared before him he asked:

“What can you expect at my hands?”

They replied:

“Mercy, O generous brother!”

He exclaimed

“Be it so; you are free!”

Mercy (*rahnah*) is never more powerful when it comes from people in power. When the Holy Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) entered Makkah he had all the power in the world! He could have crushed his enemy; he had every right to do that, take them to account. They persecuted they killed, they did all those things; but he didn’t! Allah (ﷻ) had sent him as a personification of Divine Mercy. Mercy just flowed from the Holy Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ). Shakespeare, the ‘Shaykh’ and ‘Pir’ of the West said:

The quality of mercy is not strained

[It flows. It’s not something you have to force out]

It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven²⁰
Madinah to Karbala

Mercy naturally flowed from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Muslims believe rain is mercy (rahma)! The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ used to go out in the rain and he’d say:

This is mercy

People run away from the rain, we should be going out into the mercy. In Somalia, the Indo/Pak subcontinent and many Muslim countries they go out in the rain. One of the biggest blessings, known, on the roof of the Kaaba is a gilt water spout (al-Masabb or Mehzaab). When it rains people go under so happy for the pouring rain. They used to swim around Kaaba when it flooded. People did tawaf swimming.

The more mercy the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ gives us it blesses Him. Allah ﷺ blessed Him by making Him رَحْمَةُ الْعَالَمِينَ. And then it blesses us that we take that mercy (rahma). So the mercy is twice blessed; it blesses that the one that gives it and the one that takes it.

Tis mightiest in the mightiest

Mercy is most powerful when it comes from people in a position of power that when they want they could crush you. When the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ entered Makkah, he had all the power in the world! He could have crushed his enemy; he had every right to take them to account. They persecuted they killed, they did all those things; but he didn’t! He just forgave all of them from spitting on him, throwing animal intestines on him, killing his companions. He forgave his uncle Hamza ﷺ’s assassin and the one who ordered it, Hind. He accepted her pledge of allegiance. In the midst of the worst battle of his career, the battle of Uhad, he prayed:

Oh God guide my people for they do not know what they are doing.

He could not have uttered that if he had hatred in his heart. He could not have embraced Wahshi as his brother, the man who killed his most beloved uncle, if he had hatred in his heart. He could not have taken the oath of allegiance from Hind who ordered and paid for the assassination and then bit into his liver to spite the Holy Prophet ﷺ if he had hatred in his heart. He took her oath of allegiance and she became a sister in faith. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is the shining example who said:
None of you truly believes until he loves for his fellow man what he loves for himself.

And the reason why I say ‘fellow man’ is Imam an-Nawawi said because we are all children of Adam and Eve. So we should want for our fellow man guidance, a good life, and a good afterlife. None of you truly believes, in other words our Imaan is not complete until we love for others what we love for ourselves and that includes the Jews, Christians, Buddhists and the Hindus. What does the word ‘sacrifice’ mean? We don’t have a word in Arabic; other than sacrificing animals. That’s what you do. We sacrifice animals in Islam. But there is an interesting thing about human beings; they’re part animal and that’s the sacrifice; one has to sacrifice ones ‘animal self’ or ego (nafs). This deen is about sacrificing the nafs. What does sacrifice in Latin mean? It’s an interesting language. Sacrifice comes from two Latin roots: Sacris (sacred) and the verb facere, (do or make). ‘To make sacred’: that is what sacrifice means. We make our souls sacred for the sake of Allah. That’s what this deen is about and that is what humanity has forgotten. We have to return sanctity to the world. The world needs to be sanctified by people who are committed to doing what they were created for; which is to submit to Allah.
CONSTITUTION OF MADINAH

THE FIRST WRITTEN CONSTITUTION IN THE WORLD

The Constitution of Madinah, Sahīfat al-Madīna, also known as the Charter of Madinah, a political-constitutional document, was drafted by the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. The most widely read version of the Constitution is found in the pages of Ibn Ishaq's Sīrah Rasūl Allāh (Life of the Messenger of God. It is the first written constitution in the world for the multi-religious ten thousand-strong citizens of the city-state of Madinah. The claim that it was the first written constitution in the world is not a biased exaggeration. Aristotle's (384 BC - 322 BC) Constitution of Athens, written on papyrus, discovered by an American missionary in Egypt in 1890 CE and published in 1891 CE, was not a constitution, but an account of the constitution of the city-state of Athens. The Madinah Charter is the first, and in this it preceded the American Constitution of 1787 CE, by more than a thousand years! It also preceded the English feudal bill of rights, the Magna Carter of 1215, by almost six centuries!

Rights and responsibilities of the Muslim, Jewish, and pagan communities of Madinah

It constituted a formal agreement between Muhammad ﷺ and all of the significant tribes and families of Madinah, including Muslims, Jews, and pagans. The document was drawn up with the explicit concern of bringing to an end the bitter inter tribal fighting. To this effect it instituted a number of rights and responsibilities for the Muslim, Jewish, and pagan communities of Madinah bringing them within the fold of one community—the Ummah. The precise dating of the Constitution of Madinah remains debated but generally scholars agree it was written shortly after the Hijrah in 622 CE. It effectively established the first Islamic state. The Constitution established: the security of the community, religious freedoms, the role of Madinah as a sacred sanctuary, barring all violence and weapons, the security of women, stable tribal relations within Madinah, a tax system for supporting the
Tolerance

community in time of conflict, parameters for exogenous political alliances, a system for granting protection of individuals, a judicial system for resolving disputes, and also regulated the paying of Blood money (the payment between families or tribes for the slaying of an individual).

THE MADINAH CHARTER: FULL ARABIC AND TRANSLATED TEXT

ٍَِّ٥٥٠٠٢١٢٠٨’ve

The Constitution of Islamic State of Madinah

Article One

هذا كتاب من محمد النبي (رسول الله) صلى الله عليه وسلم

This is a constitutional document given by Muhammad, the Prophet, (Messenger of God).

Article Two: Constitutional Subjects of the State

بين المؤمنين والمسلمين من قريش و (أهل) يرب و من

تبعهم فلتحق بهم وجاهم معهم

(This shall be a pact) between the Muslims of Quraysh, the people of Yathrib (the Citizens of Madinah) and those who shall follow them and become attached to them (politically) and fight along with them. (All these communities shall be the constitutional subjects of the State.)

Article Three: Formation of the Constitutional Nationality

أهم أمة واحدة من دون الناس

The aforementioned communities shall formulate a Constitutional Unity as distinct from (other) people.

Article Four: Validation and Enforcement of the Former Tribal Laws of Blood Money for the Emigrant Quraysh

المهاجرون من قريش علي ربعتهم يعاقلون بينهم معاقلهما الأولي، وهم يفدون عانيهم بالمعروف والقسط بين المؤمنين

The emigrants from Quraysh shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice,
Madinah to Karbala

jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.

Article Five: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Auf

And the emigrants from Banu Auf shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.

Article Six: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Harith

And the emigrants from Banu Harith shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.

Article Seven: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Saida

And the emigrants from Banu Saida shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.
Tolerance

And the emigrants from Banu Saida shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.

Article Eight: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Jusham

And the emigrants from Banu Jusham shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.

Article Nine: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Najjar

And the emigrants from Banu Najjar shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with recognised principles of law and justice.

Article Ten: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Amr
Article Eleven: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Nabeet

And the emigrants from Banu Nabeet shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.

Article Twelve: Validation of the Former Laws of Blood Money for Banu Aws

And the emigrants from Banu Aws shall be responsible for their ward and they shall, according to their former approved practice, jointly pay the blood money in mutual collaboration and every group shall secure the release of their prisoners by paying the ransom. Moreover, the deal among the believers shall be in accordance with the recognised principles of law and justice.
Tolerance

Article Thirteen: Indiscriminate Rule of Law and Justice for all the Communities

و كل طائفة تفدى عانيها بالمعروف و القسط بين المؤمنين

And every group shall secure the release of its captives ensuring that an indiscriminate rule of law and justice is applied among the believers.

Article Fourteen: Prohibition of Relaxation in Execution of Law

و إن المؤمنين لا يتركون مفرحا بينهم أن يعطوه بالمعروف في فداء أو عقل

The believers shall not leave a debtor among them, but shall help him in paying his ransom, according to what shall be considered fair.

Article Fifteen: Prohibition of Unjust Favouritism

و أن لا يخالف مؤمن مولى مؤمن دونه

A believer shall not form an alliance with the associate of (another) believer without the (latter's) consent.

Article Sixteen: Collective Resistance against Injustice, Tyranny and Mischief

و أن المؤمنين المتقين أيديهم علي كل من بغي منهم أو ابتغي دسيعة ظلم أو إثما أو عدوانا أو فسادا بين المؤمنين و أن أيديهم عليه جميعا ولو كان ولد أحدهم

There shall be collective resistance by the believers against any individual who rises in rebellion, attempts to acquire anything by force, violates any pledge or attempts to spread mischief amongst the believers. Such collective resistance against the perpetrator shall occur even if he is the son of anyone of them.

Article Seventeen: Prohibition of Killing of a Muslim by a Muslim
A believer shall not kill (another) believer (in retaliation) for an unbeliever, nor help an unbeliever against a believer.

**Article Eighteen: Guarantee of Equal Right of Life Protection for all the Muslims**

The security of God (granted under this constitution) is one.

This protection can be granted even by the humblest of the believers (that would be equally binding for all).

**Article Nineteen: Distinctive Identity of the Muslims against other Constitutional Communities**

The believers shall be the associates of one another against all other people (of the world).

**Article Twenty: Non-Muslim Minorities (Jews) have the same Right of Life Protection (like Muslims)**

A Jew, who obeys us (the state) shall enjoy the same right of life protection (as the believers do), so long as they (the believers) are not wronged by him (the Jew), and he does not help (others) against them.

**Article Twenty One: Guarantee of Peace and Security for all the Muslims based on Equality and Justice**

And verily the peace granted by the believers shall be one. If there is any war in the way of Allah ﷺ, no believer shall make any treaty of peace (with the enemy) apart from other believers, unless that is based on equality and fairness among all.
Tolerance

Article Twenty Two: Law of Relief for War Allies

و أن كل غازية غزت معنا يعقب بعضها بعضًا

Every war ally of ours shall receive relief turns (at riding) at all military duties.

Article Twenty Three: Law of Vengeance for the Muslims in case of Bloodshed in the way of Allah ﷺ

و أن المؤمنين يبيئ بعضهم عن بعض بما نال دماءهم في سبيل الله

The believers shall execute vengeance for one another for the bloodshed in the way of Allah ﷺ.

Article Twenty Four: Islam is the Best Code of life

و أن المؤمنين المتقين على أحسن هدي وأقومه

All the God-fearing believers are under the best and most correct guidance of Islam.

Article Twenty Five: Prohibition of Providing Security of Life and Property to the Enemy

و أنه لا يخير مشركًا مالاً لقريش ولا نفساً ولا يحول دونه على مؤمن

No idolater (or any non-believer among the clans of Madinah) shall give protection for property and life to (any of the) Quraysh (because of their being hostile to the state of Madinah) nor shall intervene on his behalf against any believer.

Article Twenty Six: Execution of the Law of Retaliation for a Muslim Murder

و أنه من اعتبطر مؤمنًا قتلاً عن بيئة فإنه قد بله، إلا أن يرضى ولي المقتول (بالعقل)، و أن المؤمنين عليه كاففة ولا يخل لهم إلا قيام عليه

And if one of you has murdered a Muslim, he is not as a murderer, but if the man of the murdered man is satisfied with the murderer (his guilt), and the Muslims stand up to him, he shall not be excused from his deed.
When anyone intentionally kills a believer, the evidence being clear he shall be killed in retaliation, unless the heirs of the victim are satisfied with the blood money. All the believers shall solidly stand against the murderer and nothing will be lawful for them except opposing him.

Article Twenty Seven: No Protection or Concession for the Doer of Mischief and Subversion against the Constitution

A believer who believes in God and in the Hereafter and agrees to the contents of this document shall not provide any protection or concession to those who engage in mischief and subversion against this Constitution. Those who do so shall face the curse and wrath of God on the Day of Resurrection. Furthermore, nothing shall be accepted from them as a compensation or restitution (in the life hereafter).

Article Twenty Eight: Final and Absolute Authority in the Disputes vests in Allah § and Hazrath Muhammad §

When anyone among you differs about anything, the dispute shall be referred to Allah § and to the Prophet Muhammad § (as all final and absolute authority is vested in them).

Article Twenty Nine: Proportionate Liability of Non-Muslim Citizens (the Jews) in Bearing the War Expenses

The Jews (non-Muslim minorities) will be subjected to a proportionate liability of the war expenses along with the
Tolerance

believers so long as they (the Jews) continue to fight in conjunction with them.

Article Thirty: Guarantee of Freedom of Religion for both the Muslims and Non-Muslim Minorities (the Jews)

The Jews of Banu Awf (non-Muslim minorities) shall be considered a community along with the believers. They shall be guaranteed the right of religious freedom along with the Muslims. The right shall be conferred on their associates as well as themselves except those who are guilty of oppression or the violators of treaties. They will bring evil only on themselves and their family.

Article Thirty One: Equality of Rights for the Jews of Banu Najjar with the Jews of Banu Awf

The Jews of Banu Najjar shall enjoy the same rights as granted to the Jews of Banu Awf.

Article Thirty Two: Equality of Rights for the Jews of Banu Harith with the Jews of Banu Awf

The Jews of Banu Harith shall enjoy the same rights as granted to the Jews of Banu Awf.

Article Thirty Three: Equality of Rights for the Jews of Banu Sa'id with the Jews of Banu Awf

The Jews of Banu Sa'id shall enjoy the same rights as granted to the Jews of Banu Awf.

Article Thirty Four: Equality of Rights for the Jews of Banu Jusham with the Jews of Banu Awf
Article Thirty Five: Equality of Rights for the Jews of Banu Aws with the Jews of Banu Awf

The Jews of Banu Aws shall enjoy the same rights as granted to the Jews of Banu Awf.

Article Thirty Six: Equality of Rights for the Jews of Banu Tha'laba with the Jews of Banu Awf

The Jews of Banu Tha'laba shall enjoy the same rights as granted to the Jews of Banu Awf except those who are guilty of oppression or violate treaties; they will bring evil only on themselves and their family.

Article Thirty Seven: Equality of Rights for Jafna, the branch of Banu Tha'laba, with the Jews of Banu Awf

Jafna, a branch of Banu Thalaba, shall enjoy the same rights as granted to Banu Tha'laba.

Article Thirty Eight: Equality of Rights for the Jews of Banu Shutayba with the Jews of Banu Awf

The Jews of Banu Shutayba shall enjoy the same rights as granted to the Jews of Banu Awf. There shall be complete compliance (with this constitution) and no violation (of its clauses).

Article Thirty Nine: Equality of Rights for all the Associates of the Tribe Tha'laba
Tolerance

و خانة ثعلبة كأنفسهم
All the associates of Banu Tha'laba shall enjoy the same rights as granted to Banu Thalaba.

Article Forty: Equality of Rights for all Branches of the Jews

و لأن بطنية يهود كأنفسهم
All sub-branches of the Jews shall enjoy the same rights as granted to them (the Jews).

Article Forty One: Final Command and Authority in Military Expeditions Vests in the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ

و لأنه لا يخرج منهم أحد إلا بإذن محمد
Verily, none among the allies shall advance (on a military expedition) without the prior permission of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ (in whom vests the final command and authority).

Article Forty Two: No Exception from the Law of Retaliation

و لأنه لا ينحجز على ثائر جرح
There shall be no impediment on anyone who wishes to avenge a wound.

Article Forty Three: Responsibility of Unlawful Killing

و لأنه من فتك فبنفسه فتكاء وأهل بيته إلا من ظلم و أن الله على أفر هذا
Whoever commits an unlawful killing shall be responsible for it himself with his family members but he is exempted in case he kills a cruel. Verily, Allah ﷺ (is the Trust Helper) supports those who adhere completely to this Constitution.

Article Forty Four: Separate Liability of War Expenses

و أن على اليهود نفقتهم، و على المسلمين نفقتهم
The Jews and the Muslims shall bear their own war expenses separately.
Article Forty Five: Compulsory Mutual Help to one another in Case of War

وَأَنَّ بَيْنَهُمُ النَّصَرُ عَلَى مَنْ حَارَبَ أَهْلِ هَذِهِ الصُّحِيْفَةِ
There shall be mutual help between one another against those who engage in war with the allies of this document.

Article Forty Six: Mutual Consultation and Honourable Dealing

وَأَنَّ بَيْنَهُمُ النَّصِحُ وَالنَّصِيحةَ وَالبَرْدُونِ الإِلَمُ
There shall be mutual consultation and honourable dealing between the allies and there shall be the fulfilment not the violation, of all pledges.

Article Forty Seven: Law of Prohibition of Treachery and Help of the Oppressed

وَأَنَّهُ لَا يَأْتِمُ امْرِهِ بَعْلِيْفَهُ، وَأَنَّ النَّصَرَ لِلْمَظْلُومِ
No one shall violate the pledge due to his ally and verily, help shall be given to the oppressed.

Article Forty Eight: The Jews (non-Muslim Minorities) shall also Extend Financial Support to the State during the War Period

وَأَنَّ الْيَهُودَ يَنفَقُونَ مَعَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ مَا دَامُوا مُحَارِبِينَ
The Jews (non-Muslim minorities) along with the believers shall extend financial support to the State during the war period.

Article Forty Nine: Prohibition of Fighting and Bloodshed among the Various Communities of the State

وَأَنْ يُزَبَّ حَرَامٌ حُرُفُهُ لَأَهْلِ هَذِهِ الصُّحِيْفَةِ
The valley of Yathrib is sacred and there shall be prohibition of fighting and bloodshed among the various communities of the State.

Article Fifty: Equal Right of Life Protection shall be granted to Everyone, Who has been given the Constitutional Shelter

وَأَنَّ الْجَارِ كَالنَّفْسِ غير مُضَارِوُلَا أَمَّ
Tolerance

A person given constitutional shelter shall be granted an equal right of life protection as long as he commits no harm and does not act treacherously.

Article Fifty One: Law of Shelter for the Women

A woman shall not be given any shelter without the consent of her family.

Article Fifty Two: Authority of Allah and the Prophet Muhammad shall be Final and Absolute Authority in all Disputes Instigating any Quarrel

And verily if any dispute arises among the parties to this document from which any quarrel may be feared, it shall be referred to God and to Muhammad ﷺ, the Messenger of God, for the final and absolute decision. Verily, God is the Guarantee for the faithful observance of the contents of this Constitution (which shall be enforced by the State).

Article Fifty Three: No Refuge for the Enemies of the State or for Their Allies.

There shall be no refuge for the Quraysh (the enemies of the State) nor for their allies.

Article Fifty Four: Joint Responsibility of Defence in Case of an Attack on the State

The Muslims and the Jews shall be jointly responsible to defend (the State of) Madinah against any outside attack.
Madinah to Karbala

Article Fifty Five: Incumbency of Observance of the Treaty of Peace for Every Ally

و إذا دعوا إلى صلح يصالحونه ويلبسونه فإنه يصالحونه و يلفسونه، و أفهم إذا دعوا إلى مثل ذلك فإنه لهم علي المؤمنين

It shall be incumbent upon the Jews to observe and adhere to any peace treaty they are invited to participate in. Likewise, it shall also be incumbent upon the Muslims to observe and adhere to any peace treaty, they are invited to.

Article Fifty Six: No Treaty shall Suspend or Negate the Responsibility of the Protection of Deen

(فإنهم لهم على المؤمنين) إلا من حارب في الدين

(Likewise, it shall be incumbent upon the Muslims also to observe and adhere to any peace treaty that they are invited to), but no treaty will restrain them from fighting for the protection of their Deen.

Article Fifty Seven: Every Party to Treaty shall be Responsible for the Defence of its Facing Direction

على كل أناس حصتهم من جانبهم الذين قبلهم

Every party to the treaty shall be responsible for the measures and arrangements of the defence of its facing direction.

Article Fifty Eight: Basic Constituent Members of this Document and their Associates shall possess the Equal Constitutional Status

و أن يهود الأوس مواليهم و أنفسهم على مثل ما أهل هذه الصحيفة مع البر المحس من أهل هذه الصحيفة

The Jews of Aws (one of the basic constituent members of this document) and their allies shall possess the same constitutional status as the other parties to this document, with a condition that they should be thoroughly sincere and honest in their dealing with the parties.
Tolerance

Article Fifty Nine: No Party shall have any Right of Violation of the Constitution

و أن البردون الإثم لا يكسب كاسب إلا على نفسه

No party shall have the right to violate the constitution. Every person who is guilty of a crime shall be held responsible for his act alone.

Article Sixty: Favour of Almighty Allah ✪ to those that Observe the Constitution

و أن الله على أصدق ما في هذه الصحيفه وأبره

Verily, God is the Guarantee for the faithful observance of the contents of this Constitution (which shall be enforced by the State).

Article Sixty One: No Traitor or Oppressor shall have the Right of Protection under this Document

و أنه لا يحول هذا الكتاب دون ظلم أو أثم

Verily, this constitutional document shall not protect any traitor or oppressor.

Article Sixty Two: All Peaceful Citizens would be in a Safe and Secure Protection

و أنه من خرج آمن ومن قعد آمن بالمدينة، إلا من ظلم و أثم

Verily, whoever goes out (on a military expedition) shall be provided with security and whoever stays in Madinah shall have (likewise); except those who commit oppression and violate the contents of this Constitution.

Article Sixty Three: Allah ✪ and His Prophet Muhammad ﷺ are the Protectors of the Peaceful Citizens of Madinah who Abide by the Constitution

و أن الله جارلمن بر واتقى، و محمد رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم
Madinah to Karbala

Verily, Allah and the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, the Messenger of God, are the protectors of good citizens and of those who fear from Allah ﷺ.

[Extracted from: The Constitution of Madinah (A detailed exposition of the first ever written constitution in human history) by Maulana Prof. Tahirul Qadri]
Tolerance

TOLERANCE OF THE HOLY PROPHET MUHAMMAD ﷺ

Allah ﷻ says in the 3rd Sura, Aal-i ‘Imraan [The Family of ‘Imraan] in Verse 164:

لَقَدْ مَنَّ اللَّهُ عَلَى الْمُؤْمِنِينَ إِذْ بَعَثَ فِيهِمْ رَسُولًا

Indeed Allah ﷻ conferred a great favour on the believers that He raised among them (the most eminent) Messenger ﷺ

Islam has been misrepresented

God bless us all with the spirit of truth, justice and beauty. I would like to present in a general manner about what Islam stands for in this age when it has been misrepresented by narrow minded scholars devoid of love and compassion. Islam is the middle way between excess and neglect. Extremists are a plague upon religion. These extremists come in two types. The first is a reactionary extremist who falls far right of a centre-point. Reactionary extremists do not want any pluralism; they view the world in overemotional, black and white, good and evil terms. They are good and anyone who opposes them is evil. From among the Muslims these are people who ‘excommunicate’ any Muslim who fails to share their interpretations of the Qur’aan. They use declaring the person a traitor (takfir) and character assassination as a tool for marginalizing any criticism directed at them. They are used often by the Western media in order to scare simple people and cause them to believe that Muslims are insane. Unfortunately, our communities provide them with much fuel to fire their provocative flames.

The second groups are radical extremists, who while they are almost identical with the former group, differ in that they will use violence to further their cause. They are actually worse than the first. They believe like every despicable secret society before them that ‘the end justifies the means.’ They see any act as acceptable if it will further their ‘cause.’ This is blatantly anti Islamic for a number of reasons.

Firstly, Islam’s means must reflect its noble ends. Any means that does not embody the core truths and ethics of Islam is not from Islam and
thus denounced as deviation. Secondly, Islam is not a secret society of conspirators who no one knows what they are planning. Islam declares openly its aims and objectives and these are recognized by good people everywhere as pure and harmonizing with their own wisdom and traditions. In the case of many of these extremists even the non-Muslims recognize that no religion of any weight could sanction the taking of innocent lives. Thirdly, they are invariably people who have never taken a true spiritual path to God and nor have they studied the humanities. I can almost guarantee that you will not find a scholar of poetry among the whole vile lot of these people. They have no true knowledge of Arabian culture, which is centered in the idea of *futuwwa*; a word similar to the western word chivalry.

**Condemn Extremism**

We as Muslims are suffering all over because of the acts of a handful of people. We must in one voice condemn and completely reject the concept of indiscriminate killing in this religion. It is neither from the religion nor is it sanctioned by the religion in any reading of our pre-modern tradition. It is a modern phenomenon. I believe that the Palestinian Issue has been recognized as the festering sore on the body of this planet and many good people, including non-Muslims and Jews are speaking out against a serious crime against a people for over 60 years who have are suffering at the hands of the current government that makes apartheid South Africa look like paradise Palestine is the issue but just as good Jews speak out against Zionism we as Muslims have a duty to speak out against extremists in our midst. We cannot fall victim to tribal mentalities. We have to reject in our hearts vengeance and revenge for the sake of pride. We must reject the genocide in Palestine just as we would reject innocent Jews killed in the name of Islam. Would our Holy Prophet Muhammad (salla1) kill children? There is a time when we need to get angry, and if we do not get angry, we are not responding appropriately to the situation. Our Holy Prophet (salla1) got angry, so there is a time for anger, but there is never a time for wrath because wrath is excessive anger. There is never a time to lose our reason from anger.

**Message of the Holy Qur'aan**

What was this message that the Qur’aan brought? What was the message that the Holy Prophet Muhammad (salla1) gave in the verses of the Qur’aan
Tolerance

and in his own acquisition of the Qur’aan? Even today you will find that there is not much love lost between the followers of different creeds and religions. It is considered to be an act of piety to insult the followers of another religion. It is considered to be an act of the greatest virtue to hold the follower of another religion in contempt. But what did this man teach? He taught mankind, to be first of all true to itself. He taught every human being to be first of all true to oneself, because he preached the basic doctrine which was not preached before him, with the same emphasis. He preached the doctrine enshrined in the Holy Qur’aan in the 17th Sura, al-Isrā’ (the Night journey), verse 70:

[God Almighty says] I have made every human being in virtue of him being a human being honorable

Consequently this great man laid down the law that all human beings are born free and equal. It is an insult to humanity to insult another person. He preached the doctrine which Muslims also have forgotten now; very unfortunately. He preached the doctrine and he gave this motto to the Muslims, of course it was meant for all mankind to follow, but it is an obligation on the Muslims who call themselves his followers. He laid down the motto of life:

Hate evil but not the evil-doer; and appreciate good wherever it is found.

Study the Holy Qur’aan, supervised by teachers who have love, and try to find out the outlook of this man as to why he was behaving in the manner that he was behaving. What was his attitude in propagating his message which he gave, which he regarded with the utmost depth of conviction as the absolute truth. A conviction that was so intense that there was absolutely no question of a compromise. But what was his attitude? What was his attitude towards the followers of other ideas; towards his worst enemies and opponents? Read the 18th Sura, al-Kahf (the Cave), verse 6, where God Almighty tells the Holy Prophet ﷺ:
[(O Venerable Beloved!) Will you put your (dear) life at stake with the traumatic grief for them if they do not put faith in this Word (of Allah ﷺ)?]

(O Prophet!) You love these infidels. These enemies of your message, who are all the time persecuting you and your followers, you love them so intensely? That because they do not come to the right path which you are preaching to them, which is the path of salvation for them, you remain so grieved at this, that if this grief stays it is going to take away your life.

This is the translation of the verse. Of course his blind enemies even today and for the past so many centuries have been slandering him and even today if you go to Europe you will find in those countries, children of tender age, being taught, in their schools, printed in their books that Muhammad ﷺ was a robber, he was a barbarian. He was a savage and he built up a band of workers or followers who went out into the world with a sword in one hand and the Qur’aan in the other to convert the people by force of arms and at the point of swords. There is no other instance of calling a white thing black; as black an instance as this.

**No Compulsion in Religion**

It was he who in the history of mankind, laid down the law, of freedom of conscience, for the conversion of another person into Islam. The Holy Qur’aan proclaims in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) in verse 256:

لاَ إِكْرَاهًا فِي الْدِّينِ قَدْ تَبَيَّنَ

Let there be no compulsion in religion

Nobody can be compelled to accept any belief. This is the Qur’aan. The Islamic law lays down that if any Muslim tries the means of temptation or threat to convert a non-Muslim into Islam, it is the duty of the Islamic State to punish, this Muslim and to help the person that has been threatened, because according to the Qur’aan belief without a rational basis, without conviction, the proper belief, is an absolute superstition. And every human being has dignity in his own right that he cannot be
Tolerance

forced to enter a certain belief and to say he believes in something else. This is an insult to a human being according to the Qur’aan. God has made every human being a possessor of dignity. Who was giving this message? Try to keep in your mind that age and environment. Those people out of whom he had sprung. People talk about liberty, fraternity and equality as it was preached by Rossouw\textsuperscript{26} and Voltaire \textsuperscript{27}. They stole those ideas from the Holy Qur’aan. These things were preached 1400 years ago by this great man, and what a great teaching he had. He preached the doctrine of universalism of divine guidance. You will find it mentioned only in the Holy Qur’aan. That is logical and rational. God is the God of all human beings and he sent guidance not only to Arabia, but to every single community of the world. He cannot behave towards them in a step-fatherly fashion. Consequently the Holy Qur’aan proclaims in the 13th Sura Ra’d (Thunder) in verse 7:

\[(
\begin{array}{c}
\text{لِكُلٍّ قُومٍ هَادٍ}
\end{array})
\]

To all people we sent a guide

Every community in the world had a divine messenger who came with a message from God and here his followers were put on a path of goodwill and harmony with the other people which cannot be found anywhere else. A Muslim when he declares his faith has got to say that I believe not only in Muhammad \(\mu\), but in all the divine messengers whoever they were and whenever they might have come since the time of the first man Adam. If he says I believe in Muhammad \(\mu\), but I don’t believe in just one of them, I cannot be a Muslim.

\textbf{A Muslim does not Insult}

A Muslim is he who has to proclaim, that he is a follower of Muhammad \(\mu\); he is a follower of Jesus Christ, he is a follower of Moses and he is a follower of Abraham and so on. Even those whom a Muslim does not know as to whom was the divine messenger, because history has mystified the stories of human beings and of nations; he cannot abuse, he cannot insult even the founder of a cult which might be today a cult of idol worshippers. Although a Muslim is a monotheist, he believes only in One God and he cannot make any compromise in connection with this monotheism. He regards as blasphemy against God, the making of any
image, statue or any type of figuration in connection with God. Even then he cannot utter one word of abuse against anyone who is regarded as a founder, even of a cult of idol worshippers. Because he might have been a real divine messenger and the course of history has enshrouded him in all this which people find today. A Muslim believes in all divine messengers that come from Hazrath Adam /alyhissalam to the Holy Prophet Muhammad /salla1. When the West abuses the Holy Prophet Muhammad /salla1 we cannot abuse Jesus Christ. When a Jew abuses Muhammad /salla1, we cannot abuse Moses or Abraham. The moment we do it, we will be turned out of the fold of Islam, right away. We cannot remain Muslim.

Islam forbids abuse, even the abuse of idols, although it came to abolish idolatry. Allah /jalla says in the 6th Sura al- An’aam [The Cattle] Verse 108:

وَلَا تَسْتَيْبُوا الَّذِينَ يَدْعُونَ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ فَيَسْبُعُوا اللَّهَ عَذَابًا بِغَيْرِ عِلْمٍ

And, do not abuse these idols that these polytheists worship besides Allah /jalla lest these people should (also, in retaliation,) revile against Allah /jalla’s Glory wrongfully due to ignorance.

We have seen, in this modern era, images of American flags burning to further arouse the wrath of a nation filled with grief, confusion and anger. If these people take the Saudi Arabian flag that has the Kalimah inscribed on it and stomp on it as a retaliation, we are to blame. A Muslims function is not to abuse. If he feels there is a person or a community which is given to wrong belief or wrong actions, his function is not to abuse. His function is to feel sympathy for them and to invite them with love and affection if he at all wants to do anything on that behalf. Who was teaching this? This man who was born in the wilderness of Arabia; this man who was lived among the barbarians; he was not living in Greece, Palestine or Syria which had been seats of learning for thousands of years. He was not born among the Romans, who had a glorious history. He was not born in India which had produced great philosophies and a very distinguished culture. This man was not only speaking of goodwill and harmony, but practicing it, even though he was
Tolerance

born among the Arab. The Arabs were the most race conscious people. They regarded every non-Arab as merely a human animal and not a complete human being. Read their poetry of pre-Islamic days and you will understand their thinking. It was the Holy Prophet ﷺ, who stood amongst them and said:

لا يفرق بين عربي ولا أعجمي ولا أبيض ولا أسود

An Arab has no superiority over a non-Arab, nor is their any superiority of the white over the black, all of you are children of Adam and Adam was made out of dust

These proud Arabs shook with anger when he said this. They took up arms when he preached all those global principles. They persecuted him and his followers and set a price on his head. He preached for thirteen years. They were powerful; the worldly power was in their hands. They were powerful in numbers; in their cult of idolatry. Of course one can say that he did not wield the temporal power that they had for he and his followers were just a handful. So he could not react. Even a worm turns. If you misbehave towards a child he is going to frown at you. Knowing very well that a child is a child and you are a grown up person, that is human nature. But how did he behave? They would drag his followers, on scorching sand with chains and thorns beneath them tearing their bodies into pieces. He never cursed them. They would do every type of injury to him which they could possibly do. We do not find one instance in which he cursed them.

One day as the Holy Prophet ﷺ was walking after giving his message to his opponents and someone threw the intestines of a camel, full of filth and dirt from the housetop on him. He was splashed with all that filth but he continued to walk with the same dignity and serenity. We, the Muslims of today would not tolerate even the slightest frown from anybody, but what was the example set by him? He went to his home and asked his daughter Fatimah ﷺ to bring water, he changed his clothes and he started washing those clothes which had been soiled. While he was washing his clothing, his daughter who was very small, was burning with rage and she said to him:

Oh father, you are a man of God...
Madinah to Karbala

He looked at her with a smile and said as he was washing his clothing:

Daughter! I have not been sent to curse. They will see the truth one day.

Journey to Taif

When the people of Makkah did not listen to his message he went from there to Taif, a place quite far away from Makkah, he went there by foot in the scorching heat of the sun with only one companion named Zayd ibn Haritha. The chiefs of Makkah had sent a message to the chiefs of Taif, that when he arrives there he should be greeted with abuse by the by street urchins and the hooligans of the town. This they did. He was greeted in that fashion. He proceeded to the market place amidst all that taunts, stood in the market place and gave the message to believe in one God and live a life of righteousness. The hooligans spat on his face and when they found that it was not possible for them to withhold him from speaking they started stoning him. He was stoned to an extent that his entire body bled, with blood oozing out from different parts of his body. But he gave the message with the same serenity, dignity and calmness. When he had given the message he came out of the town, again abused by the thugs. On his way to Makkah he found a vineyard and sat down under a small tree to wipe his wounds. He bled so profusely from the stoning that his blessed feet became clotted to his shoes. Zayd who was his companion, said:

Oh prophet of God, curse these people they are cruel. Their behaviour is highly inhumane.

Dua at Taif

As the Holy Prophet was wiping the wounds, he looked at Zayd who was standing by his side and he smiled. The angel Gabriel came to him with the angel of mountains and said that if the Holy Prophet consented, the angel would crush Taif between the two mountains. He put the cloth on the sand and raised his hands and said:

اللهِ إِلَيْكَ أَشْكُو ضَعْفِي وَقُوِّي وَقَلْةٌ حِيثِي وَهُوَائِي عَلَى النَّاسِ

يَأَرْحَمَ الْرَّاضِيَنَّ أَنتَ أَرْحَمُ الْرَّاضِيَنَّ

أَنتَ رَبُّ الْمُسْتَضْعَفِينَ وَأَنتَ رَبِّي
O Allah, to You I complain of my weakness, my lack of resources and my lowliness before men. Oh, Most Merciful of those who show mercy! You are the Lord of the weak and You are my Lord. To whom will You relinquish my fate? To one who will misuse me? Or to an enemy to whom You have given power over me? If You are not angry with me I don’t care what happens to me. Your favor is all that counts for me. I take refuge in the light of Your countenance, by which all darkness is illuminated. And the things of this world and next are rightly ordered. I wish to please You until You are pleased. There is no power and no might, save in You

Migration to Madinah

When, the embodiment of tolerance, finds that the persecution of his enemies in Makkah was not coming to an end after thirteen years of labour he asked his followers to migrate to Madinah. He himself migrated and the message which he gave again to them to the Makkans was the 109th Sura, al-Kaafirun (the Unbelievers) which we Muslims read without knowing probably, was:

قُلْ يَا أَيُّهَا الْكَافِرُونَ

Say: ‘O rejecters of truth!

لَا أَعْبُدُ مَآ تُعْبِدُونَ

I do not worship that which you worship.
Nor do you worship whom I worship.

To you your way of life and to me my way of life

No abuse and no curses. No demonstration of any anger or any vengeance at all that persecution and he leaves. They chased him. They twice arrived where he was resting on the way; he escaped miraculously and arrived in Madinah. In Madinah there had been a group of Muslims already and these few Muslims from Makkah joined them. Madinah had not known any State. He gave the first constitution of a state in the history of mankind as detailed earlier in this book. Imagine, this unlettered person, from where did he get all this knowledge? There was no precedent; there was nothing which he could imitate or copy from anywhere. He established the State of Madinah, on the principles of justice and equity. His enemies followed him. They brought armies. The first army they brought and invaded Madinah; and the first battle took place at Badr. He had a much smaller army, only 313, poorly equipped, and shabbily dressed, barefooted soldiers. Men facing an army, armed to the teeth, with helmets, armour and horses. One thousand selected soldiers from Makkah but they were routed miraculously. He stood there not to kill but to invite them to truth.

The only bloodless conquest in history

When the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ eventually conquered Makkah, it is the one conquest where blood was not shed. The enemy were so overawed by this Muslim army, which was not very large, not larger than they could bring into the field. They surrendered. Then he said at the same hill, from where he had given his original message, to believe in the one God and adopt the life of goodness and righteousness. Those arch-enemies, those leaders who had led armies, had killed Muslims, had perpetrated all kinds of crimes, arson, loot and murder were brought before him in chains. He asked them:
Tolerance

Up to this time you were powerful. You held the power of
governance etc. in your hands. You did whatever you did
during these 22 years. How should I behave towards you today?

They trembled. They knew that even the most civilised law of the world
could not spare them their lives but they also knew the greatness of this
man. His forgiveness, magnanimity and greatness of his soul; so they said
in reply:

Thou art a good brother and a good nephew

That was an Arab idiom that was a sort of appeal for mercy. He said to
them:

Yes. That I am and I will say to you the same thing which
Prophet Joseph had said about his brothers, who had been
cruel to him: [12:92]

لا تنفِّب عليكم اليوُمِ يعْفِرُ الله لكُمْ وَهُوَ أَرْحَمُ الرَّاحِمِينَ

Go all of you are free today. No account will be taken of you
of your crimes. I forgive you and I pray to God to forgive you
because He is the Most Merciful.

This man who was born amongst the barbarians, where taking the blood
of another person on the slightest pretext was considered to be an act of
chivalry, set this example which is unparalleled in the history of mankind.
It was not merely a sermon to be merciful, it was an actual event and the
mercy was shown to the enemy. Today Muslims in their ignorance do not
wish to show mercy even to their neighbour. How far have we gone? How
are we representing our leader, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ? Of
course the world saw that this band of Muslims, whom the Holy Prophet
Muhammad ﷺ had trained, rose to be the mightiest force in the history
of mankind for all that was good. They became pioneers in the field of
human relations. They wrote the most illumined chapter in human
history, where tribalism, racialism, caste, serf and master and all these
things were wiped off. In that society which Islam built up, they emerged
in history as the teachers of every branch of knowledge to every part of
mankind; to every part of this world, wherever they could go. They
emerged as the standard bearers of the highest manifestations of morality.
Madinah to Karbala

Here also I challenge that the history of mankind cannot produce another event of this type. This will also give the idea as to how a Muslim can practice and should practice Islam. Not in this shabby manner in which we practice it. This is not Islamic practice. This is the practicing of a sort of cult or of a sort of social heritage or of something which is just nominalism. Worshipping a name or fearing for a name.

Sultan Salauddin Ayoubi

Many of you must have heard the name Sultan Salauddin. Of course his name was very well known in Europe, where for centuries the mothers there used to calm their children by saying:

Saladin has come

His very name was made a sort of terror; but what type of man was this Muslim? Long after the period of the Sahaba or companions, when so much of waning of the spirit of the original spirit had come. All those who are students of history know about the crusades. Crusades were the attempt by large armies of Europe to take away Palestine from the Muslims. These crusades continued for quite a long time until that crusade which was led by Richard, the Lion heart, as king of England. The army of the crusaders was able to conquer Palestine and to capture Jerusalem. The Muslim army was defeated. When these crusaders entered Jerusalem; their own historians write, that they killed every Muslim man, women and child. So much so that when their horses went into the city, the horses had to wade through blood of these innocent people, up to the knees. This tragedy had happened when after sometime, this small chieftain, Salauddin al-Ayubi, who was not the caliph of Islam, who was not the head of the Islamic Empire, but a small chieftain, brought up in the Khanqah of al-Ghaus al-Azam, Sayyid Abd al-Qaadir al-Jilaani, educated and trained there spiritually and academically; this man stood up with his small army and went to fight the battle with those crusaders who were in command of that city and of Palestine itself. The army of these crusaders was about ten times larger than the army of Sultan Salauddin. The battle started and it raged for several days. When the commander in chief of the army of the crusaders, King Richard, the Lion heart, was badly wounded this gave the Muslims the opportunity to strike the hardest, in order to win the battle.
Tolerance

What did Salauddin do? When he found that, the commander in chief of this army, ten times larger in number, that had killed his own people, when they conquered Palestine, was badly wounded, he raised the flag of truce. He said:

We are Muslims; we will not fight whilst the commander in chief of the enemy is badly wounded and our enemy is now handicapped.

I have not read in human history any other example of this type. Of course the enemy wanted this, but they were amazed as to whether Salauddin had gone mad. He raised this flag of truce. Not only this. He disguised himself, took medicines with him; because in those days Muslim medical men were the highest in the field. He went into the enemy camp, put his life in danger, and treated his enemy, stayed there for a few weeks until this enemy was fully cured. He came back to his camp raised the flag and said:

The chief of the enemy had been cured and is capable of leading his army, therefore the fighting could resume.

The only other instance of chivalry and magnanimity of this sort was displayed in South Africa, by Nelson Mandela, a great man who can put many Muslims to shame. Saladin was actually following the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, which we don’t do. After that when the battle raged thick and heavy this small army of Muslims was able to gain victory and they had a large number of prisoners of war. These prisoners of war were brought in chains before Salauddin. He asked the counsel of his generals as to what should be done? They said that every one of them should be beheaded because they killed innocent Muslims, men, women and children. Salauddin addressed them in his historic words. He said:

My generals! Are you speaking as Muslims or only as generals of this army?

They asked him as to what he meant. He said:

It is shameful for you to speak as Muslims in this manner. I am going to imitate my leader Muhammad ﷺ when he entered Makkah. Those of his enemies who had persecuted him and his enemies for 22 years, he forgave them therefore I am going to forgive every one of them.

He said:
Madinah to Karbala

My dear enemies! Enemies of Islam and Muslims; God has given us victory over you but now that you are in our hands we are not going to take any revenge from you. The battle has ended; you are free to go back to your country.

**Emulate the Holy Prophet Muhammad**

To write about the contribution of this great man, the Holy Prophet Muhammad, to the cause of human civilisation requires volumes. He has made a contribution in every field of human life. He has given a very comprehensive code of human life but we are unfortunate, that we are surrounded in a mental climate where we don’t wish to emulate that illustrious example, although that alone is Islam according to the Holy Qur'aan. We are told in the 33rd Sura al-Ahzab (the Confederates) in verse 21:

латَّقَدْ كَانَ لَكُمْ فِي رَسُولِ اللَّهِ أَسْوَأً حَسَنَةً

Ye have indeed in the Messenger of Allah a beautiful pattern (of conduct)

Islam is what the Holy Prophet preached and what he practiced. That is Islam. We must study the life of the Holy Prophet Muhammad and try our level best to imitate him and his example; whereby alone we can acquire greatness. Islam is not based on any mysterious dogma. Islam is the way of life based on action; unless we as Muslims can build up that action; can build up our lives as spiritual and moral giants that Islam wants us to be we would not be regarded by Allah on the Day of Judgement to have done our duty.
JIHAD IN ITS PROPER PERSPECTIVE

Literal meaning of the word Islam

The word "Islam" (ﺍﻹﺳﻼﻡ), is a verbal noun originating from the tri-literal root لَّمْسُ، and is derived from the Arabic verb "أسلَمّ", which means ‘to give up, to submit or to surrender’. Allah ﷺ says in the 3rd Sura, Aal-i-Imraan ﷺ [The Family of ‘Imraan] in Verse 83:

وَلَّهُ أَسْلَمَ مَن فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالأَرْضِ

Everything in the heaven and earth is Muslim [submits to the will of God]

Another word derived from the same root is "salaam" (ﺳﻼﻡ) which means ‘peace’. "أسلَمّ" is ‘submission’ and ‘obedience’. In the religious sense, Islam means submission to the will of God and obedience to His law. Thus Islam stands for peace, tolerance, harmony, compassion and human dignity. Thus Islam does not stand for violence, militancy and brutality. Islam introduced mercy and the dignity of mankind to the world. When the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was raised human dignity was lost and a system of brutality prevailed worldwide. There was racial, religious and tribal discrimination. Islam stood up against slavery and oppression. It stood for the rights of orphans, women and children. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ gave dignity to mankind, irrespective of religion, culture or race.

Wrong perception of Jihad جهاد in this modern age

There is a completely wrong perception of Jihad جهاد in this modern age. The wrong actions of Muslims and it exploitation by the western media is responsible for this misrepresentation. The layman in the Muslim world and the non-Muslims when they hear the word Jihad جهاد it brings a picture of merciless killing, fighting against non-Muslims, acts of brutality and Muslims fighting to spread Islam. This misconception has to be removed. According to the Holy Qur’aan and the practice of the Holy Prophet ﷺ the word Jihad جهاد literally means ‘exerting, struggling,
striving’ it is from the root جهاد (ja’had) or جهود (ju’hud). Thus it means putting an extreme effort to counter evil. All dictionaries of Arabic describe it so. It is an extreme effort to better the lot of mankind by struggling against the devil and the lower self to promote the dignity of man and mankind. Jihad جهاد is thus a defensive struggle against the enemy, the lower self إن النفس لأمارة (an-nafs al-ammara) and wrong desires; like lust, greed, arrogance, hatred, corruption and immorality. It can have a social, political, religious or secular dimension to eradicate evil. It is a struggle to preserve life not to kill.

Jihad in the Holy Qur’aan

The Holy Qur’aan can be understood either through some words in the Holy Qur’aan (text) or context (verses before or after a particular verse). There are 35 verses of the Holy Qur’aan which contain the word Jihad جهاد or its derivatives. Those who have a negative connotation of the word Jihad جهاد gives laymen a sense that Islam has specified a brutal concept against mankind. Our fellow Muslims who are misled and misguided to declare their violent, brutal, criminal activities to be Jihad جهاد or Holy War are contributing to this negative portrayal of Islam. Holy war is a wrong translation of Jihad جهاد. Holy war is الاقتال al-Harb al-Muqaddus. Of the 35 verses of the Holy Qur’aan which contain the word Jihad جهاد or its derivatives, not a single verse contain Jihad جهاد as suggesting aggressive fighting and killing. The actions of misguided, ignorant people are giving the noble concept of Jihad جهاد a bad name. Not a single verse combines the word Jihad جهاد with قتال (killing) fighting or warfare. This is with regard to the text of the Holy Qur’aan. Putting the 35 verses which deals with Jihad جهاد into context. 30 verses have no context or connection with fighting or warfare. There are only few verses which possess the context of lawful defensive warfare and they all appear in one chapter (Sura). They are in the 9th Sura, at-Tawbah (Repentance) التوبة and they refer to a lawful defensive war.

Lawful Defensive war

The command of a lawful defensive war was revealed after the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ migrated to Madinah. In the thirteen years of the
Makkan period no verse of *qitaal* (killing), warfare to preserve life, even in self defense, was revealed. Despite the brutality, oppression and massacre killing perpetrated by the criminals of Makkah, against Muslims, the companions were patient and were not allowed to take up arms to save their lives. Five verses on *Jihad* جهاد were revealed in the Makkan period before migration when defensive war was totally prohibited. The following was revealed in Makkah e.g.:

The 25th Sura, *al-Furqaan* ﴿اﻟْفِرْقَانِ﴾ in verse 52:

فَلَا تُطِعُوا الْكَافِرِينَ وَجَاهِدُوهُمْ بِجِدْهَا كَبِيرَ

So, (O men of faith,) do not follow the disbelievers and launch a large-scale struggle against them by means of (logic and preaching of the Qur’aan)

The 29th Sura, *al-‘Ankabūt* ﴿اَلْاَنْكَبَعُ﴾ verse 6:

وَمَنْ جَاهَدَ فَإِلَّا مَعَهُ يُجَاهِدُ لِتَفْسِحَ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَغَنِيٌّ عَنِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

Whoever strives hard (for the cause of Truth) strives for his own (benefit). Surely Allah ﷺ is independent of (the obedience, submission, toils and struggles) of all the worlds.

The 29th Sura, *al-‘Ankabūt* ﴿اَلْاَنْكَبَعُ﴾ verse 69:

وَالَّذِينَ جَاهَدُوا فِي نَفْسِهِمْ سَبِيلًا وَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَمَعَ المُحْسِنِينَ

And those who toil hard (and fight the lower self vehemently) for Our cause We certainly guide them in Our Ways (of striving for and attaining to the gnosis — sayr and wusul), and verily Allah ﷺ blesses the men of spiritual excellence with His companionship.

These verses containing the derivatives from the word *Jihad* جهاد explain the broad based concept of *Jihad* جهاد.
Different Categories of Jihad

*Jihad* جهاد can be a physical, moral, educational or charitable struggle to uplift mankind. Even the word reasoning or *Ijtihad* اجتهاد comes from the same root. So it’s not even confined to lawful warfare. There are different kinds of *Jihad* جهاد. Even the word *Ibadah* عبادة is wrongfully confined to prayer or fasting. *Ibadah* عبادة is a comprehensive concept. Any act of modesty, purity, humility, charity or actions to better the lot of people for the sake of Allah جلّ وعلا is *Ibadah* عبادة. Similarly *Jihad* جهاد has five dimensions; spiritual, academic, social, political and defensive. We are neglecting four dimensions and we are emphasizing just a single dimension.

In the spiritual dimension the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ stated:

A man who fights against his lower self, to control wrong negative desires, to develop morality, spirituality and humanity is *Jihad* جهاد.

The *Sufia* and *Awliya* have being doing this throughout the history of Islam. This is known as the *al-jihad al-akbar* (the greatest *jihad*). It is narrated in the Sahih Hadith by Imam Tirmidhi٢٩ (209 AH - 279 AH) that when the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was asked who is a *Mujahid* مهايد he replied:

A *Mujahid* مهايد is one who fights against his lower self and protects his human, moral, ethical and spiritual qualities in his life through the process of self purification.

The hadith master Mullah Ali Qari علی بن سلطان محمد القاری (d.1014 A.H./1605 C.E.)٣٠ relates in his book *al-Mawdu`at al-kubra*, also known as *al-Asrar al-marfu`a* Suyuti said: *al-Khatib al-Baghdadi* relates in his "History" on the authority of Jaabir: The Holy Prophet ﷺ returned from one of his campaigns saying:

‘You have come forth in the best way of coming forth: you have come from the smaller *jihad* to the greater *jihad*.’ They said: "And what is the greater *jihad*?” He replied: "The striving of Allah ﷺ’s servants against their lower desires.’

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ also said the best *Jihad* is to say:
A word of truth in front of an oppressive ruler!
[Sunan Al-Nasa’i, No. 4209]

**Who can order a defensive war**

The authority to declare a defensive war is in the hands of the Islamic State authority. Not a single person, scholar, leader or group of individuals, no organisation has an authority to declare Jihad in the absence of the Islamic State authority. Even in a lawful armed struggle the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ gave specific rules of engagement. One cannot kill women, children, priests or people worshipping in churches or synagogues. Do not burn trees, people or mutilate people. Islam does not allow the killing of non-combatants, civilians and innocent people. The essence of jihad is ‘to strive’ for peace.
This is a computer image of first spiritual centre (Khanqah): The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s blessed Masjid and Khanqah as built by the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, a recreation, based on information from Madinah Research & Study Centre, Madinah.

1. Holy Prophet ﷺ’s mihrab
2. Ayesha b. Abu Bakr ﷺ’s residence
3. Hafsa b. Umar ﷺ’s residence
4. Zainab b. Jahsh ﷺ’s residence (not pictured)
5. Zainab b. Kuzayma RA’s residence (not pictured)
6. Fatima ﷺ’s residence (not pictured)
7. Door-Baab Uthman b. Affan
8. Ahlul Suffa Residence
   i. Juwayriya ﷺ’s residence (not pictured)
   j. Rumlra ﷺ’s residence (not pictured)
   k. Saffiya ﷺ’s residence (not pictured)
   l. Door -Baab-ul-Rahma
   m. Abu Bakr ﷺ’s residence
9. Sa’d b. Abi Waqas ﷺ residence (not pictured)
10. al-Abbas b. Abdul Muttalib ﷺ (Holy Prophet ﷺ’s uncle) residence
11. Jafar b. Abi Sadiq ﷺ residence
When the Beloved of Allah ﷺ, The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was ushered into the Realm of Divine Beauty, he had a following of over two hundred thousand companions and one million Muslims, all over Arabia, following the Shariah (the general Islamic code of rules for the masses). Amidst these followers were about four hundred and fifty ascetics (fuqara٣١). They were a group of Muslims who opted to adopt voluntary poverty, fully devoting themselves to the extreme love and reverence of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and the worship of Allah ﷺ. They lived and spent much of their time on the veranda of the blessed home of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ within the precincts of his Masjid devoted especially to get a glimpse of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s blessed countenance; to live close to his spiritual benevolence (fayz) and to pray hence they renounced worldly trappings.

Description

Allah ﷺ refers to them in the Holy Qur’aan in the 6th Sura al- An’aam [The Cattle] Verse 52:

وَلاَ تَطَرَّدِ اللَّذِينَ يُدعُونَ رَبَّهُمْ بِالْغَدَةِ وَالْعَشِيِّ يُبِيدُونَ وَجْهَهُ

And do not turn away these (run-down and broken-hearted) people (from your company and close circle) who call upon their Lord persistently seeking only His pleasure morning and evening.

In Tafsir al-Tustari by Abu Muhammad Sahl ibn 'Abd Allah [818 C.E. (203 AH) - 896 C.E. (283 AH)]٣٢, he comments about the above quoted verse:

They desire (aradu) the countenance of Allah ﷺ and His good pleasure and they are not absent from Him for a moment’. Then he said: “The most abstinent (azhad) of people are those who have the purest source of food; the most devout (a’bad) of people are those who are most earnest in their effort to uphold His commandments and prohibitions; and the most beloved (ahabb)
of them to God are those who are the sincerest (ansahuhum) towards His creatures.

The Benevolent Gaze

Allah ﷻ also says to His beloved, Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in the 18th Sura, al-Kahf (the Cave) in Verse 28:

وَاصَبِرْ نَفْسَكَ مَعَ الذِّينَ يَدْعُونَ رَبَّهُمْ بِالْغَدَاةِ وَالْعَشِيّ

And keep thy soul (O My Beloved Muhammad ﷺ) content with those who call on their Lord morning and evening, seeking His Face; and let not thine eyes pass beyond them,

Allah ﷻ is instructing His Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, to keep his benevolent gaze upon those devoting themselves to the extreme love and reverence of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and the worship of Allah ﷻ. Allah ﷻ says in the Holy Qur'aan in 52nd Sura, at-Tūr (Mount Sinai) ﷺ in verse 48:

فَإِنَّكَ بَأَعْصَمِنَا

Surely you are before My eyes. (Recipient of Allah ﷻ’s special attention)

Nothing is absent from the sight of Allah ﷻ but He has made the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ the main focus of His all embracing observation, hence the centre of His special attention and blessing.

Allah ﷻ instructs the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ to keep his blessed gaze on those who remember Allah ﷻ constantly. By extension we to whom the message of the Holy Qur'an was sent are asked to keep ourselves in such noble company, so that we may be blessed. The true servants of Allah ﷻ are those whose hearts are turned to Him morning, noon and night, and who do not seek worldly gains, but desire only Allah ﷻ’s grace and His presence. They are poor in the world, but their company gives far more inward and spiritual satisfaction than worldly grandeur. Allah ﷻ’s benevolent gaze is on the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ
Ashab us-Sufa

whilst the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s benevolent gaze is on these true servants of Allah.

THE SACRED SANCTUARY

The As’hab us-Suffah (Companions of the Pure), some historians record were those who lived in the place of Suffah (the Bench or Veranda), individuals who were impoverished or homeless when they migrated to Madinah, either had no family or were too poor to afford their own accommodation, so they sought refuge at the Haram ash-Sharif al-Madinah [The Noble Sacred Sanctuary of the City of Madinah]. The spiritual Haram ash-Sharif is the Holy Prophet Muhammad. He is the sacred sanctuary to which all of the lovers of Allah turn for protection. They are drowned in his reality. They seek the Beloved of Allah. So it is partially true, that many of the impoverished were refugees, but many chose to live in the place of Suffah because of their burning desire to shun all worldly distractions and completely annihilate themselves in the service of Allah and the love of His Messenger. The raised platform in Masjid an-Nabawi indicates where they lived. They were in a dynamic, ever fluctuating condition of Allah consciousness; pious, self-disciplined, dignified, and highly meticulous, drowned in the love of Allah, prepared to lay down their lives for the sake of Islam. They extremely loved the Holy Prophet Muhammad and were consequently attached to him out of love. These dedicated people, who had sacrificed all for the cause of Islam, were busy in the rigorous discipline of Safa al-qalb (purification of the heart); under the benevolent gaze (nigah) guidance of the Master.

Khanqah of the Holy Prophet Muhammad

Why did the As’hab us-Suffah choose to reside on the Veranda of the Holy Prophet Muhammad could they not find any other place in the entire city of Madinah? Their love made them sit at the door of the Beloved as beggars (saahil), with the beggars bowl (kashkol) in their hand with the intention that whatever the master teaches we will learn, whatever he feeds us we will eat, and if we get nothing else we will see his beautiful countenance. Some scholars say the word Sufi comes from the ahl as-Suffa (People of the veranda or bench) and others consider it a weak derivation. Both are right because they were in the condition without a name. Today most, with a minimal exception, that utilise the term are far from the
condition. That was the first *Khanqah* of the Sufis strategically chosen by the lovers. Their love dictated that if the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ exits from Bibi Fatimah Zahra’s house or from the other side, from Bibi Ayesha’s house they will see him. The great poet, Sufi Imam Salih Sharaf ad-Din Abu Abd-Allah Muhammad ibn Hasan al-Busiri (1212-1296CE/696AH) of Egypt, has written in his masterpiece the *Qasida al-Burda* ﻗﺼﻴﺪﺓ ﺍﻟﱪﺩﺓ, "(Poem of the Mantle)”; The poems actual title is *al-Kawakib ad-Durriya fi Madh Khayr al-Bariya* ("Celestial Lights in Praise of the Best of Creation"). It is famous throughout the Muslim world. Ponder on the love and reverence reflected in this poem written 700 years after the migration of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ to Madinah, The illumined. The very love that is branded as extreme, in this age of a sanitized cosmetic version of Islam acceptable to the godless rulers of the world and their ‘so-called’ spiritual voice, the ‘house-Ulama’, declaring all who did not follow this sanitized cosmetic version of Islam as being out of the pale of Islam. Imam al-Busiri writes:

لا طيب يعدل قرباً ضمّ أعظمّه
طلب لمن تشيف منحو ملتشم

No perfume equals the blessed earth which is touching his (the Holy Prophet ﷺ's) blessed body. Glad tidings to the person who smell it and kisses it

In another poem on the same theme an Urdu poet beautifully says:

ريشت نام بہ تی گلی گلی آنے با ن کا
تصور بنین ہرے رہنا عابدات اس کے نہیں

Spiritual discipline is acquired in your precincts
To visualise your blessed countenance is *ibadah*

To see you, to obey you and be engrossed in you
This is called *haqiqat* and *ma’rifat*, by the people of *tariqat*
**Ashab us-Sufa**

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ says in the hadith:

```
مَنْ رَأَيَّ مَرَأَةً فَقَدْ رَأَى الْحَقَّ
```

He who has seen me has seen al-Haqq (Allah ﷺ)

All the Awliya followed this same pattern of love of being in the proximity (ma’iat) of the truly accomplished Spiritual Guide (Murshid). This does not mean they neglected their worship (ibaadat), on the contrary, the love of the Spiritual Guide (Pir) and his Benevolent Gaze (tawajjuh) increased the quality of worship. The direction (Qiblah) of worship is the Kaaba but the direction (Qiblah) of love is the accomplished Spiritual Master (pir).

The As’hab us-Suffah spent their days teaching or tending to the needs of the sick, widows and orphans and; at night they would pray. They lived a humble and simple life, studying, worshipping and serving the creation. They did not engage in worldly business. Their possessions consisted of two pieces of cloth, which served as clothing, bedding and prayer carpets. They collected firewood, which they sold to make a living. They ate fallen dates and a bowl of porridge, which used to come daily from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s house. They took a single sip, passed it around, and miraculously the contents never diminished. The Holy Prophet ﷺ urged his followers to feed these devotees. The Hadith in Sahih Bukhari illustrates how Abu Hurraira ﷺ, in a condition of extreme hunger saw over 400 of the People of the Veranda’ drink from a single bowl of milk and he feared he will get nothing. He says: [I present just the relevant portions of a lengthy hadith]

Narrated Abu Hurraira ﷺ: ... I used to lay on the ground on my stomach because of hunger, and (sometimes) I used to bind a stone over my belly because of hunger. ...[The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ gave him one small bowl of milk to give the As’hab as-Suffa] "How will this little milk be enough for the people of As-Suffa?" though, I was more entitled to drink from that milk in order to strengthen myself, but behold! The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ came to order me to give that milk to them... So I took the bowl (of Milk) and started by giving it to one man who would drink his fill and return it to me, whereupon I would give it to another man who, in his turn,
would drink his fill and return it to me, and I would then offer it to another man who would drink his fill and return it to me. Finally, after the whole group had drunk their fill ... He said, "There remain you and I." I said, "You have said the truth, O Allah's Apostle!"

He [the Holy Prophet ﷺ] said,

"Sit down and drink." I sat down and drank. He said, "Drink," and I drank. He kept on telling me repeatedly to drink, till I said, "No. by Allah ﷺ Who sent you with the Truth, I have no space for it (in my stomach)." He said, "Hand it over to me." When I gave him the bowl, he praised Allah ﷺ and pronounced Allah’s name on it and drank the remaining milk.

[Sahih Bukhari, Vol 8, The Book of Ar-Riqaaq ('To make the Heart Tender) Chapter 17, Page 252, Hadith Number 6452.]

The veranda where the As’hab us-Suffah lived was the first dormitory within the first Khanqah of Islam, comprising of a Masjid, Madrasah and house for the spiritual guide to reside in and a shelter for the students. Every functioning Sufi Khanqah in the world and in the South African context, those established by Hazrath Soofie Saheb ﷺ, is built on this pattern. I pray the future custodians of his centres don’t lose sight of his vision and mission which was the vision and mission of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ presented in a beautiful methodology by Sultan-ul-Hind, Hazrath Shaykh Khwaja Sayed Muhammad Mu‘inuddîn Chishtî Ajmeri ﷺ (536 A.H./1141 CE - 6 Rajab 627 A.H, Tuesday 21 May1230 CE) ﷺ Also known as Gharib Nawaaz summed up so beautifully in the parting advice of Gharib Nawaaz ﷺ which he delivered to his followers just one month before he passed on into the realm of Divine Beauty. It is as follows:
Ashab us-Sufa

Love all and hate none
More talk of peace will avail you naught
Mere talk of God and religion will not take you far
Bring out all of the latent powers of your being and reveal the full magnificence of your mortal self
Be surcharged with peace and joy. And scatter them wherever you are and wherever you go. **Be a blazing fire of truth.**

Be a beauteous blossom of Love. And be a soothing balm of peace
With your spiritual light dispel the darkness of ignorance;
Dissolve the clouds of discord and war and spread goodwill, peace and harmony among the people.
Never seek any help, charity or favours from anybody except God
**Never go to the courts of kings,** but never refuse to bless and help the needy and the poor, the widow, and the orphan, if they come to your door
This is your mission, to serve the people
Carry it out dutifully and courageously
so that I, as your Spiritual Guide may not be ashamed of any shortcomings on your part before Allah and our Holy Predecessors in the Sufi Order (**Silsila**) on the day of Judgement

**Preservation of the pure teaching**

In the Holy Qur'aan, Allah ﷺ refers to the "As'hab al-Suffa" in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) in Verse273:

( Charity is also) for those who have voluntarily taken to poverty by dedicating their lives to the cause of Allah ﷺ - they cannot go about the land (doing business to earn their livelihood). The ignorant man thinks them to be rich because of their abstaining. You can recognize them by their mark (simplicity); they don't beg from men insistently (because they rely upon Allah ﷺ); and whatever you spend on them Allah ﷺ knows it.
Madinah to Karbala

Allah ﷺ in His infinite wisdom created people with different dispositions and potentials so that human social life may be maintained through mutual help and division of labour. Therefore, as in every community, there were among the Companions, besides good farmers and successful tradesmen or businessmen, those who were inclined to learning or to commanding armies, or who were endowed with administrative ability. Some of them, especially those who were called As’hab al-Suffa never missed the teaching of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and tried to memorize his every word. These Companions later narrated to people whatever they heard from, or witnessed in, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Through the blessing of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and Allah ﷺ’s acceptance, they outlived many of the other companions and, together with Hazrath Ayesha ﷺ, Mother of Believers, constituted the first, blessed channel (Shajrah) through which the Sunnah and reverence and love of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was handed down to future generations.

Ibn Abu Jamra ﷺ says that the Ahl as-Suffa is a proof that in healthiness in communities one should have people that are supported by the community whilst they study, worship and be a spiritual support for the community. Many modern Muslims are opposed to this idea and the quote what the great scholar Imam al-Ghazali٤٢ (450-505 AH/1058-1111 CE) mentioned in his book Ihya al-Ulum al-Din (The Revival of Religious Sciences)٤٣ in The Book of Provision, Chapter 1; about Hazrath Isa ﷺ, that he saw a man and asked:

‘What do you do?’

The man said:

‘I am worshiping’

Hazrath Isa ﷺ said:

‘Who is providing for you?’

The man said:

‘My brother’

Hazrath Isa ﷺ said:

‘Where is your brother?’

The man said:

‘In the field’

Hazrath Isa ﷺ said:
Ashab us-Sufa

‘Your brother is more of a worshipper to Allah ﷺ than you’.

Al-Ghazali also mentions the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s Companion Hazrath Umar ibn Al-Khattab ﷺ, who used to stress this point further by telling people:

Never should anyone of you think that dua (supplication) for sustenance without work will avail him, for heaven never rains gold or silver

Traditionally scholars interpret this incident that in essence Hazrath Isa ﷺ was telling him is that he should not become deluded, because he has been given this opportunity to worship Allah ﷺ, whilst somebody was willing to support him. The brother that supports him not only gets the reward of the worship and whatever else that the brother he supports does, but also the reward of supporting him. So the working brother was better than the worshipping brother.

On the other hand, Tirmidhi record a hadith from Hazrath Anas ﷺ:

There were two brothers at the time of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, of whom one would come to the Holy Prophet ﷺ to seek knowledge, and the other would work to provide for them both. The worker felt that the situation to be unfair and complained about his brother to the Holy Prophet ﷺ, who replied:

‘It may be that you are provided with sustenance because of him.’

The Muslim Community should take a lesson from the Jewish Community, whose Rabbis serve the Jewish community-at-large, and whatever their needs, whether spiritual or material is taken care of. The Rabbi is paid by generosity of patrons and the community-at-large. These Rabbis study and research for the good and unity of the Jewish community as a whole and many Jews give a portion of the salary to pay these scholars. It is sad to note that in most Muslim communities the Ulama and Muazzins are amongst the lowliest paid in the community.

Many of the As‘hab as-Suffa ended up becoming very wealthy. Hazrath Salman al-Farsi ﷺ was one of those who ended up wealthy and it is
Madinah to Karbala

narrated that he wept on his deathbed. One of the Sahaba asked him as to why he was weeping and he replied:

When we were at the Suffa, we took an oath with the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ that we would not take more from this world than what a rider needs and I feel as if I have broken that oath and I am ashamed to meet the Holy Prophet ﷺ.

It is reported that when Hazrath Salman al-Farsi ﷺ passed away he had a handful of Dirham’s, an ablution (wudhu) pot and a few other possessions. Many of the As’hab as-Suffa ended up becoming great scholars. Hazrath Ibn Masood ﷺ, Hazrath Abu Dharr al-Ghiffari ﷺ and Hazrath Abu Hurraira ﷺ were amongst those. So sincere scholars should be supported in their efforts to bring knowledge to the people, whilst on the other hand the scholar must be sincere and not use people unjustly.

Non-Muslims adopted these lofty principles

These incredible principles, instilled into the As’hab as-Suffa were embodied by people like Florence Nightingale,44 (12 May 1820 – 13 August 1910) the only woman, who other women are envious of, despite the fact, she died over a hundred years ago. Florence Nightingale wrote in her book ‘England needs to go to the Sufis45.’ Florence Nightingale entered the Sultan Hasan Mosque46, and she wrote that for the first time, she found what she was looking for. She said:

I never found this in the churches of England.

She continued:

I found equality, and that there was a place for women in this religion.

They chased her out with a stick, and yet, she said:

I don’t blame them.

She visited the Al-Azhar University47 جامعة الأزهر الشريف in Egypt and she was struck by the spirituality, and she says in her diary:

I’ve heard in my heart something telling me turn to Makkah, face Makkah, face Makkah, all of humanity is one, we are all under One God, and there is salvation for all of us. I kept hearing in my heart there is no God but God, believe in the One true God.48
Ashab us-Sufa

She was a Unitarian, she was not a Trinitarian. This is Florence Nightingale, one of the great icons of the British people. This was a woman who was given a Qilada, the extraordinary medal by the Sultan Abdul Majid of the Ottoman Caliphate because she came and served the Turkish soldiers that were victims of the Crimean War as well as she served the British soldiers, because she didn’t differentiate between people. She embodied the Sufi teachings.

Tolerance

One of the things about the people of Tasawwuf, traditionally in the Muslim World, is that they were known for their tolerance. They were people who were less condemnatory and less judgmental which is obviously why they were very successful in calling other people to Islam.

Allah says in the 17th Sura, al-Isrā’ (the Night journey), in verse15:

وَمَا كُنْتَ مُعَذَّبٌينَ حَتَّى نَبَتَتْ رَسُوَّلُاً

We do not punish people until We send a messenger to them

So those people who have not heard the true message of Islam or met true Muslims who embody authentic Islam as emissaries of the Holy Prophet Muhammad have an excuse with their Lord for whatever they’re doing; whereas, we have no excuse for any disobedience. That is a different way of looking instead of looking at people with contempt. One should actually look at them with compassion. Instead of seeing them as ones enemies one should look at them as friends, potential brothers and sisters. That’s what the Holy Qur’aan says in the 60th Sura al-Mumtahinah (the Woman to be examined) in verse7:

عَسَى اللَّهُ أَنْ يُجْعَلَ بِنْتَكُمْ وَبِنْتَ الَّذِينَ عَادَتِهِمْ مِنْهُمْ مُؤَدِّيَةً وَاللَّهُ قَدِيرٌ وَاللَّهُ غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ

It may be that Allah will put love between you and those of them with whom you now feel enmity and animosity towards. Allah is All Powerful, and Allah is Forgiving, Merciful.
We should not condemn people to hell because of our egoistic, self-centered views. Some people condemn those who have never been given the true message of Islam to the fire. Even ibn Urafa ﷺ, one of our great scholars said that there are people on the earth who are:

\[
\textit{kaafiru hukman la ma’nan}
\]

They are kaafir by ruling but not in meaning

This is what we would call in English, ‘a non-Muslim’. A ‘non-Muslim’ is different from a ‘disbeliever’ or kaafir. A kaafir is one who conceals the truth although he knows it to be the truth. Why this difference? Because ‘a non-Muslim’ have never heard a message; to reject or accept! Why would Allah ﷺ take somebody into account who was never presented a message? Allah ﷺ would only take a person to account if that person was exposed to the truth. Allah ﷺ is just. Allah ﷺ says:

\[
\text{Don’t set up idols with God, once you know}
\]

The Ulama say even an idolater will not be thrown into the fire if they did not receive a ‘true’ message, from an embodiment of the truth. Remember the ‘disbelievers’ of Makkah received the message from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ whom they had called ‘the truthful’ (as-saadiq) and ‘the honest’ (al-ameen).

**Who is a Kaafir**

The very word Kaafir کافر, is the active participle of the root ر ف ك "to cover". As a pre-Islamic term it described farmers burying seeds in the ground, covering them with soil while planting. The Holy Qur’aan says in the 57th Sura al-Hadid (Iron) ﷑ in verse 20:

\[
\text{أَعْجَبَ الْكُفَّارَ بِبَيَانِ}
\]

Thus, the word kaafir implies the meaning ‘a person who hides or covers’. Thus a kaafir in the Islamic Theological sense is the one who ‘hides or covers the truth of Islam knowingly’. All of the hadith indicating the people before Islam are in the fire relate to those who introduced these ideas like Amr ibn Luhayy the first to bring idols into Makkah. Reflect on what is being said and recognize the absolute need for sound knowledge based on the majority of our scholars. The modern age is in disarray
because they have people like us to give them the message. We need to introspect.

**Intolerance in the modern world**

Tragically, the reason so many Europeans felt disillusioned with Christianity was the centuries of intolerance and pointless religious violence. The Muslims on the other hand were far less prone to religious violence and the levels of tolerance for other faiths were unparalleled in the pre-modern world. But the greed of the Capitalist/Zionist alliance and occupation of Muslim lands show that violence and intolerance have become the powers of pursuit among religious thrill seekers in much of the modern Muslim world. It is not only non-Muslims that find this cosmetic Islam odious but increasingly many modern Muslims are becoming disillusioned with the faith itself, blaming the behavior of the practitioners on the religion and seeking alternatives, or other faiths or philosophies. Many Muslims are in deep denial about this, and are refusing to even consider it but I am seeing its signs everywhere and it troubles me deeply. Unfortunately, many do not know what every sincere Muslim scholar, a dying breed, knows; that the worst enemies of Islam are from within. The worst of these are those who delude themselves and others by the deeply dyed religious exterior that they project. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said about them,

```plaintext
إِنْ لَهُ أَصْحَابًا يَحْفَرُ أَحْدَاهُمْ صَلَاتَهُمْ مَعَ صَلَاتِهِمْ
```

When you see them (the followers of, the blasphemer, Dhul Khawaisira at-Tamimi), pray you will consider your own prayers insignificant

```plaintext
هَذَا قَوْمٌ يَتَّلُوَنْ كَتَابَ اللَّهِ رَتِّبَ اِلِّهَ يُجَازُ حَنَّاِجَرِهِمْ
```

They recite the Holy Qur’aan but it does not exceed the limits of their throat. 50

[Sahih Bukhari, Vol 8, The Book of Al-Adab (Good manners) Chapter 95, Hadith Number 6163 (Also see vol. 4 Hadith no. 3610)]

In other words, they don’t understand the true meanings. The outward religious appearance and character of these people deluded thousands in the past, and continues to delude people today. The Muslims should be aware that despite their adherence to certain aspects of Islam, they
consciously or unconsciously have become extremists of the worst type, due to a certain brand of Islam being disseminated throughout the modern Muslim world by in cahoots with the Capitalist/Zionist alliance, by institutions funded by petro-dollars. We live in times now when most people including molvis and muftis studying in Ulooms and institutions sponsored by petro-dollars don’t know what the truth is anymore. Our books, including classical Islamic texts are being manipulated. Books reprinted i.e. later editions; have things removed from it because the publishing house was purchased by a certain sect (Wahabi/Deobandi/Saudi) that didn’t want those ideas disseminated in the Ummah, so people don’t even realize, that their books are being manipulated. The tradition of Islam is being changed in computers, by being deleted and retype-set. Refer to the following website and read the article ‘The re-formers of Islam’.  
http://www.masud.co.uk/ISLAM/nuh/masudq3.htm

Another interesting article to read is ‘Intellectual Deceit: Tampering with Islamic Manuscripts at Institutes in Saudi Arabia by Shaykh Monawwar Ateeq, the student of Ash-Shaykh as-Sayyid Muhammad bin Ibrahim al-Yacoubi al-Hasani al-Idrisi 51 who visited South Africa on many occasions in recent times. He took the Mufti of Syria, Shaykh Ahmed Hassoun to task over blasphemous statements against the pristine honour of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. See 
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vBSw51aGu3A

Our real situation is this: we Muslims have lost a theologically sound understanding of our teaching. Islam has been hijacked by a discourse of anger and the rhetoric of rage. We have allowed for too long our minbars to become bully pulpits in which people with often recognizable psychopathology use anger - a very powerful emotion - to rile Muslims up, only to leave them feeling bitter and spiteful towards people who in the most part are completely unaware of the conditions in the Muslim world, or the oppressive assaults of some Western countries on Muslim peoples. We have lost our bearings because we have lost our theology. The so-called spiritual centres, Spiritual Masters and scholars that should guide and caution the predatory elite within the Muslim community have themselves become slaves to the MasterCard and cash handouts and they
in turn issue a Visa card of forgiveness for the wrong actions of predatory elite within the Muslim community. Spiritual Centres and Masjids, built originally on piety, are being funded by haraam wealth. This is the major reason for the dysfunctional role of institutions. [Read my book ‘Attack on the Spiritual Heart of Islam’].

**Spiritual Nourishment**

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ did not only physically nourish his followers; he also nurtured his follower’s souls by giving them importance. He never used his position to exploit people, he did the opposite. It is said those who met him were in awe and those that spent time with him fell in love with him. When the Khsra, King of Persia sent messengers to him, the messengers felt more awe than in the palace of their king.

**Simplicity**

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ slept on the floor and sat on the earth. It’s a reminder that we are from earth and we should not distance ourselves from it. In a hadith in Sahih Muslim, Hazrath Abu Hurairah ﷺ reported the Holy Prophet ﷺ as saying:

وَمَاتَوَاضَعَ أَحَدًا لِّلَّهِ إِلَّاً رَفَعَهُ اللَّهُ

The one who is humble for the sake of Allah ﷺ, Allah ﷺ raises him in status\(^52\)

[Sahih Muslim, Vol. 6; The Book of Birr, Nurturing Ties and Manners, (Kitaab Al-Birr was-Salat-I-wal-Adab) Page 452, Hadith Number 6592]

There is a hadith recorded in Sahih Bukhari about a she-camel of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ called al-Adba that the companions considered too fast, for any other camel to surpass in speed. A desert Arab (Bedouin) came into the city with his camel and it beat the camel of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in a race. The Sahaba felt disappointed that the camel of their master had been beaten. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said to them:
Madinah to Karbala

إنَّ حقًا على الله أن لا يرفع شيئًا من الدنيا إلا وضعة

Allah has made it incumbent upon Himself that nothing would be raised high (by others or by themselves) in this world except that He (Allah) lowers it down (drops it).

[Sahih Bukhari, Vol 8, The Book of Ar-Riqaaq (To make the Heart Tender) Chapter 38, The Humility or modesty or to lower one self; Page 275, Hadith Number 6501]

The Holy Prophet Muhammad also said:

He who is humble for the sake of Allah by a degree, Allah will elevate him one degree, until he reaches the highest degrees and he who is arrogant toward Allah, Allah will lower him one degree until he reaches the lowest of low degrees.

The Holy Prophet’s camel was being glorified by his followers and was getting fame, so Allah lowered it. This was his way of teaching. Study the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s character you and fall in love with him. Shaykh Ahmad ibn Idris Qarafi said in Kitaab al-Furuq (Anwar al-Buruq fi Anwa’i al-Furuq)

If the Holy Prophet Muhammad had no other miracle then the men and women he produced would be enough as his miracle

Some people used to come into the gathering of the Holy Prophet Muhammad and his Sahaba and they could not make out who the Holy Prophet was because the radiation of the Divine Light (nur-e Muhammadi) had become so inundated in all their beings. They were illuminated people. That’s one aspect of it but another is that he did not raise himself up above his own companions. Some of the companions requested that they should make a raised platform for the Holy Prophet Muhammad so that people could distinguish him. One of the aspects of the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s stature is that he was possessed of great magnitude and dignity. His face was more illumined than a full moon. At first sight he was greatly venerated, but when people got familiar with him he was greatly admired and loved. One day, a man came to the Messenger of Allah, and on seeing him the man started trembling out of awe and fear, due to The Holy Prophet Muhammad’s spiritual splendour, thinking that he was about to meet a king. The Holy
Prophet ﷺ said to him as narrated on the authority of Qays Ibn Abi Hazim ﷺ:

هونوا عليكم، ان امي كانت تأكل القديم بمكة

That a man came to the Holy Prophet ﷺ, while standing before him, he began to tremble in terror; the Holy Prophet ﷺ said to him: Be patient, I am not a king, I am only the son of a Qurayshite woman who used to eat qadid (sliced meat dried in sun).  

This humility of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ should not delude us into thinking that he was an ordinary man. How did the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ enter Makkah after the conquest? It is reported:

His head was cast down in humility before Allah ﷺ. Those who saw the incident described it as ...

‘The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ entered Makkah with his head lowered in thanksgiving to Allah ﷺ, his beard almost touching the saddle of his camel and the Sura al-Fath⁵⁸ on his lips,⁵⁹ to denote the honor and victory granted to him.’

Could we be that humble on the day of our greatest achievement? On the day we get promoted or graduated in the secular or spiritual field, are we that humble? The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ entered Makkah for the first time after thirteen full years and after he had been abused and forced to leave it, yet, he entered with his head downcast in humility to Allah ﷺ, at the moment of his supreme victory! Can you imagine that?
The mother of Hazrath Anas brought him to the Holy Prophet Muhammad as a young boy of about 7 to 8 years old and requested that he be given the opportunity to serve the Holy Prophet and the Holy Prophet Muhammad accepted him. This is important because Hazrath Anas became one of the greatest teachers of Sahaba due to his close association with the Holy Prophet Muhammad. His mother, Hazrath Umm Sulaym, who was also blessed to serve the household of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, once asked the Holy Prophet Muhammad to supplicate for Hazrath Anas. The Holy Prophet Muhammad prayed:

اللَّهُمَّ اكْثَرْ مَالِيَ وَلَدَيْ، وَبَارِكْ لَهُ أَغْلَيْهُ

‘O Allah, increase him in wealth and his children, and bless him in what You give him.’

[Sahih Muslim, Vol. 6 'The Book Pertaining to the Merits of the Companions of the Holy Prophet (Kitaab Al-Fadail Al-Sahaba): Chapter 32, Virtues of Anas Bin Maalik; Page 345, Hadith Number 6373]

In the same Chapter of Sahih Muslim in Hadith Number 6376 it is mentioned that Hazrath Anas said:

فَوَاللَّهِ! إِنِّ مَالِيَ كَثِيرُ، وَلَدُي وَلَدًى، وَلَدًى لَيْتَعَادَانَ عَلَى

تحْوَالَ مَالِيَةً، الْيَوْمَ

By Allah! I have a surplus of wealth and today my children and my children’s children are now more than one hundred in number

Hazrath Anas would recollect that he had 125 offspring in his lifetime and of them all were boys and two were girls. His garden gave fruit twice a year and he also planted basil or parsley (an aromatic plant) which smelt like musk. He lived a long life even surviving poison. Not one of the Ansaar was richer than Hazrath Anas and one hundred and twenty
Blessing of serving the Holy Prophet ﷺ and his Household

of his children had already been buried before the arrival of Al-Hajjaj ibn Yusuf (early June AD 661 / AH 4 - AD 714 / AH 95) to Basra. It is detailed further in Sahih Bukhari and others that Hazrath Anas ﷺ said in his old age, swearing by Allah ﷻ,

I have buried a hundred of my children. As for wealth, no one has led such a happy life as I have. You see the abundance of my riches, which is the result of the blessing of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s prayer.

The wording in Sahih Bukhari is as follows:

فِإِنِّي لَمْ يَكُنْ أَكْثَرُ الأَنْصَارِ مَالًا وَحَدِيثًا إِنْيًا أَمْيَةً أُمِّيَّةً أَنَّهُ دُفِنَ لِصُلُبٍ مَّقْدُمٍ حَجَّاجٍ الْبَصَرَةِ بِصُحْبٍ وَعُشْرُونَ وَمَا تُنَاسِ

Thus I am one of the richest among the Ansaar and my daughter Umaina told me that when A-Hajjaj came to Basra, more than 120 of my offspring had been buried

[Sahih Bukhari, Vol 3, The Book of As-Saum (Fasting) Chapter 61, Page 125, Hadith Number 1982]

This is the blessed outcome of the blessed supplication of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Hazrath Anas ﷺ’s trees and vineyards gave fruit every year. It is recorded in books of history that he calculated his Zakaat daily and the Friday Prayer (Jumu’ah salaah) was comprised of the majority of his descendants. He died at the age of over one hundred years old. He was the last companion to die in Basra in the year 93 AH. He asked Thabit al-Bunani ﷺ to place a blessed hair of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ under his tongue when he was buried. Ibn Sirin ﷺ led his funeral prayer. This is proof that the blessed hair of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was kept as a revered sacred relic.

Five branches of the deen

These are the origins of Sufism or Tasawwuf a vital aspect, in fact one-fifth of our deen. As recorded in both the collections of Bukhari and Muslim. In the hadith, related by Hazrath Umar ibn al-Khattab ﷺ and Hazrath Abu Hurraira ﷺ the entire deen is given in totality.

One day while we were sitting with the Messenger of Allah ﷺ suddenly there appeared before us a man whose clothes were
exceedingly white and whose hair was exceedingly black; no signs of journeying were to be seen on him and none of us knew him. He walked up and sat down in front of the Holy Prophet ﷺ. He positioned his knees against the blessed knees of the Holy Prophet ﷺ and placing the palms of his hands on his thighs. He (the stranger) asked:

The following is the version in Bukhari\(^63\) narrated by Abu Hurraira: ﷺ

هُوِّيْا قَالُ أَخْبَرْنِي عَنِ الإِيمَانِ

Inform me about Imaan.

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ answered:

الإِيمَانُ أَنْ تُؤْمِنَ بِاللَّهِ وَمَلَائِكَتَهُ وَكُنْيَةَ وَبَلَاقَهِ وَرُسُلِهِ وَيَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ

It is to believe in Allah ﷺ, His angels, (the meeting with Him); His messengers, and to believe in resurrection.

يَا مُحَمَّدٌ! أَخْبَرْنِي عَنِ الإِسْلَامِ

O Muhammad, tell me what is Islam?

The Messenger of Allah ﷺ replied:

الإِسْلَامُ أَنْ تُعْبَدَ اللَّهُ وَلَا تَشْرَكَ بِهِ شَيْئًا وَتَقَيِّمِ الْصَّلَاةَ وَتَؤْدِيُّ

الزُّكَاةَ الْمُفْروْضَةَ وَتَصُومَ رَمَضَانَ

Islam is to testify that there is none worthy of worship but Allah ﷺ and not to commit to anyone but Him (and Muhammad His Messenger, His manifest representative) and commit shirk (like those that have committed to the Monarchies in the absence of the Caliphate); to establish (and perform) the prayers, to pay the Zakaat, to fast in Ramadan.

He (the stranger) asked:

فَأَخْبَرْنِي عَنِ الإِحْسَانِ

Tell me about Ihsaan.
Blessing of serving the Holy Prophet ﷺ and his Household

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ answered:

"It is to worship Allah ﷺ as though you are seeing Him, and if you are not able to achieve this condition then know certainly He sees you".

He (the stranger) then asked:

Then tell me about the Hour (Qiyaamah)

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ answered:

The one questioning knows that he does not possess more knowledge about this than the one being questioned' (meaning: 'you know as well as I do that we cannot disclose this to those present).

But I will inform you about its signs

When a slave gives birth to her master/mistress

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ then said:

‘That stranger was Gabriel (Jibril ﷺ) who came to teach the people their religion’

Abu Abdaullah ﷺ said that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ considered all that as a path of faith.

The Hadith in Sahih Muslim is exactly the same except that the question of Islam is asked before the question on Imaan.
Madinah to Karbala

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ informed them about another sign.

وَأَنْ تَرَى الْحَفَاةَ الْعَرَاةَ الْعَالَةَ رَعَاءَ الشَّامَاءِ يَتَطَاوَلُونَ فِي الْبَيْنَانِ

And that you will see the barefooted, naked, destitute shepherds (herdsmen) competing in constructing high buildings."

قَالَ تَمَّ الْتَّلُّقُ فَلَبِينْتُ مَلِيَّاً ثُمَّ قَالَ لِيَ يَا عُمَّرُ أَنْتُدِرِي مِنَ السَّائِلِ

He (the stranger) then left and I stayed for a time. Then the Holy Prophet ﷺ asked me:

‘O Umar, do you know who the questioner was?’

قُلْتُ اللهُ وَرَسُولُهُ أَعْلَمُ

I replied: "Allah ﷺ and His messenger know best".

The Holy Prophet ﷺ said:

فَإِنَّهُ جِبَّرِيلُ أَتاَكَ مُبَيِّنَ مُبَيِّنَ مِنَ الْقَرْآنِ

"He was Gabriel (Jibra’eel), who came to you to teach you your religion (deen)"

There are many ways of understanding the same thing but they must be within the rightly guided boundaries of the people who have al-firasat al-imaniyya. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said:

أَتْلُوْ فَرْعَاسَةَ الْمُؤْمِنِ فَإِنَّهُ يَنْظُرُ بِنَظْرٍ أَيْنَفَ عَلَى اللَّهِ

Beware the penetrating, intuitive, insight of a Mu’min, for he sees with the light of Allah ﷺ.

So according to Sahih Bukhari and Muslim the above constitutes the entire way of life of submission to Allah ﷺ (deen). The Holy Qur’aan instructs us in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow)абْقَرَةٍ in verse 208:

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا ادْخِلُوا فِي السَّلِّمِ كَأَفَٰثَ
Blessing of serving the Holy Prophet ﷺ and his Household

O you who are firmly committed to Allah ﷻ! Enter into a state of peacefulness with Allah ﷻ (Islam) wholly.

Further the Holy Qur'aan describes the true Intimates of Allah ﷻ (Awliya) in the 10th Sura, Yunus (Jonah), in verse 62:

بَلْ إِنَّ أَوْلَيَاءَ الْلَّهِ لَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُونَ

Beware! Verily, the Intimates of Allah ﷻ have nothing to fear, nor will they grieve

Those who ‘have truly committed to Allah ﷻ’ (الذين امتنو) and thus reached his proximity (ولوين الله) naturally should ‘have nothing to fear, nor anxiety’ (لَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُون) for they have been admitted into a condition of safety and sanctuary provided by Allah ﷻ’s power. This condition residing in an Intimate of Allah ﷻ’s (Awliya) heart should be transferred into his followers (mureeds) that he guides, putting them into a condition that Allah ﷻ’s power overrides all competing worldly powers even if they presumptuously call themselves ‘superpowers’. When Muslims enter into a state of peacefulness with Allah ﷻ (Islam) entirely they have nothing to fear, but when ‘so-called’ spiritual guides only teach part of the deen, choosing the perks that suit them, and not in its entirety as defined by the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in the Hadith of Bukhari and Muslim quoted above then Muslims have everything to fear because they have not been guided into a dynamic condition of peacefulness with Allah ﷻ (Islam) wholly. This condition of peace with Allah ﷻ is judged by the behaviour and ideological pattern of ‘so-called guides’ when in the dress of piety they court the ‘materially rich’ and neglect the ‘spiritually rich’, thus they have adopted materialism as their ‘undecaressed religion’. They are blind or choose to be oblivious of the reality that Islam has been thrust into an ‘age of slavery’ by a Zionist/Capitalist alliance, the modern day model of Yazid. They will ceremoniously display love for the Martyrs of Karbala in Muharram but have lost their vision. They are people who have consciously or unconsciously, joined the ranks of those enemies of Islam who are waging a war on Islam and Muslims around the world. They and their disciples are unaware that they have become instruments in the hands of those who dismantled the political system of Islam by closing down the Caliphate on the 3 March 1924 CE/27 Rajab
Madinah to Karbala

1342. Allah ﷺ speaks of them in the Holy Qur’aan, which has been mistranslated by most modern translators even Yusuf Ali and many modern Ulama. Allah ﷺ speaks in the 5th Sura, al-Ma’idah ﷺ (the Table spread) in verse 51(some versions verse 54) of the Holy Qur’aan and where Allah ﷺ says:

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُواَ
O You! Who are divinely committed to Allah ﷺ

لاَ تَتَّخِذُواَ الْيَهُودَ وَالْنَّصَارَىٰ أُولِيَاءَ أَوْلِيَاءَ
Do not take Jews and Christians as your friends and allies

Is Allah ﷺ speaking about all Jews and all Christians or is He speaking about some Jews and some Christians? The Holy Qur’aan answers that question. There are many verses of the Holy Qur’aan which commit us to establish fraternal relations with Jews and Christians. A Muslim man can even marry a Christian or Jewish woman for the Holy Qur’aan permits that (Sura 5: Verse 5). We should hold no enmity for all Jewish people for they are the children of Prophets, the children of Jacob (Yacub ﷺ). Many Jews themselves condemn Zionism, the ‘illegitimate State of Israel’ and condemn the oppression that they see with their own eyes. So very clearly this verse of the Holy Qur’aan is speaking of some Jews and some Christians and not all Jews and all Christians. So which Jews and which Christians with whom it is prohibited for us to maintain friendly ties with; to establish alliance with? The verse goes on to answer that question:

لَا تَتَّخِذُواَ الْيَهُودَ وَالْنَّصَارَىٰ أُولِيَاءَ أَوْلِيَاءَ بَعْضَهُمْ أَوْلِيَاءَ بَعْضٍ

This means; and read with methodical carefulness!
Do not take such Jews and such Christians as your friends and allies who (later) become friends and allies of each other

The Lord of the Heavens and the Earth is speaking!

وَمَن يَتَّولِيهِمْ مَنَكُّمْ
Whosoever amongst you joins this alliance...
Blessing of serving the Holy Prophet ﷺ and his Household

Whether you be a carpenter, taxi-driver, Alim عَالِمُ، Sufi Shaykh or whatever; it doesn’t matter. Whosoever amongst you establishes friendly relations or alliance with such Jews and Christians, who form an ‘unholy alliance’ in the name of religion, will no longer be part of the Muslim World. ‘You have now joined them, you’re part of them; not us. When you die and the angel comes to take your soul at that time you will have it confirmed that you’re not a Muslim:

وَمَن يَتَوَلَّى مِنْهُمْ فَإِنَّهُ مِنْهُمَّ

You that turns to them (for friendship and protection) is of them

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَهْدِي الْقَوْمَ الظُّالِمِينَ

Surely Allah ﷺ does not provide guidance for a people who commit such an atrocious act of evil and wrongdoing

So that Sufi Shaykh about whom Allah ﷺ has clearly said...

Surely Allah ﷺ does not provide guidance for a people who commit such an atrocious act of evil and wrongdoing

...can never guide others; when they themselves have been cut-off from guidance by Allah ﷺ; for you can only give what you have. The Sufis say:

Cursed is that Sufi who sits at the door of the (materially) rich man

Blessed is that (materially) rich man who sits at the door of a faqir (Sufi who adopts voluntary poverty)

Metaphorical language

Maulana Jalal ad-Din Muhammad Rumi ﯽﺭﻭﻣ ﯽﺭﻭﻣ ﯽﺭﻭﻣ is a classical Sufi and poet. Sufis use metaphorical and highly subjective terms, which most of the time mislead a translator or interpreter. They use ambiguous language because they speak about divine wisdom that exists beyond this physical time and space. They pass through the language of the tongue onto the muted language of heart. Rumi also wrote his Masnavi-I Ma’nawi or Mathnavi ﯽﻣﻌﻨﻮ ﯽﻣﺜﻨﻮ meaning ‘Rhyming Couplets of Profound Spiritual Meaning’ in a language that can be grasped by an accomplished Sufi. Maulana Rumi ﯽﺭﻭﻣ actually addressed the elite while his contemporary Hazrath Yunus Emre ﯽﺭﻭﻣ wrote for the masses. There are many more
Madinah to Karbala

legends and anecdotes about his life. One story describes the encounter of Mevlana Rumi and Hazrath Yunus Emre about which Emre wrote;

Mevlana Hudavendigar bize nazar kilali
Onun gorklu nazari gonlumuz aynasidir
Since I saw Mevlana,
His magnificent vision is the mirror of our hearts

Hazrath Yunus Emre explicitly mentions attending a gathering of Mevlana in his poetry. Hazrath Yunus Emre respectfully criticizes Mevlana for the bulk of the *Mathnavi* and states that he would have expressed the entire book in the following two lines:

Ete kemige burundum
Yunus oluban gorundum
I took shape in flesh and bones,
And came into sight as Yunus

The story also mentions that Mevlana admitted that he would not have written this such a long work if he were able to make such condensed statements. One legend says that paying tribute to Hazrath Yunus Emre, Mevlana stated:

Manevi konaklarin hangisine vardiyam, bir Turkmen kocasinin izini onumde buldum, onu gecemedim
Whenever I arrived at a new spiritual height, there I found the footsteps left by that Turkish Sufi and I could never surpass him

These legends about encounters with Mevlana, one of the greatest Sufis of all times demonstrate how important Hazrath Yunus was in the eyes of the Anatolian people.

Hazrath Abdur Rahman Jaami described the *Mathnavi* as being an indirect commentary of the Holy Qur’aan. Qur’aanic commentaries differ from person to person and from language to language. Allah says in the 94<sup>th</sup> Sura, *ash-Sharh* (the Opening up) in verse 1:

\[
\text{Ala'm nish'r\`h l\`ak\`a cs\`dr\`uk}
\]

This verse is translated differently by translators.

[Shakir] Have We not expanded for you your breast,
Blessing of serving the Holy Prophet ﷺ and his Household

[Pickthal] Have We not caused thy bosom to dilate,
[Yusuf Ali] Have We not expanded thee thy breast?

Some words in Arabic carry such depth of meaning that they cannot be translated and only a master in the language can even approximate the meaning. The integrity of the Holy Qur’aan, and keep in mind that it is only the Arabic text, the uncreated words of Allah ﷺ which is the Holy Qur’aan, has been preserved by Allah ﷺ as mentioned in the 15th Sura, al-Hijr (the Rocky tract) in verse 9:

إِنَّا نُحْنُ نَزُّلْنَا الْذِّكْرَ وَإِنَّا لَهُ نَحْفِظُونَ

Behold, it is We alone have bestowed from on high, this consciousness zikr or remembrance; (the Qur’aan), and surely it is We alone who shall truly guard it (from all corruption).

Allah ﷺ has preserved the Holy Qur’aan but no Tafsir تفسير, tafsir, (interpretation)
 or translation can claim to be safeguarded from human error and subjective limitation.

Comprehension beyond intellect

When the ‘spiritual heart’ or qalb قلب, which is the nucleus of the soul, come alive, through the grace of Allah ﷺ, transmitting a spiritual energy down an unbroken chain from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, or a Shajrah, then we would be able to understand and comprehend what the intellect, rationality and external observation could not understand. When the ‘eye of the spiritual heart’ is enabled, then we will be able to perceive ‘reality’ amidst ‘illusion’. Allah ﷺ says in the 22nd Sura, al-Hajj (the Pilgrimage) in Verse 46:

فَإِنَّهَا لَ أَتْمَّتَى الْأَبْصَارُ

Truly, it’s not these eyes (the physical eye) which are blind

وَلَكِنَّ أَتْمَتَى الْقُلُوبُ الَّتِي فِي الصُّدُورِ

What is blind is the heart, which is inside the chest or  (sadr)

صَدْرٍ
Let us analyze what *sadr* صدر means? Keeping in mind the 94th Sura, *ash-Sharh* (the Opening up) النشرح / الإشراح in verse 1:

أَلَمْ تَشْرَحَ لَنَّ صَدْرَكَ

When Musa ﷺ prayed to Allah ﷻ as mentioned in the 20th Sura, *Taha* طه: Verse 25:

رَبَّ اِشْرَحْ لِي صَدْرِي

Musa ﷺ (Moses) prayed: ‘O my Lord, expand my (sadr صدر) for me’

In the Urdu language ‘*sadre mehfil*’ or in Arabic the ‘*sadre majlis*’ is the centre of the gathering or meeting; the ‘central controlling person’ or ‘chair-person’. So the centre of perception of the human being is the (*sadr صدر*). So now we can understand the 94th Sura, *ash-Sharh* (the Opening up) النشرح / الإشراح in verse 1:

أَلَمْ تَشْرَحَ لَنَّ صَدْرَكَ

Did we not expand your perception?

This is Islamic Spirituality. There is a certain *tehzeeb*, which is a beautiful word which implies a polishing of the soul that goes with knowledge. The scholar you study with is breaking away ignorance because knowledge is already in the soul and what the teacher does is sculpting what is already in the soul. The word education comes from the Latin *educere* meaning ‘to lead out of’ or ‘to bring out of’. (Sura 92, al-Alaq, verse 5) means Allah ﷻ has already imprinted in the human being knowledge. Therefore knowledge in reality is recollection. It’s actually memory. Therefore the Holy Qur’aan is called *dhikr*, ‘the remembrance’ because what you are doing is remembering what was already put in you. But, if your heart is so encrusted, there’s blockage then you are unable to recollect. [Read more on this in my book *Attack on the Spiritual Heart of Islam*]. Rumi himself has explained it beautifully when he says:

*Aql do aqlast avval maksabi; keh dar âmuzi cho dar maktab sabi*
Blessing of serving the Holy Prophet ﷺ and his Household

Az ketāb o ustād o fekr o zekr; az ma’ āni vaz ‘ olum-e khub o bekr
Aql-e to afzun shavad bar digarān; lik to bāshi ze hefz-e ān gerān
Lawh-e hāfez bāshi andar dur o gasht; lawh-e mahfuz ust ku zin dar gozasht
`Aql-e digar bakhshesh-e Yazdān bovd; cheshmeh-ye ān dar miyān-e jān bovd
Chon ze sineh ābe dānesh jush kard; nah shavad gandeh nah dirineh nah zard
Var rah-ē nab’ēsh bovd basteh cheh ghamm; ku hamī jushad ze khāneh dam be-dam
`Aql-e tahsili mesāle jui-hā; kān ravad dar khāneh az kui-hā Rāh-ē ābesh basteh shod shod bi navā; az darun-e khvishetan ju cheshmeh-rā

[Mathnavī IV: 1960-1968 transliteration courtesy of Yahyá Monastra]
There are two kinds of intelligence: one acquired, as a child in school memorizes facts and concepts from books and from what the teacher says; collecting information from the traditional sciences as well as from the new sciences. With such intelligence you rise in the world. You get ranked ahead or behind others in regard to your competence in retaining information. You stroll with this intelligence in and out of fields of knowledge, getting always more marks on your preserving tablets.

There is another kind of tablet, one already completed and preserved inside you. A spring overflowing its springbox! Freshness in the center of the chest! This other intelligence does not turn yellow or stagnate. It's fluid, and it doesn't move from outside to inside through the conduits of plumbing-learning. This second knowing is a fountainhead from within you, moving out.

[Version by Coleman Barks; "The Essential Rumi"; Harper San Francisco, 1995]

The accomplished Sabri, Hazrath Shahidullah Faridi Chishti Sabri ﷺ, a Sufi of the modern era said:

Spiritual specialists are few by the nature of things, so also the number of the pupils who shape their lives in close conformity
to those of their masters is also very small. These selected followers are those who, having the inner call, are later charged with the duty of carrying on the work of teaching and exhortation in a new generation. But the majority of those who visit these inheritors of the more inward traditions of Islam are those who, while engaged in their daily vocations, wish to refresh themselves from the toils of the world at the pure springs of sincerity and devotion which they find so abundant with the Sufis. It is here that we see the influence of the Sufis working and giving new life to the whole wide land of the community. The ordinary men and women who spend a part of their time with the Sufis acquire some measure of inspiration for their spiritual and moral betterment, and to this measure their whole lives are affected. It is the spiritual orientation and the moral attitude which constitute the fountain-head of human thought, and so of human action.

Knowledge is possible, but it does not only come learned by the brain, it also comes revealed to the heart. Remember that in addition to knowledge externally derived, it is also internally, intuitively, spiritually acquired.
A Slave Woman gives Birth to her Mistress

Let’s return to the sign of the End of Days as prophesised by the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ:

إِذَا وَلَدَتْ اَلْمَاعَةُ رَبَّهَا

When a slave gives birth to her master/mistress

How can a slave woman give birth to her mistress? The only one who will be able to see that sign of Allah ﷺ - a major sign of the Last Day - is not the one who has a PhD from a University but is internally blind. It is the one who sees with two eyes, who has knowledge externally acquired and internally actualised. This is the most learned of all men. When Musa ﷺ asked Allah ﷺ where he could meet such a man? Allah ﷺ directed him to ‘the meeting place of the two oceans’, as mentioned in the 18th Sura, al-Kahf (the Cave) in Verse 60:

مَجْمَعَ الْبَحْرِيَّينَ

The meeting point of the two oceans

If one is able to penetrate the symbolism in this verse; then one would be blessed to know that the two oceans are the ocean of knowledge externally acquired and the ocean of knowledge internally bestowed and actualised. When these two oceans of knowledge combine together in one human being, harmoniously, are integrated together, we have the most learned amongst men. The true Spiritual Guide! If one studies this very important chapter of the Holy Qur’aan then we will find another sign as to where the meeting of the ‘two oceans’ can be located. It is where a ‘dead fish’ comes to life. So the most learned amongst men is that being who can bring a ‘dead heart’ back to life.

It is for the particular reason, that those who are not accomplished Sufi’s fail to understand even the first eighteen verses of Rumi’s Mathnavi properly. As Rumi says in his sixth verse:
Har kasi az zann-e khvod shod yâr-e man; az darun-e man nat-jost asrâr-e man
Everyone became my friend according to his faculty of conception; but a few sought for my real inner secrets

In the first line of Rumi's Mathnavi he teaches the idea that the Divine is within us by using the analogy of Nay (Reed Flute).

Be-shenaw az nay chon hekâyat mi konad; az jodâyi-hâ shekâyat mi konad
Listen to this flute, while it's complaining,
The story of separation it's explaining.

The flute is the body of man and the breath blown into it is the breath of God (the essential being) as Allah says in the Holy Qur'aan in the 32nd Sura as-Sajda (Prostration) in verse 9:

He shaped him and blew into him from His spirit.

Those who are spiritual guides or murshids should be teaching the entire religion (deen). Therefore Allah says in Sura Nahl (the Bee) The very name of the Sura has a depth of Divine meaning. The bee produces honey, it is sweet and wax to make candles is obtained from it. So Allah is telling us in this verse that to ‘cure our hearts’ give us ‘sweetness of faith’ and ‘light in our hearts’.

Ask the people of remembrance (zikr) if you don’t know

Dhikr means to be conscious of Allah and ahl refers to those who are always conscious of Allah, nothing makes them heedless of Allah as asserted in the 24th Sura an-Nur (the Light) in verse37.
Signs of the End of Days

Men whom neither merchandise nor selling diverts from the remembrance of Allah and the keeping up of prayer and the giving of poor-rate...

Those who should be consulted are ‘the people of remembrance’ (zikr), ‘people of Qur’aanic exegesis’ (tadabbur or tafsir), ‘people of deep spiritual reflection’ (tafakkur). We should not simplistically take things at face value but we should deeply reflect over things. Muslims should be people of ‘constructive wisdom’. Somebody of lubb (innermost consciousness) goes past the kishra or ‘outward shell’; which is also important since we should not belittle in anyway the outward meanings of Islam.

So in this hadith he said:

أَنْتَ لَدَيْنَ الْأُمَّةَ رَبِّهَا

You will see the female servant give birth to her mistress (and in a riwayah-her master- but the stronger, riwayah being her mistress)

It has been interpreted in different ways. If we look at the most outward meaning which has been interpreted by al-`Izz ibn `Abd al-Salam al-Sulami (d. 660) and others as, ‘there will be great social confusion’. In other words the natural order would be turned upside down. In the natural order of things; the a’mma, who is the servant would obey the mistress and do what the mistress tells her. So when the mistress is being commanded by her servant it means things have been turned upside down and this is a sign that the social order goes into chaos. The Ulama traditionally said about this hadith that it is a sign that:

‘Children would become rebellious against their parents’

This is a sign of the end of time. The Holy Prophet Muhammad said that the children would command their parents having no respect or reverence for them. This is an extremely dangerous sign. The Holy Prophet also said that:

The child would not inherit the father

One of the meanings of that, and Allah knows best, is the inheritance of the prophets (ambiya). The inheritance of the prophets (ambiya) is
Madinah to Karbala

knowledge. What happens is that the children will not take the knowledge. Therefore one sees particularly in this age that many of the greatest Ulama and Shuyuuk whose children didn’t take any of their knowledge and they literally have no knowledge from their fathers who were scholars, remaining ignorant. Traditionally all of the children of scholars were scholars though not always. Imam Maalik’s74, son Yahya was not a scholar. He did not have the ability, whereas his daughter Fatimah was a great scholar, who used to correct the people from behind a door, by knocking, if a student learning the Al-Muwatta75 from the Imam would err and he would not pick up the error due to being pre-occupied. The Imam had such confidence in her learning that he would ask the student to repeat the section. She was a narrator (raawiyah) of the Muwatta. When he used to see his son Yahya he used to say to his companions:

Glory to Allah ☪! Who didn’t make this knowledge something that you genetically inherited.

Another lesson that we can take from this hadith is if we look at the word a’mma which is a very positive word. The female is called Ama’tullah (Servant of God) like the male is called Abdullah (Servant of God). If the a’mma is a servile creature then the (rabba) is the one who is the Master. The idea of ‘the mistress giving birth to the master’! If we look at the Arabic words for civilization (hadara), for ‘house/abode of Islam’ Dar al-Islam دار الإسلام, for ma’rifa etc.; Most of these words are feminine in nature. The word for civilization which is Ummah العربية is a feminine word.

Muslim Ummah العربية gave birth to Europe

In modern history which begins with the Renaissance76 is that the Muslim Ummah العربية gave birth to Europe, quite literally because Europe was a completely hopeless, servile, ignorant society that had no knowledge whatsoever and through the knowledge that was transmitted by the Muslims; the Muslims literally gave birth to a civilization that becomes the master of the Muslims. In other words it’s the Muslims who empowered Europeans and secondarily Americans to literally become the Masters of the Islamic Ummah العربية and we are living in an age where the العربية
Signs of the End of Days

*a’mma* of Allah ﷺ, which was the “civilization in servitude to Allah ﷺ” is now the slave of this arrogant and proud European civilization, which has no submission to the Authority of Allah ﷺ and is in fact in absolute and utter rebellion to the traditions of the Prophets; and extraordinarily enough they have divorced themselves entirely from their own Christian tradition. They mock their own prophets on their television programs their comedians make fun of the great prophets. The Muslims revere all revealed books including the Torah and the Gospels. Many people are unaware that when Imam Khomeini passed his famous *fatwa* about Salman Rushdie he also passed a *fatwa* against the Greek writer, Nikos Kazantzakis, who wrote, ‘The Last Temptation of Christ’ condemning him but that was conveniently left out of the news.

This is the type of environment in which we are in. Literally Islam gave birth to a civilization that took over and has superseded the Islamic Civilization and treats it like some dismal servant that it orders about. In nearly all Muslim countries you see the pathetic state of Muslims enslaved by these people. The masses of Muslims, are in hopeless servitude to the masters in the Pentagon, in Langley in Washington D.C.; in London; in Paris and in Tokyo. This is the pathetic condition of the *Ummah* ﷺ. So we literally see where this *Ummah* ﷺ has now become a *ʿulُm a’mma* of the Western Civilization.

**Womb Hire**

Many meanings may be extracted from this hadith. One of them is that now you have rich women in this so-called ‘first world’ (they call their world, the ‘first world’ and they have derogatorily termed people in other places the ‘third world’) literally hire the ‘wombs’ of poor people in Philippines, South America and in India. They literally rent the wombs because they don’t want to bother having a child. They don’t want to get their stomachs wrinkled. This is happening in our day and age. There is a group of people called the ‘fourth world’. The World Bank actually, doesn’t stop with the ‘third world’; they have identified another world called the ‘fourth world’. They are the Nomadic illiterate people. These are the most oppressed people on earth. The next ‘most oppressed’ people are the ‘semi-literate’. So the womb of the poor woman is hired to produce a child and twenty years down the line that child hires the same
woman to work for her, unaware that she has hired her ‘biological mother’. So literally the ‘slave girl’ gave birth to her ‘mistress’.

**The Bare-footed Shepherds building high-rise buildings**

Today in the world, the vast majority of people are illiterate. They have no access to power and are disenfranchised. The message of Islam is to elevate such people by raising them up to the levels of understanding. To empower them, so that they may begin to see the tyranny and oppression that they exist in and not simply be deaf, dumb and blind to that situation.

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ also said:

وَلَّيْنُ رَتَّىُ الْحَفَاةَ الْغَلَالَةَ رَعَاىٰ الْشَّاهِئَ يَتَظَاوَلُونَ فِي الْبُنْيَانِ

You will see the bare-footed, destitute

رَعَاىٰ الْشَّاهِئَ يَتَظَاوَلُونَ فِي الْبُنْيَانِ, the shepherds; compete with one another in building exalted buildings

This again can be taken at many levels:

One of them is if we look at the word بُنْيَانٌ (bunyaan) used in this hadith. The idea of بُنْيَانٌ (bunyaan) in the Holy Qur’aan is the ideology, or concept of thought. These people competing with one another in creating better ways of ruling one’s society and things like this. They have theorists, including ‘so-called Muslims’ who write whole books on what civilization should be and what rules they should adhere to without any reference to Holy Qur’aan or even their own traditions. The meaning of the hadith is clear that the Bedouin of the Arabian Peninsula who literally forty years ago were barefoot, destitute and naked. During the Great Depression some of them had to make clothes from the palm leaves, to cover their nakedness, due to the difficulty in acquiring cotton in that time. We now see them competing with each other in building large buildings in Dubai and surrounding areas. We are witnessing something that the Sahaba believed in with Imaan. This is a sign that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ...
Signs of the End of Days

prophesied would happen towards the end of time. (compete with one another in building exalted buildings) was explained by Imam Raghib Isfahani as to build by degrees and then break down and rebuild again. This is something unique to the twentieth century where we see huge buildings destroyed and flattened in order to build a new bigger and larger building. This is happening everywhere in our time. The fifth element mentioned in this hadith is the signs of the end of time, and when the hadith finishes, Hazrath Umar says the Holy Prophet waited for some time and then asked, ‘Do you know who the person was?’ and then he said:

That was Jibra’eel, who came in order to teach you your deen

So Islam, Imaan, Ihsaan, the ‘last age’ and the ‘signs of the last age’ constitutes the deen of Islam. The Sahaba waited for the signs to manifest. Hudhaifa bin Yamama is one of the great scholars of the ‘signs of the end of time’. So amongst the Sahaba they had specialists in this knowledge. It is a knowledge that constitutes deen. Many Muslims neglect this aspect of the deen which in itself is a sign of the end of time because the Holy Prophet Muhammad said in Majma' al-Zawa'id wa Manba' al-Fawa'id

The Dajjal will not appear until the people become negligent in talking about him, and until the Imams abandon talking about him on the pulpits.

The Christian tradition has some understanding of the ‘Last hour’ and they speak at great length about it. The odd thing about it is that they only have about five signs in their book. We literally have hundreds.

**Salaah has become Ritual Gymnastics**

Hazarth Ali was asked about the signs and he mentioned about seventy signs. From amongst them he said:

People will stop offering prayers

This literally means, the salaah would become dead, lifeless, and routine; and also many would leave it. Everyday, throughout the word, through
the means of the televised live prayer, we see the Imams of Haram praying:

إِبَاكَ نَعْبُدُ وَإِبَاكَ نَسْتَعِينُ

You do we conform unto and You do we ask for help

Is this not hypocrisy that they make this pledge to Allah in every salaah and when they need political, economic or military help they turn to the American Zionist/Capitalist alliance. This demonstrates the abandonment of the true meaning of salaah. In the 5th Sura al-Ma'idah (the Table spread) in Verse 55; Allah says:

إِنَّمَا وَلِيُّكُمُ اللَّهُ وَرَسُولُ اللَّهِ وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا الَّذِينَ يُقِيمُونَ الصِّلَاةَ

You do we conform unto and You do we ask for help

Your friends and protectors are Allah, His Messenger, and the Believers, those who establish regular prayers and regular charity, and they bow down humbly.

If we can seek help from the believers empowered by Allah, why can’t we seek help from the Holy Prophet Muhammad and his ahl al-Bayt who have been illuminated by Allah and are a conduit to His help and protective friendship (wilaya)?

In the Islamic tradition leaving the prayer did not happen. It is a modern phenomenon in which there are Muslims worldwide who have left the prayer. This is extraordinary because the Holy Prophet Muhammad said in the Musnad (a colossal hadith encyclopaedia) of Imam Ahmad:

What’s binding between you and me is the prayer. Whoever leaves the prayer has entered into kufr

Usually that’s interpreted as kufranin ni’mah and it doesn’t make them non-Muslim unless they leave it out of not believing in it. But Ahmad bin Hamnbal was of the opinion that those who didn’t pray were kaafir. There is some strength in his position although the other three Imams of Fiqh were opposed to that position and said that the person is Muslim a’asi and should be buried with the Muslims. But if one looks at the
hadith in the Muwatta of Imam Maalik ﺭدٌٰٰ, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said he will recognise his Ummah ﺃٰل by the (azhaar al-wudhu) 'light of wudhu'. That’s how he will intercede for us. If we are not doing wudhu how are you going to get the light?
Glorious Foundations
The Islamic community started its journey through history in the most glorious manner. In the field of politics it was confronted by the very powerful Roman Byzantine Empire in the Northwest and by the powerful Persian Empire in the Northeast and it appeared as if every political force in the world was arrayed against the advancing tide of Islam. They wanted to hold it in check and consequently the clash came, but in that clash these big empires were blown to pieces in a very short period of time. It was not actually the conflict between political groups; it was actually the conflict between philosophies of life. The philosophy of life, which Islam had given, was a dynamic and vibrant philosophy that infused a spirit and a force into its followers, to an extent and in a manner where it was impossible for the adversaries of Islam to face the challenge. Islam was a challenge for the entire humanity 1400 years ago and remained a challenge for mankind in the seventh century of the Christian era. The Muslims became the pioneers in every walk of life; it was not only victories on the battlefield, but on every front. They became the teachers of every branch of knowledge for mankind. They became the embodiment of the highest moral standard, the personification of the highest spiritual values and they were respected, admired and feared by the entire world. They were respected for they took the lead in spiritualizing culture to such an extent that many countries and regions became ‘Arabicised’; like North Africa. Islam came with such beauty that the people began loving not only Islam but also even those who carried the message. The tide of Islam when it crossed the North African regions, finally penetrated in its first trek into Europe, penetrated to Spain and there in Spain the Muslims built up a civilization that will remain the pride and envy of all the races, peoples and ideologies gone by. They arrived there, built up their culture and civilization started their universities, observatories and hospitals. They enforced town planning when Europe was sunk in darkness, in medieval barbarism. The Church in Europe fought against the forces of enlightenment. The most eminent
minds from all over Europe came and studied under the Muslims, whose glory they could not withstand and the foundations were laid for the Western Renaissance. Knowledge came to Europe through the Muslims thus the Church hated the Muslims.

**Foundation of Modern Civilization**

Christianity was built on the conflict between faith and reason. It based its philosophy on faith only. Thus the philosophy and scientific knowledge that evolved and followed was considered against the Church. As a reaction to this stance by the Church, an atheistic and material philosophy evolved. This was the foundation of modern civilization i.e. atheistic and materialistic in the realm of belief; sensualistic and pleasure seeking in the domain of morality; exploitative in the field of economics and expedient in the political arena. Thus the God-conscious are considered reactionary’s whilst those that are not God-conscious or atheistic are considered to be progressive and modern. If you don’t believe in morality you are modern, but if you believe in truth, goodness, moral integrity and chastity then you are outdated. If you don’t conduct business within ethical principles you are prosperous.

**The Challenge facing us**

The Holy Qur’aan has commanded the Muslims to build our power to the utmost and keep it to the highest pitch to face all challenges. Allah ﷺ says in the 8th Sura, al-Anfaal (Spoils of war) in verse 60

> وَأَعْدُوْاْ لَهُمْ مَا اسْتَطَعْتُمْ مِن قُوَّةٍ وَمِن رَبَاطِ الْحِيْلِ تُرْهَبُونَ 
> بِهِ عَدُّوْاْ اللَّهَ وَعَدُّوْاْ كُنْمُ وَآخَرِينَ مِن دُونِهِمْ لاَ تُعْلَمُونَهُمُ اللَّهُ 
> يَعْلَمُهُمْ وَمَا تْنَفَّقُواْ مِنْ شَيْءٍ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ يُؤْفَٰكُمْ إِلَيْكُمْ وَأَنتُمْ 
> لاَ تُظَلَّمُونَ

Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power keep it to the highest pitch against them), including steeds of war, to strike terror into (the hearts of) the enemies of Allah ﷺ and your enemies, and others besides, whom ye may not know, but whom Allah ﷺ knows. Whatever ye shall spend
Madinah to Karbala

in the Cause of Allah ﷺ shall be repaid unto you, and ye shall not be treated unjustly.

The forces against us are gaining momentum daily. Thus we have to acquire knowledge in the fields that we have neglected. We have lost over power in the field of education, technology, commerce, economics and military might. The evolving of our personalities spiritually has been replaced by in fighting and hair-splitting. Our enemies could not have succeeded on the battlefield against us if we had not become what we have become at the beginning of the nineteenth century. Once we were politically floored the challenge became more magnified. Today we find ourselves at a loss as to how to balance ourselves. We need to change the direction of Islam as dispensed in this age of slavery. It is a Capitalist/Zionist/Saudi plot to give people the sanitized cosmetic version of Islam acceptable to the godless rulers of the world and obnoxious to those that see the reality that doesn’t allow meddling in politics and economics. They want to produce a brand of Muslims who will never interfere in the systems of ‘production’ and ‘consumption’.

Reclaim Knowledge

We need to reclaim knowledge that belongs to the Islamic Civilisation, which stems from the Holy Qur’aan and the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, through education not on the level of angry activism. Activism stems from a void, from anger, frustration, complaints because we are in a state of slavery. Activism should stem from understanding our legacy. No nation in the world would succeed if it abandons its history and heritage. One of the signs of the End of Times Imam Ali ibn Abi Talib ﷺ reported, that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said:

وَلَعْنَ أَخَرَ هَذِهِ لَأِمَّةٍ وَلَهَا

The last (generation of this Ummah) curse the earlier (generation) 85

[At-Tirmidhi, Vol 4, Chapters on al-Fitan Chapter 38, Page 263, Hadith Number 2210. Page 263, Hadith Number 2210]

This is what we are witnessing now. Islam is spreading in the wrong direction, with small exceptions in some communities and few individuals. We need to change that to bring the spirit of the authentic Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama‘ah ﷺ, this great legacy of love and
reverence, that is almost disappearing in the Islamic World with the invasion of Western and Petro-Dollar sponsored institutions, faculties of Shariah etc. We need to spread the correct belief of Islam, Imaan, Ihsaan; awaiting the Hour and recognising its signs; the five in unison. This takes a lot of effort and sacrifice. We need to build not fight.

**Beware who you take your deen from**

The Ulama have given sound advice: Muhammad ibn Hajj al-Abdari al-Fasi (C.E. 1258 - 1336) says in his book, *Madkhal Ash-Shara Ash-Shareef Ala Al-Mathahib* (Introduction to Islamic Jurisprudence According to Schools of Thought) that Umar ibn al-‘Aziz said:

> Never give one whose heart is deviant access to your two ears, for surely you never know what may find fixity in you.

The moment you listen, the deviator has left some impression on you. A drop won’t leave traces on a rock but if it continues dropping on the same spot it leaves an impression. All they need is for you to listen. Even Islamic Radio and Television Stations on popular media are there to brainwash you. So you feel that the ‘right’ is wrong because the minority is doing it and the ‘wrong’ is right because everyone is doing it. In most Masajid today we find a way of prayer against the accepted way of the Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama’ah. These situational ethics, which is in fact ‘unethical’ is very dangerous. Hazrath Ali laid down a rule that can easily defeat the foundations of modern democracy:

> If you want to know the truth, then don’t look at the number of people following. Establish the truth through its intellectual proof and then see who is practicing the truth

**The Majority is not necessarily right**

People abandon the four established madhabs way of praying because the see people praying in the Salafi way. Allah says in the Holy Qur’aan in the 12th Sura, Yusuf (Joseph) in verse 103:

> وَمَا أَكْثَرُ الْنَّاسِ وَلَوْ حَرَصَتْ بِمُؤْمِنٍ

Yet no faith will the majority of mankind have, however ardently thou dost desire it.
Madinah to Karbala

This has been clarified in a sound Hadith in Sahih Bukhari in which the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ says:

أوَلُ مِنْ يُدْعَى يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةَ آدَّمُ فَتْرَاءُ دُرِّيْتُهُ فِيَّالُ هُدَى
أَبُو كُمْ آدَّمُ فَيَقُولُ لِبَيْكَ وَسَعْدِكَ فِيَّالُ أَخْرُجُ بَعْثُ
جَهَنْمَ مِنْ دُرِّيْتُكَ فِيَّالُ يَا رَبّ كَمْ أَخْرُجُ فِيَّالُ أَخْرُجُ مِنْ
كُلْ مَائَةَ تَسْعَةَ وَشَمْعِينَ فَقَالُوا يَا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ إِذَا أَحْذَ مَنْ مِنْ
كُلْ مَائَةَ تَسْعَةَ وَشَمْعِينَ فَمَا ذَا بَيْقُ مَنْ فَقَالَ إِنَّ أَمْتِي فِي
الْأَمْمِ كَالشَّعْرَاةِ الْبَيْضَاءِ فِي الْثَّمُورِ الْأَسْوَدُ

Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Holy Prophet ﷺ said, “The first man to be called on the Day of Resurrection will be Adam who will be shown his offspring, and it will be said to them, ‘This is your father, Adam’ Adam will say (responding to the call), ‘Labbaik and Sa’dai’ Then Allah ﷺ will say (to Adam), ‘Take out of your offspring, the people of Hell.’ Adam will say, ‘O Lord, how many should I take out?’ Allah ﷺ will say, ‘Take out ninety-nine out of every hundred.'” They (the Prophet’s companions) said, "O Allah’s Apostle! If ninety-nine out of every one hundred of us are taken away, what will remain out of us?" He said, "My followers in comparison to the other nations are like a white hair on a black ox.”

So we don’t judge believers by the majority. We have to establish the truth. Therefore be with the truthful. Don’t argue with fools. They are trained to present their erroneous belief which looks like authentic proof but it is void of any foundation. A layman will have doubt planted in his mind. They won’t present this to our scholars hence they target the layman. It is also unfortunate that we have scholars in our fraternity who don’t attempt to learn the local language. The secret of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is that:

He spoke to every clan with their particular dialect
Conflict Between Philosophies of Life

The Holy Prophet ﷺ Knew All Languages

In this age where people mistranslate the word *ummi* as the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was ‘illiterate’ [I will deal with this comprehensively in my next book, InshaAllah] the classical Ulama have presented proof that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ knew all languages. Allah ﻪ ﻢ ﻲ ﻢ ﻲ says in the Holy Qur’aan in the 14th Sura Ibrahim (Abraham) in verse 4:

وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِنْ رَسُولٍ إِلَّا بِلِسَانِ فَوْمِهِ

And We have not sent any Messenger but with the language of his people

There are also authentic hadith to prove this. In Sahih Bukhari it is recorded:

أَنْبِيَتُ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ مَعَ أَبِي وَعَلَيْ

قميصَ أَصْفَرَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ سَنَةَ سَنَةَ قَالَ ﻋَبْدُ اللَّهِ وَهِيْ بِالْحُجْشَيْةَ حَسَنَةً قَالَتْ فَذَهَبَتْ

أَلْعَبُ لِبَخَاءِمَ النِّبَوَةِ ﻓَوْرَنِي أَبِي قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ نَعْهَا ثُمَّ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ أُبْيَلِي وَأُخْلِفَيْنِ نُمَأَبِي وَأُخْلِفَيْنِ نُمَأَبِي وَأُخْلِفَيْ قَالَ ﻋَبْدُ

اللَّهِ ﻗِيَبْتُ حَتَّى ذَكَرَ

Narrated Umm Khalid: (the daughter of Khalid bin Said) I went to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ with my father and I was wearing a yellow shirt. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, "Sanah, Sanah!" (Abdullah, the narrator, said that 'Sanah' meant 'good' in the Ethiopian language). I then started playing with the seal of Prophethood (in between the Holy Prophet ﷺ's shoulders) and my father rebuked me harshly for that. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said. "Leave her," and then Allah’s Messenger ﷺ (invoked Allah ﻪ ﻢ ﻲ to grant me a long life) by saying (thrice), "Wear this dress till it is worn out and then wear it till it is worn out, and then wear it till it is worn out." (The narrator adds, "It is said that
she lived for a long period, wearing that (yellow) dress till its colour became dark because of long wear.") 88

[Sahih Bukhari, Vol 4, The Book of Jihad Chapter 188, Page 190, Hadith Number 3071]

This is proof that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ knew all languages. Hazrath Umm Khalid ﷺ was born in Africa. Her father Khalid bin Saeed ﷺ is credited with recording the first revelation. Her mother was Umaimah bint Khalaf ibn As’ad ibn Khuzaimah ﷺ. Khalid bin Saeed ﷺ and his wife Umaimah bint Khalaf ﷺ had migrated to Abyssinia. Umm Khalid ﷺ, also called Amah, was born in Africa. She came to Arabia with her parents as a young child who only knew the Ethiopian language. She later married az-Zubayr ﷺ. So the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ spoke to the child in the language she knew.

It is sad to note that many foreigners who come to serve the deen don’t attempt to learn the local language. Thus we have confused youth who don’t know where to quench their thirst and an older generation that revere these scholars, more out of emotion, than ignorance. The proof that the local language can be learned is that foreigners who come to our shores to do business in the economic sphere learn the local languages, yet those that come into the religious fraternity don’t. One has to be passionate if one sincerely wants to teach the deen.

**The Spiritual Heartland of Islam**

By handing over the Spiritual Heartland of Islam to the Saudi Dynasty, the Euro/Zionist alliance closed down the effective usage of our international parliament, the Hajj. The effort to kill the spiritual heart of Islam which were previously done through western writers, with an enmity against Islam, have today become a system that want to secularise us and make us God-less. The ‘modern crusaders’ are the Capitalist/Zionist/Euro alliances that fear if the impoverished masses of the world understand the Islamic economic system; they will join Islam in droves. However the Zionist/Capitalist greed will never allow meddling in politics and economics, as though to say:

> Do anything you like, but do not touch the systems of production and consumption
Conflict Between Philosophies of Life

They have now created, with their Muslim allies modern ‘protestant’ Islamic institutes throughout the world to dish out their brand of Muslims which will never interfere in the systems of ‘production’ and ‘consumption’. The other strategy is that their sympathisers have formed their own Sufi Orders and changed the name of their propagation centres from Markaz to Khanqah.

Love the Holy Prophet ﷺ more than your self

There were Sahaba willing to die for the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. During the Battle of Uhad, Zubayr ibn Awwam ﷺ was jumping to catch the arrows, whilst shielding the Holy Prophet ﷺ. He had seventy two wounds on that day. A man saw him change his shirt and saw his body covered with scar tissue. He asked Hazrath Zubayr ﷺ:

What’s that from?

He replied:

The Battle of Uhad guarding the Messenger of Allah ﷺ.

The Sahaba didn’t do that because of some special training as bodyguards; or secret service or they had insurance policies. They did so because they loved the Holy Prophet ﷺ more than their own selves. The Holy Prophet ﷺ said:

لا يؤمن أحدكم حتى اكون احبب إليه من والده ولده
والناس أجمعين

None of you can be a ‘possessor of true faith’ (mu’timin) unless I become dearer to him than his parents, his offspring and in fact all human beings

Hazrath Ali ﷺ, speaking on behalf of all the community of Sahaba in Madinah, is reported to have said:

The Holy Prophet is dearer to us than our wealth, our children, our fathers, our forefathers, our mothers and cool water at the time of severe thirst.

Hazrath Zaid Ibn Al-Duthna ﷺ, was one of the citizens of Makkah, who was brought out of Al-Haram so that he would be killed, then Abu Sufyan told him (he was still polytheist):
Madinah to Karbala

I ask you by Allah ﻪ, Zaid ...would you like Muhammad ﷺ to be here instead of you to kill him while you are among your family?

Hazrath Zaid Ibn Al-Duthna ﷺ said:

I swear by Allah ﻪ that I would not want Muhammad ﷺ wherever he is sitting now to be hurt by a thorn while I am sitting among my family …

Abu Sufyan said:

I have never seen someone loves Muhammad ﷺ as the companions of Muhammad ﷺ.

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said:

أدبّو أولادكم على ثلاثة حُبّ نَبَيِّكم وحب أهل بيته
وعلى قراءة القرآن

Imbue in your children three qualities. Love for your Holy Prophet ﷺ. Love for his family and recitation of the Holy Qur’aan.⁸⁹

The only way to teach children love of Allah ﻪ and the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is if you yourself love Allah ﻪ and the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. If you don’t have something you can’t give it.

Arrogance

Hazrath Junayd ibn Muhammad Abu al-Qasim al-Khazzaz al-Baghdadi⁹⁰ (830-910 CE) ﷺ the great jurist (faqih) and great Spiritual Master said:

Before learning about God you got to empty your heart of arrogance

In the study of traditional science (in the modern Dar al-Ulum and institutes) they say that the most important thing is learning belief (aqidah), then law (fiqh). But, Imam Junaid ﷺ said that the first thing that should be taught is what the signs of arrogance are and how to fight those signs in them. If the future leaders are not made aware of this it’s a waste of time to teach them anything. Even if they have the information, they won’t have the knowledge. There is a one who doesn’t know much outward knowledge but his awareness of Allah ﻪ impacts his heart. This is very important because many of the Sahaba were not scholars but very
Conflict Between Philosophies of Life

simple people who because their commitment (Imaan) was so strong and
t heir knowledge of Allah was so powerful, that they were ulama with
depth knowledge of Allah. They were not people of memorizing the
whole Holy Qur’aan or knowing many hadith. The actual people that
gave fatwa from the Sahaba were less than ten. This is a historical fact.
The handful that gave fatwa didn’t want to because they had that taqwa
from Allah. So I hope we don’t envision that if you are not a scholar
you are finished (khalaas). On the contrary there are very simple Muslims
with such strong imaan, that they are in a much better condition than
people who know many narrations (riwayah) and things like that and it
doesn’t benefit them.

Imam Maalik said:

لا يَسْلَ عِلْمٌ كَثْرَةٌ الْرُّوَايَةٌ

Real knowledge, is not knowing many, many narrations (hadith
and knowing all of the Holy Qur’aan and these things)

وَإِنَّمَا هُوَ ثُرٌ وَاجْهَالٌ فِي قَلْبٍ مُؤْمِنٍ

(The real knowledge) is a light that Allah puts into the
hearts of the mu’mineen

What is ‘the wisdom’؟

So the Holy Prophet Muhammad came to purify and teach the book.
Again the book is not enough therefore Allah says

‘to teach them the book and wisdom’. What is ‘the
wisdom’؟

ِالْحِكْمَةُ a wonderful word that has a huge semantic field in
the Arabic language. One of the meanings of the الحكيم is ‘the wise one’ or ‘the
doctor’. The doctor by his nature heals. So the hakim is the one who has
hikmah and is able to heal. So the one who taught the book and the hikmah
is one who not only knows how to read and understand the book but
how to use the book as a healing curative reality. The hakim knows
how to take a sick and diseased society and to elevate and lift them into a
state of health. Health is always preceded by a process of purification.
Madinah to Karbala

Disease in itself is a type of purification. Thus purification precedes the process of the book and the wisdom. The ‘hukm’ - the ‘order’ because one has to know how to apply the book in human societies. Also we get ehkaam which means ‘to perfect’ or ‘do something in excellence’ - which is related to the concept of ‘ehsaan’.

**Healing the sick heart**

When the dead heart or essential being comes alive or is healed, then the heart can understand what the intellect and reason could not understand. Allah ﷺ says in the Holy Qur’aan in the 22nd Sura, al-Hajj (the Pilgrimage) ﷺ, in Verse 46:

أو آذان يسمعون بها

When the heart comes alive, it can hear what otherwise could not be heard.

فإنها لا تعمى الأبصار

Truly, it’s not these (physical) eyes which are blind

ولكن تعمى القلوب التي في الصدور

What is blind is the heart, which is inside the true centre of intuitive insight (sadr). [See my explanation of the word (sadr) in the chapter, Blessing of serving the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s Household]

So the heart can see. In addition to this (physical) eye, we also have this (internal) eye. Spirituality is the path through which the spiritual heart is activated. When the spiritual heart comes alive, then it can see; and hear; and understand that which rationality can never penetrate. You know the physical eyes can’t see unless there is light. Similarly the spiritual eye of the heart can’t see without Nur. The source of light is Allah ﷺ but it is dispensed by the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and obtainable from those who possess it, down an unbroken chain of transmission (Shajrah).
The Holy Prophet  Leader Unparallelled

THE HOLY PROPHET  LEADER UNPARALLELED

The Holy Prophet  was the religious teacher, spiritual guide, social reformer, commander in chief and political head. The four Caliphs that followed inherited this leadership in accordance with their capacity, for the Holy Prophet Muhammad  had every virtue par excellence. The temporal power and spiritual leadership were cantered in the same personality. Everyone who came into contact with the Holy Prophet Muhammad  received a degree of spirituality and light (nur) from him, in accordance with their capacity. Allah  asked the Holy Prophet Muhammad  to proclaim in the 42nd Sura, ash-Shura (the Consultation) in verse 23.

قُلْ لَا أَسْتَأْكِمُّ عَلَيْهِ أَجْرًا إِلَّا الْمُوْدَةْ فِي الْقُرْآنِ

Say: ‘I do not ask for any recompense for this (preaching the faith in Allah  and His Messenger  but love for my) family and (thereby you will attain Allah  ’s and my love and nearness).’

Thus every leader who was not from Ahl al-Bayt  had the highest reverence for the Imams of Ahl al-Bayt. Besides living in the house where the Holy Prophet Muhammad  lived and thus receiving illumination from him, they genetically inherited spirituality.

Wealth and power corrupts

Unfortunate events prior to and following the Martyrdom of Imam Husayn  sounded the death knell of respect for the Ahl al-Bayt. The Umayads usurped the temporal power, and the incident of Karbala and its aftermath paved the way for the modem 'so called' Islamic Nation States' and the external (zahiri) brand of Islam, as followed by these leaders. Those who could see the reality however, continued to flock around the Ahl al-Bayt and their students to drink from the fountain of knowledge and reality. Under the Umayyad and Abbasid Caliphs these expounders of the internal true Islam, or the Sufi Dervishes, were persecuted and that is why these spiritual lessons were given secretly. The Holy Prophet  is the ocean, Hazrath Ali  is the outlet and the Ahl al-Bayt is the canals.
Madinah to Karbala

that carry the water to the thirsty. The analysis of the events after Karbala shows clearly how wealth and power corrupted the morals and respect for Ahl al-Bayt. How deep this rot has set in today. Fortunate are those that are attached to Sufi Orders that have devised effective mechanisms to keep the love of Ahl al-Bayt, and thus the soul of true Islam, alive in the heart of its adherents.

Imams or leaders belonging to the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s family

Imam, إمام, plural آئمة, A’immah  
Ahl al-Bayt are the leaders from the Holy Prophet’s family. آئمة A’immah is a plural for Imam, which means ‘leader’ and Ahl al-Bayt means ‘members of the family’. These Imams or leaders belonging to the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s family occupy the foremost rank as regards spirituality and other aspects of religion. If those that spent their time in the vicinity of the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s person and courtyard (dar) became such great teachers how much more must have been imparted to the ahl al-Bayt who lived in the Holy Prophet’s home (ghar). All classes of Sufi’s, Dervishes and Faqirs owe their origin, a life ‘soaked in love’ for them. The Chishtia Order in particular striving to imbue this love for Ahl al-Bayt into its followers. There are many Sufi Orders being brought into ‘post-apartheid’ South Africa by some Sufi Shaykhs, who due to their Middle Eastern origin are well versed in Arabic. Many of our non-Arabic literate sincere seekers are enthralled by their command of the Arabic language and impressive dhikr gatherings. I was surprised to hear personally, from them that the event of Karbala should not be delved into.

Ignorance and materialism

As matters stand in respect of the majority who call themselves Sufis today, they have been infected by the disease of this age, ignorance and materialism. Many fall short of their claims and seek [worldly] gain through the guise of religiosity. Within the Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama’ah أهل السنة والجماعة we have individuals who are incompetent to be Spiritual Masters promoting themselves due to family lineage or having a degree in external knowledge, causing further harm. The Classical Sufi Masters elected the most accomplished dervishes or disciples (mureeds) of the Sufi
Order to be their successor (Khalifa). [More on this very important topic can be read in my book ‘Attack on the Spiritual Heart of Islam’]. This deception has historically, always, occurred in the Muslim world, as is evident in the writings of the Classical Masters. In this age it has reached epidemic proportions.

The pious Imams have always been the strictest at trying to prevent this deception, because there is nothing worse than deceiving somebody in religion. In traditional Muslim society the Sufis are literally the highest people in the society; they are the ‘beacons of guidance’. Imam an-Nawawi93 (631 - 676 A.H. / 1234 - 1278 CE), Qadi Iyad bin Musa94 (d. 544 AH), Imam al-Asqalani95 (773 AH/ 852 AH) etc. were all great Sufis. All of these great Imams were known to be Sufis of great stature. Imam al-Ghazali96 (450-505 AH /1058-1111 CE) who is given the title of ‘Proof of Islam’ (Hujjat al-Islam) is probably the greatest example. They personified the ‘meeting of the two oceans of knowledge’, externally derived knowledge and internal, divinely bestowed knowledge. The crisis of rejecting Sufism as the inner dimension of Islam has had really devastating results in much of the modern Islamic phenomenon. Incompetent Sufi’s and the Salafi movement are the prime causes of this.

**True Tazkiyah or Sufism**

True Sufism is the practice of Tazkiyah96, a Qur’aanic term from the 91st Sura ash-Shams (the Sun) in verse 9:

\[
\text{قد افلح من زكاه}.
\]

Indeed the one who purifies his (ill-commanding) self (from all vain and vicious desires and cultivates in it virtue and piousness) succeeds al-Ihsaan a term used in the hadith97, referring to the process of transforming the nafs (carnal self or ego) from its deplorable state of ego-centeredness (through various psycho-spiritual conditions ) to the 'dynamic condition' of purity and submission to the will of Allah ﷺ. Tazkiyah leads us to the state of Ihsaan احساس, meaning ‘beautiful perfection
or excellence’, a matter of taking one's inner faith (Imaan) and showing it in both belief and deeds in entrainment. Tazkiyah originally meant pruning the plant, to remove what is harmful for its growth. When the term is applied to the human personality, it means to beautify it and to remove from it all evil traces and spiritual diseases that are obstacles in experiencing Allah (jalla). Ihsaan is a sense of social responsibility borne out of true, Love for Allah (jalla) and intense love for, and loyalty to, the Holy Prophet Muhammad (salla), which instills Islamic convictions and excellence in worship of Allah (jalla), with conviction that the Beloved Allah (jalla) is seeing one and is pleased with one.

The Inner Dimension of the Sunnah

The inner dimension of the Sunnah, of transforming the heart, on the basis of the human values which reached their perfection in the Holy Prophet (salla) has to be built up first; then the external manifestation of these great values will automatically come. The inner dimensions of the Sunnah are ultimately linked with tasawwuf or Sufism. Although the word Sufi is not found in the Holy Qur’aan or Hadith, the implication of the word is Qur’aanic and belongs to the Sunnah of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (salla). A Sufi is a person whose ideal in life is Safa al-qalb or purification of the heart. The word Safa means purification, which is the ideal of the Sufi and that of Islam. Pretenders to the path have given the wrong connotation to the word, ‘Sufism’ and the term ‘Tasawwuf’. They have reduced this most noble pursuit, the essence of Islam into ritualism and mysticism. There is nothing mystical about a true Sufi. Tasawwuf is the Science of Spirituality.

So what is Spirituality? It is not to perform supernatural acts, or to travel long distances or go to the arsh and return. It is not to be able to read the minds of other people. It is the capacity to see, hear and understand with the heart. They are the best of all people who can see with their external eyes and with their internal eye. Then there are some externally blind but can see internally. Then, we come to the worst of all men. Those that can see externally but they are internally blind. The only thing worse than that is being externally and internally blind. The function of spirituality is to make you capable of seeing, of recognizing and understanding the signs
The Holy Prophet Leader Unparalleled

(aayaat) of Allah as they occur in the world. Amongst the aayaat of Allah, the most important and momentous of all are those which will appear in the last age, this age, the age of trials and tribulation (al-Fitan).

A spiritual affiliation with the members of the Household of the Holy Prophet Muhammad which is characterized by love for his noble family is an aspect of Islamic tradition which has largely been ignored, unconsciously due to a dissemination of a sectarian brand of Islam that have purchased and controlled by a particular sect in the Modern Muslim World after the closure of the Political Caliphate. Love and reverence for Ahl al-Bayt seems to have been confined to a ceremonial acknowledgement in salawat or during the Friday Khutbah. This is not the role envisioned by Allah and the Holy Prophet Muhammad. Indeed, their active role in shaping Islamic political history, the monumental contributions of the noble blessed wives to the intellectual tradition, and love for Sayyiduna Imam Hasan and Sayyiduna Imam Husayn, Sayyiduna Imam Ali and Sayyida Fatimah -in particular- as a means of spiritual elevation are perpetuating legacies within Dynamic Orthodox Islam as opposed to Conservatism and Modernism.

Intellectual and political traditions

Current ‘trends’ in modern Islamic practice have given preference to the Islamic intellectual and political traditions with very little emphasis on the Islamic spiritual tradition. When the heart can understand what the intellect and reason could not understand. When the heart comes alive, it can hear what otherwise could not be heard. So the heart can see. In addition to this (physical) eye, we also have this (internal) eye. The term Sufi came into existence when the Ulama became divided into those that followed the letter of the law and took rules without realities and those Ulama who also cared for the spirit along with the letter of the law. Some Ulama pleased the ruling authorities whilst the true Ulama never swerved from the truth, only for the pleasure of Allah. It is these Ulama that became known as Sufis, the true “inheritors of the Holy Prophet Muhammad” whilst the others remained Ulama.
Madinah to Karbala

Tazkiyah and Islamic Leadership

The foundations of Islamic society are basically ethico-religious. Hence, anyone who honestly comes forward to lead the Muslims to the Goal prescribed for them in the Holy Qur’aan should possess a personality illumined in its spiritual, moral and intellectual dimensions. This is the verdict of the Holy Qur’aan, and this is the verdict of Islamic history. But how is such a personality built up? By mere emotionalism! By mere mysticism! By mere intellectualism! By mere ritualism! By mere externalism and legalism! By mere ritualistic missionary-ism! By mere political agitation in the name of Islam! No. A thousand times, No! The only alchemy which can transform the human personality into ‘pure gold’ is the alchemy of the rigorous discipline of tazkiyah. This is what has been taught and demonstrated by the Holy Prophet /salla1 in whom abides Allah /jalla’s choicest Blessings; and this is what has been practised throughout Islamic history by those who had truly grasped the dynamics of leadership in Islam and were consequently able to achieve historic success. One such personality was Sayyid Shaykh ’Abd al-Qaadir Jilaani of Baghdad, the Ghaus al-A’zam (Grand Master) of the Qadiri Spiritual Discipline, who built up, with the spiritual dynamism of his personality and without any political power, the forces that crushed the menace of the Assassins for good, on the one hand, and the might of the Crusaders barbaric hordes entrenched in Palestine at that time, on the other.

There were in history many of his followers who realised the obligatoriness of this Sunnah, in opposition to other leaders whose personal limitations kept them away. One of the glorious products of this Sunnah was the great Sayyiduna Abd al-Qaadir al-Jilaani , to whom we have referred. It is recorded in history that, in imitation of the Holy Prophet /salla1’s exercise of retreat to Hira, he was accustomed to retreat to the forest every evening during the course of his formal education, and after the completion of that education he withdrew to the wilderness and stayed there in solitude for many years in total devotion to God, any finally acquiring through an extremely rigorous discipline that high level of tazkiyah which not only elevated him to great eminence in godliness but enabled him to change the course of history.
Among them was Sultan-ul-Hind, Hazrath Shaykh Khwaja Sayed Muhammad Muinuddin Chishti 100 (536 A.H./1141 CE - 6 Rajab 627 AH, Tuesday 21 May1230 CE) also known as Gharib Nawaz of Sanjar (later of Ajmer) who, alone with his spiritual dynamism and without any army or political thrust, pitched the banner of Islam in the heart of an inimical and alien population, changing the course of history in the South-Asian sub-continent permanently.

Among them was Hazrath Shah Ghulam Muhammad Siddiqui, popularly known as Hazrath Soofie Sahib of South Africa, my great-grandfather, the humble descendant of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique, who was commissioned by his Spiritual Guide to Southern tip of Africa, in 1895 to propagate Islam in general and the Chishti Order in particular. It was a challenge to push forward the work of Islam and the Silsila in the British ruled country and to evolve an effective mechanism to deal with those associated with the order. Hazrath Soofie Saheb not only rose to the occasion but in the short span of fifteen years the entire Southern Africa became studded with Khanqahs of the Chishti order. The Khanqah of the founding Pir of the Nizami Chishti order, Hazrath Shaykh Khwaja Sayed Muhammad Nizamuddeen Awliya101 (1238 – 1325 CE) stands by the side of the Jamuna river in India, whilst the first Khanqah of his beloved spiritual son stood by the side of the Umgeni river in Africa, with a magnificent view of the Indian ocean. Between 1895 and 1911 he established twelve Khanqahs that all stand in a serene, loving atmosphere, with a cool and refreshing breeze blowing, which aptly symbolizes the order of Sultan-ul-Hind, Hazrath Shaykh Khwaja Sayed Muhammad Muinuddin Chishti (Ajmeri) 102 (536 A.H./1141 CE - 6 Rajab 627 A.H, Tuesday 21 May1230 CE) also known as Gharib Nawaz, the order of love, of the prince of love, which was to blow amidst the oppression and injustice. The Khanqahs comprise of a Masjid, Madrasah, cemetery, orphanage, rehabilitation centre, medical centre, houses, courtyard, garden, fountains, wells and open kitchen. In each centre, the yellow and red flag of the Chishti Nizami Habibi order is hoisted. The sandy yellow colour
on the flag symbolized humility whilst the red colour symbolized *ishqe haqiqi* (true love), the two qualities which the Chishti Nizami Habibi order strives to imbibe into its disciples. The flag also indicated that a *Khalifa* of the order is present at the *Khanqah* and could be consulted. The same flag flew during the British and Dutch rule; in the apartheid era and unto this day in the new South Africa.

Among these spiritual luminaries were the Sufis of the Naqshbandi Order who, under the most adverse circumstances when the prestige of the Muslims was at its lowest ebb, conquered, without any material means and purely through the power of their spiritual personalities, the hearts of the haughty enemies of Islam who had destroyed the political power of the Muslims under Halaku Khan—defeating at the same time the Buddhist and the Christian religious forces that were fully entrenched in the field. And, among them were a host of others who, through their *tazkiyah* and in contrast to those Muslim religious leaders who were devoid of *tazkiyah*, acquired the glorious distinction of becoming the sole pioneers in respect of the most difficult task of converting vast and widespread human communities to Islam.

Alas, the Islamic leaders of today have turned their backs on *tazkiyah*, with the result that they cannot benefit even the Muslims, not to speak of humanity at large. And the world of Islam presents a scene of unspeakable mass destruction of Islamic values, with the forces of the newfangled secular ‘isms’ pouncing upon the Muslim communities like vultures.

The world of Islam will have to revive the pursuit of comprehensive *tazkiyah* in accordance with the norms and principles laid down in the Holy Qur’aan and the Sunnah, in order that genuine Islamic leadership of the Muhammadan Pattern emerges on a high level and in a large measure and acts fruitfully for the fulfilment of the mission of Islam.

As matters stand in respect of the Muslim religious leadership of the present bay, neither those who are popularly known as *Sufis* nor those who have become anti-Tasawwuf, and neither the political agitators
The Holy Prophet ✪ Leader Unparalelled

among the Ulama nor the professional preachers and writers among them, seem to possess any chances of achieving success in defeating the forces of evil that sway the world.
Leadership of the *Ummah*

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ merged in him very admirably, numerous functions, amongst these were:

1. Reviving the spiritual aspect of Islam, and:
2. Heading the Theocentric Islamic Public Order and of *Pax Islamica* [Islamic state based on The Law of Allah ﷺ and His Beloved Messenger ﷺ's exposition].

He had trained certain of his intimate companions as leaders in these fields. The following were elected to head the Islamic State after the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ passed away:

1. Hazrath Abu Bakr as-Siddique ﷺ reign: (11 AH to 13 AH): 2 Years: 632 to 634 CE.
2. Hazrath Umar ibn al-Khattab ﷺ reign: (13 AH to 24 AH): 11 Years: 634 to 644 CE.
3. Hazrath Uthman ibn Affan ﷺ reign: (24 AH to 35 AH): 11 Years: 644 to 656 CE
4. Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib ﷺ reign: (35 AH to 40 AH): 5 Years. 656 to 661 CE

The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s lifestyle left a spiritual, political and ethical vision that no Muslim can afford to lose sight of. The Holy Prophet ﷺ pulled an erring humanity out of the pre-Islamic Arabian political and social exploitation and showed them the path to commit to Allah ﷺ. He is the model of perfect submission to Allah ﷺ. The Islamic view of righteousness is built up on the concept of simplicity and seriousness, in life. Thus, self-control and self-sacrifice are its watch words, and the Path of Righteousness cannot be travelled, according to the Holy Qur'an, without avoiding indulgence in luxuries as mentioned in the Holy Qur'an in the 79th Sura *an-Nazi'at* (Those who pull) in verses 40 and 41:

وَأَمَّا مَنْ خَافَ مَقَامَ رَبِّهِ وَنَهَى النَّفْسَ عَنِ الْيَهوَى
The Caliphs and Imams of Ahl al-Bayt

But as for him who feared standing in the Presence of his Lord and forbade (his ill-commanding) self its appetites and lusts,

فَإِنَّ الْجَنَّةَ هِيَ الْمَأْوَى

Paradise will surely be (his) abode

This fact is thoroughly exemplified in the personality of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and of every other Prophet of God—Jesus ﷺ, Moses ﷺ, Abraham ﷺ, etc., and in the personalities of all the exemplary followers of Islam, like the Righteous Caliphs, the illustrious Imams, and the great Sufis. The immediate companions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ are depicted in pious traditions as innocent of excesses, despite their position of privilege, they maintained the simplicity and plainness of habit, which they had learned from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ whom they loved excessively.

The Holy Qur'an also makes reference to the Khulafa in the 48th Sura, al-Fath (Victory) 48، in Verse 29:

مُحْمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ وَالَّذِينَ مَعَهُ أُشْدَاءٌ عَلَى الْكَفَّارِ رَحْمَاءً

بُيْنَاهُمْ تَرَااهُمْ رَكُعًا سَجَدًا يَبْغُونَ فَضْلًا مِّنَ اللَّهِ وَرَضْوَانًا

سَيْمَاهُمْ فِي جَوُهُرِهِمْ مِّنْ آخَرِ السَّجُودِ

Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah ﷺ and those who are with him (refers to Abu Bakr ﷺ); are hard against the unbelievers (refers to Umar ibn al-Khattab ﷺ), merciful one to another (refers to Uthman ibn Affan ﷺ), you see them bowing and falling prostrate (refers to Ali ibn Abi Talib ﷺ)....

This commentary was given by Hazrath Jaafar son of Muhammad son of Ali son of Husayn son of Ali ﷺ and is recorded in Al-Ghunya li-Talibi Tariq al-Haqq by Shaykh Abd al-Qaadir Jilaani ﷺ.

A Unique system of Government

The institution of the Rightly Guided Caliphs or The Righteous Caliphs al-Khulafa’u r-Rashidun الخلفاء الراشدون is a unique system of government. It
introduced principles of government which was not known in the ancient world and only recently been introduced in the modern world.

- The principle of mutual consultation (Shura), to discuss affairs was introduced. Shura is made among people concerned with a specific issue, whether personal or social. Shura also elected the Caliph. After election people offered bay’ah, or the pledge of allegiance, to the caliph. The ruler in turn had to seek advice in matters of policy. The pledge of allegiance to the Caliph was a conditional pledge; Muslims will obey him if he obeyed Allah and his Messenger.

- The principle of Human Rights was introduced. This included freedom of religion, privacy, good family life and legal protection. [See the Madinah Charter in this book]

- A welfare state was introduced. It fulfilled the basic right to food, shelter education and health. The treasury or bait ul-maal was a trust of the Ummah.

**Legacy inherited by the Companions**

It was the 18 Dhul-Hijjah, the day when the Holy Prophet Muhammad halted at Ghadir Khum ‘Pond of Khum’, after his return from the Farewell Pilgrimage (Hajjat-ul-wada) during the onward journey to Madinah, and surrounded by the Companions, he declared while raising the hand of Hazrath Ali al-Murtaza:

من كنت مولالا فعلي مولالا

One who has me as his Spiritual Master and protector has Ali as his Spiritual Master and protector.

The door of nabuwwah was closed with the advent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad and after his physical departure the fayz of nabuwwah and risaalah had to flow into the universe.

**Two categories of Caliphate**

Here we have to quote Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlavi [1703-1762 CE], the great muhaddith of Delhi, to clear the misconceptions in this age of religious strife who have attributed the Holy Prophet’s companions (Sahaba) to one group and the family Ahl al-Bayt to another. A wall
The Caliphs and Imams of *Ahl al-Bayt*

has been erected to separate one household. Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlavi refers to the two types of *khilafah* that spread out after the passing of the Holy Prophet Muhammad and this was also stated by Imam-e-Rabban, Mujaddid Alf Saani, Shaykh Ahmad al-Farooqi Sirhindi (1564-1624 CE) renowned as Mujaddid Alf Saani which means ‘Reviver of the Second Millennium’.

Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlavi said that two types of *khilafath* and *Imamat* appeared; one was the ‘apparent succession’ (*khilafate zahiri*) and the other ‘hidden succession’ (*khilafate baatini*). The first Caliph from the Rightly Guided Caliphs *al-Khulafa’u r-Rashidun* (*The Righteous Caliphs*) inherited the ‘apparent caliphate’ (*khilafate zahiri*); this, the manifest caliphate is the political office of the religion of Islam, established for improving the administration of the earth. The direct caliphate of Hazrat Abu Bakr as-Siddique was established with the consensus of the people and is categorically proved by the evidence of history and its blessings filtered down to the righteous and just rulers. This was to establish what the Holy Qur’aan speaks of in the 61st Sura *as-Saff* (Battle Arrangement) in verse 9:

\[
\text{ليُظَهِّرُهُ عَلَى الَّذِينَ كَلَّهُ}
\]

So that He may make it (The Divine Dispensation) prevail over the other (man made) dispensations

This model of administration, and call to Islam (*da’wah*) will prevail till the Day of Judgment (*Qiyaamah*) due to the efforts of the Companions (*Sahaba*), especially Hazrat Abu Bakr Siddique and the righteous caliphs that followed him.

**Spiritual Sovereignty**

Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlavi said that the second type of Caliphate that emanated from the Holy Prophet Muhammad was the spiritual legacy of ‘internal (hidden) sovereignty’ or *khilaafate baatini* or *Imaamate baatini*. This spiritual legacy of the Holy Prophet was known as *wilaya* (spiritual sovereignty) and *imamah* (spiritual leadership). The hidden caliphate is exclusively a spiritual office, being not an elective and
consultative issue but a selective act, selected by Allah ﷺ, therefore the declaration of the first Imam of spiritual sovereignty — Hazrath Ali al-Murtaza ﷺ — required neither anybody’s proposal nor support for it is Allah ﷺ’s selection. Therefore, therefore, the Holy Prophet ﷺ declared it at Ghadir Al-Khumm ‘Pond of Khumm’١٠٠ with the Divine Consent. Ghadir Al-Khumm ‘Pond of Khumm’ was a place where people from different provinces met and thereafter departed from each other taking different routes to their home provinces. Hazrath Abu Said al-Khudri said:

This verse (the 5th Sura, al-Ma’idah ﷺ (the Table spread) verse 67) was revealed on the day of ‘Ghadir Khum’ about Hazrath Ali ibn Abi Talib ﷺ.

Imam Fakhruddin al-Razi١١١ [1149- 1209 CE (543 -606AH)], in his Tafsir al-Kabir (The Large Commentary, also known as Mafatih al-Ghayb, Keys to the Unknown)١١٢ has given ten explanations and possibilities on the revelation of this verse and the tenth possibility is that this verse was revealed in connection with Ghadir. Allah ﷺ said in the 5th Sura, al-Ma’idah ﷺ (the Table spread) verse 67:

يا أَيُّهَا الرَّسُولُ بَلْغُ مَا أَنْزِلْ إِلَيْكَ مِنْ رَبِّكَ وَإِنْ لَمْ تَفْعَلْ فَمَا بْلَغْتُ رَسَالتُهُ وَاللَّهُ يَعْتَصِمُ مِنَ النَّاسِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَهْدِي الْقُوُّمَ الْكَافِرِينَ

O Messenger! Communicate what has been revealed to you from your Lord. And if you did not do (so) then you would not deliver the Message of the Lord. And Allah ﷺ will (Himself) protect your (life) from the (hostile) people. Surely Allah ﷺ does not show the path of guidance to those who disbelieve.

He called the gathering of Companions from the various tribes and after addressing them on important matters he announced that he had received a message from Allah ﷺ to declare as reported in Sahih Muslim ﻣﺴﻠﻢ ﺻﺤﻴﺢ, Musnad Ahmad ibn Hamnbal١١٤ and many other books:
The Caliphs and Imams of Ahl al-Bayt

On one occasion, Hazrath Zayd bin Arqam narrates:

“One day the Holy Prophet Muhammad addressed us at a place between Makkah and Al-Madinah at a watering place called Khumm. He praised and glorified Allah, and he exhorted and reminded us, said, “O People! I am human and soon an angel will invite me to my Allah and I will accept. I am leaving behind two weighty things. The first being the Book of Allah, that contains guidance and nur (light). Act upon the guidance contained in the Book of Allah and hold fast unto it”. Thereafter he induced us to adhere to (act upon the teachings of) the Book of Allah, then he said, ‘Secondly, (I leave among you) my family (Ahle Bayt) and I remind you of Allah as regards to association with my family! I remind you of Allah as regards to association with my family! I remind you of Allah as regards to association with my family! I remind you of Allah as regards to association with my family!’

[Sahih Muslim Volume 6; Virtues of the Companions, Chapter 4: The Virtues of Ali ibn Abu Talib; Page 267; Hadith Number 6225]

The Holy Prophet Muhammad left us the gift of Allah, the Book of Allah and the gift from him, his family. The concealed caliphate started with Hazrath Ali al-Murtaza and its blessings gradually trickled.
Madinah to Karbala

to the members of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s family and the saints of the Ummah. By means of the declaration:

مَنْ كَانَ مَولَاٰئَ فَعَلِّي مَولَاٰئٌ

One who has me as his Spiritual Guide has Ali ﷺ as his Spiritual Guide

And

عليّ وليكم من بعدي

Ali is your spiritual leader after me

The Holy Prophet ﷺ thus pronounced Hazrath Imam Ali ﷺ as the opener of the spiritual sovereignty. This spiritual treasure house, whose fountainhead is Sayyiduna Imam Ali al-Murtaza ﷺ, is shared by Sayyida Hazrath Fatimah ﷺ, Sayyiduna Imam Hasan ﷺ and Sayyiduna Imam Husayn ﷺ as its direct inheritors and then it was filtered down to the twelve Imams (spiritual leaders), the last leader being Imam Mahdi ﷺ.

Just as Ali al-Murtaza ﷺ is the opener of spiritual sovereignty, Imam Mahdi ﷺ is the seal of spiritual sovereignty.

The combination of the manifest caliphate (zahiri khilafath) and the hidden spiritual sovereignty baatini Imamat has preserved the deen of Islam. If you throw away the peel of a banana how long will the contents be preserved? The peel is the outer protection and the contents are the hidden fruit. If one sees the outer (zaahir) as being unimportant and discards it the worth will only be known when the inner hidden (baatin) fruit begins to become discoloured. So, both operate in unison serving their own purpose. Thus the unison of the manifest caliphate (zahiri khilafath) and the hidden spiritual (sovereignty) baatini Imamat preserves the deen of Islam.

So when the door of Prophethood and Messengership was closed with the advent and eventual demise of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ the ‘hidden effusion of prophetic grace’ (baatini faizane nabuwwat), which was alluded to in the Holy Qur’aan in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) للْبَقَارَةٍ, verse 124:
The Caliphs and Imams of *Ahl al-Bayt*

Surely I will make you an Imam of men

was promulgated by the descendants of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, through Sayyida Hazrath Fatimah ﷺ. The wisdom of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s sons being ushered into the realm of Divine Beauty in infancy is that the Prophethood be sealed:

و لكن لا بني بعده

But there is no prophet after him

Holy Prophet ﷺ’s sons passed away

The son usually continues the legacy but Allah ﷻ did not let any son of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ reach an age of maturity. The Holy Qur’aan stated in the 33rd Sura al-Ahzab (the Confederates) in verse 40:

و لكن لا بني بعده

Muhammad ﷺ is not the father of any of your men, but he is the Messenger of Allah ﷻ and the Last of the prophets; and Allah ﷻ is aware of all things

So the Holy Qur’aan is saying ﷺ (not the father of any of your men), this refers to a ‘son reaching manhood’ (baligh) – ‘rajulat’ but about this ُرَسُولُ اللّٰهِ وَخَاتَمُ النَّبِيّينَ (Messenger of Allah ﷺ; the Seal of the Prophets); Allah ﷻ is ُرَسُولُ اللّٰهِ وَخَاتَمُ النَّبِيّينَ (aware that he has no sons, to carry his spiritual legacy). Many prophets would be proud that in their progeny, their sons were also blessed with prophethood and messengership. So, how can it be that the ‘Distributor of Allah ﷻ’s bounty’ is not blessed with this Grace of Allah ﷻ (ni’mah)? For all blessings are first given to him and then distributed to all creation by him.

Allah ﷻ would not allow that other prophets have a merit above His Beloved, Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ by boasting about the Grace of
Madinah to Karbala

Allah Allah’s (ni’mah) given to their sons. So if his sons survived and would have been given prophethood then it would have affected the Seal of Prophethood and if they had survived without being given prophethood then the other prophets would have had a merit above him. So Allah Allah coloured the Messengership (Risaalah) and Prophethood (Nabuwwah) of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (s.w.a.) with the colour of Tauhid. Allah Allah says in the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow) in verse 138:

(Say that we have taken on the colour from) Allah Allah’s own colour, and whose colour is better than Allah Allah’s? [If] we truly commit ourselves to Him.

Just as Allah Allah is God with no sons, to remain ‘unique with no equal’ (wahdahu la shareek), so too to keep His Beloved, Holy Prophet Muhammad Allah’s Risaalah and Nabuwwah, ‘unique with no equal’ (wahdahu la shareek), He ushered the Holy Prophet Allah’s sons into the realm of Divine Beauty, in infancy. There is a Hadith in the Sahih Bukhari in which the Holy Prophet Muhammad Allah said:

Narraed Ismail: I asked Abi Aufa, ‘Did you see Ibrahim (s.w.a.), the son of the Holy Prophet Allah?’ He said, ‘Yes, but he passed away in his early childhood. Had there been a prophet after Muhammad Allah then his son would have lived, but there is no prophet after him.’

[Sahih Bukhari Volume 8; The Book of al-Adab (Good Manners), Chapter 109; Page 121; Hadith Number 6194]

In another hadith it is stated:
The Caliphs and Imams of Ahl al-Bayt

Hazrat Abdullah ibn Abbas ﷺ reports that when Hazrat Ibrahim ﷺ, the son of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ passed on to the realm of Divine Beauty, then the Holy Prophet ﷺ performed his funeral prayer and said, ‘There are two nurses to give him milk in heaven and if he survived he would have been a righteous prophet’.

Holy Prophet’s family line continues through his daughter

The Divine Outpouring of Nur from the essence of The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ al-fayd an-Nabawi١١٨ via Imamat had to continue. Allah ﷺ had to silence those that mocked the Holy Prophet ﷺ as mentioned in the Holy Qur’aan in the 108th Sura al-Kauthar (the Abundance) in verse 3:

إن شانافك هو الابن

Surely your enemy is the one who shall be without lineage

When the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s son, Hazrat Tahir ﷺ, born to Hazrat Khadijah al Kubra ﷺ, died, Amr bin As and Hakam bin As taunted the Holy Prophet ﷺ by calling him abtar literally meaning tail-less; implying that there would be no-one to continue ones lineage or whose progeny has been cut off. The 108th Sura al-Kauthar (the Abundance) al-Kauthar was revealed to give glad tidings to the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ that the abundance of Allah ﷺ’s unbounded grace, wisdom and knowledge, mercy and goodness, spiritual power and insight, in highest degrees, and of progeny has been bestowed to the Holy Prophet ﷺ. Kauthar also refers to the birth of Hazrat Fatima al-Zahra ﷺ signifying that, through her, his descendants would be in abundance. Other derivatives of the word al-Kauthar root word ka-tha-ra are: Kathar-rutun: Multitude; Katheenun: Much, many, numerous; Ak’tharun: More numerous (emphasis); Kath-thara: To multiply; Takathur: Act of multiplying; Is-thak-
Madinah to Karbala

thara: To wish for much. Allah ﷺ says in the Holy Qur’aan in the 108th Sura al-Kauthar (the Abundance) ﷺ in verse 2:

إِنَّا أُعْطِينَاكَ الكَثْرَ

Surely! We have given you; immeasurable Abundance

It is mentioned in the Sihah Sittah: The six major Hadith collections ﷺ about the Ahl al-Bayt ﻣِنَ ﺍﻟَْ ﺃﻫْﻞِ ﻣِنْهَ and the Holy Qur’aan, never being separated until the meeting with the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ at the Kauthar Fount. In other books of renowned Sunni scholars it is stated that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said Hazrath Imam Ali ﻪﻞُ.hostname ﻪﻞُhostname ﻪﻞُhostname ﻪﻞُhostname will dispense the Kauthar. To summarise all the hadith into one it is said:

Kauthar is a stream of super excellence, exclusively belonging to me. Only the righteous believers will be allowed to drink from it. Ali ﻪﻞُhostname shall distribute the water from it to them. On the day of judgement I will see some of my followers driven, like cattle, away from Kauthar. It will be announced that they are those who, after my departure from the world, deviated from the true religion and introduced innovations to corrupt the faith.

From that day Hazrath Imam Ali ﻪﻞُhostname was known and referred to by the companions as the ‘distributor of Kauthar’ (saqi al Kauthar). Kauthar also means abundance of descendants. The countless descendants of the Imams of the Ahl al-Bayt أُهُلِ الْبَيْت, in the progeny of Hazrath Imam Ali ﻪﻞُhostname and Hazrath Fatimah al-Zahra ﻪﻞُhostname are known as Sayyid.

Everyone’s lineage runs through their sons but uniquely Allah ﷺ continued the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s lineage through his daughter Bibi Fatimah ﻪﻞُhostname. It is reported in Imam Tabarani’s al- Muijam-ul-Kabir (3:44#2623) and numerous other books of hadith reported by Hazrath Bibi Fatimah ﻪﻞُhostname:
Hazrath Fatimah was blessed with three sons; Hazrath Hasan, Hazrath Husayn, Hazrath Muhsein; and three daughters: Hazrath Zainab, Hazrath Umme Kulthum and Hazrath Ruqaiyya.

Hazrath Ali narrates that when Hazrath Fatimah gave birth to Hazrath Hasan then the Holy Prophet came to us and said, ‘Show me my son! What have you named him?’ I informed him that I named him Harb. The Holy Prophet said, ‘No! He is Hasan’. Then when Hazrath Husayn was born the Holy Prophet came to us and said, ‘Show me my son! What have you named him?’ I informed him that I named him Harb.
The Holy Prophet ﷺ said, ‘No! He is Husayn ﷺ’. Then when our third son was born the Holy Prophet ﷺ came to us and said, ‘Show me my son! What have you named him’? I informed him that I named him Harb ﻟا حرث. The Holy Prophet ﷺ said, ‘No! He is Muhsin ﷺ’. Then the Holy Prophet ﷺ said ‘I have named them after the sons of Hazrath Harun ﷺ, Shabar ﺷﱪ, Shabbeer ﺷﺒﲑ and Mushabbar ﻟا مﴩ’.120

Hazrath Imam Muhsin ﷺ passed away in infancy. Imam Hasan ﷺ was an exact physical look alike of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ from head to waist whilst the other, Imam Husayn was an exact physical look alike of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ from waist to feet. This Hadith is in Tirmidhi Shareef:

عن على قال الحسن اشبه برسول الله صلى الله عليه وآله وسلم مابين الصدر الي الرأس والحسين اشبه برسول الله صلى الله عليه وآله وسلم ما كان النفل من ذلك

Hazrath Ali ﷺ narrates that Hazrath Hasan ﷺ was an exact look-alike of the Holy Prophet ﷺ from chest to head and Hazrath Husayn ﷺ was an exact look alike of the Holy Prophet ﷺ from chest to feet121.

Not only externally (zaahir) these two looked like the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ but internally (baatin) they possessed the traits of the Holy Prophet ﷺ. When these two sons of Ali ﷺ were born the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ declared that they were not the son’s of Ali ﷺ but his sons. Khatib Baghdadi’s book *Tarikh Baghdad* (11:285) contains the word ‘father’ (أبهم) in stead of guardian (وليهم). Hazrath Umar ﷺ narrates:

عن عمر بن الخطاب رضي الله عنه قال: سمعت رسول الله صلى الله عليه وآله وسلم يقول: كل بني اثني فان عصبتهم لأبيهم ما خلا ولد فاطمة، فإني أنا عصبتهم و أنا أبوهم.

Hazrath Umar ibn Khattab ﷺ narrates, ‘I heard the Holy Prophet ﷺ say, ‘The family tree of the children of every
The Caliphs and Imams of *Ahl al-Bayt*

A woman is attributed to their father except for Fatimah’s children. I am their family and I am their father. 

So Imam Hasan and Imam Husayn are not called the grandsons of the Holy Prophet Muhammad but they are called his sons.

**Twelve Imams**

All the Sahaba were spiritually illumined by the Holy Prophet but the first man to pursue the political legacy, with inner spiritual illumination, was Abu Bakr as-Siddique, the first man of spiritual legacy, inheriting and developing the ‘science of spirituality’ was Ali al-Murtaza, and the first men of intellectual and practical legacy, spiritually illumined due to being in the physical company of the Holy Prophet Muhammad were all the Companions. So all these inheritors were independently appointed within their own orbits of influence and had no clash or contradiction with one another.

We should not be under the false impression that the influence and relevance of *Ahl al-Bayt* is merely a chapter in Islamic history. There is still a chapter of the spiritual sovereignty of *Ahl al-Bayt* that has been undoubtedly prophesised, but is yet to manifest i.e. is the appearance of the twelfth Imam Sayyiduna Al-Mahdi. Also do not be deluded that belief in the twelve Imams within the *Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama’ah* makes one a Shia. Many of the great Sunni Scholars have written about the twelve Imams including Allama Mufti Muhammad Khalil Khan Qadri Barakaati Noori in his book – ‘*Hamaaraa Islam*’ translated into English as Glorious Islam in Volume III, chapter 1, Lesson Number 7, *Ahl-e-Bait*: Question 9: Who are twelve Imams of Ahle Bait? An online version can be seen at [http://www.islamicacademy.org/html/Books/GLIS/ahb.htm](http://www.islamicacademy.org/html/Books/GLIS/ahb.htm)

Those Muslims who possess the correct spiritual beliefs *aqa’id* or *aqidah* and follow the People of the Sunnah and the Community *Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama’ah* have taken the backseat in the field of politics, hence we are losing our followers to people with incorrect
beliefs who are active in the political field. Correct spiritual belief is most important, especially with regards to the Holy Prophet ﷺ, his Ahl al-Bayt أهل البيت and companions. The wrong depiction of the Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama‘ah أهل السنة والجماعة by the Kharijites of this era have made people believe that if we honour the Twelve Imams, then we are Shia. A hadith in the Sahih collection of Muslim states:

Jaabir bin Samurah ﷺ, reported: I joined the company of the Holy Prophet ﷺ with my father and I heard him say: ‘This System of Governing إن هذا الأمر ﷺ will not end until there have been twelve Caliphs [Ruling Authorities or Imams] among them’. Then he (the Holy Prophet ﷺ) said something that I could not follow. I asked to my father: What did he say? He said: ‘He has said: All of them ﷺ will be from the Quraysh’.

[Sahih Muslim, Volume 5, The Book of Leadership, al-Imara; Chapter One, Hadith Number 4705, Page 144]

In the following hadith i.e. Hadith Number 4706 instead of Twelve Caliphs the words used are twelve rajulan أئّنا عَشَر رجَالاً literally translated, رجال الله (rijal-Allah) was not limited to the masculine gender. It means, ‘the true men’, the great friends of Allah ﷺ, ‘the great ones’ (al-akabir), the exalted saints. ‘rijalallah’ is actually considered a maqaam or a ‘station’. Abu Hayyan at-Tauhidi [654-754AH], 126 in his Tafsir Bahr al-Muheet or ‘Tafseer al-nahr al-maad min al-bahr al-muheet’ [The Commentary of the River Extending from the Ocean] also known as al-Tafsir al-Kabir says that when Allah ﷺ says in the 4th Sura, an-Nisaa (Women) النساء in verse 34:

الرجال قَوْمُ مُنْ عَلَى النَّسَاء بِمَا فَضَّلَ الله ﷺ بَعْضَهُمْ عَلَى بَعْضٍ
The Caliphs and Imams of *Ahl al-Bayt*

Those, رَجَالٌ are maintainers of لَامْء or ‘women’ because Allah ﷺ prefers some over others.

Allah ﷺ uses an ambiguous way of articulating preference of some over others and Abu Hayyan at-Tauhidi says about this *ayah* that first of all, “not everyone with a beard’ is considered a ‘rajul’”. The mere fact that you have testosterone does not make you a ‘rajul’. So if we look at who are the رَجَالٌ ‘rijaal’ or those who maintain the deen of Allah ﷺ? Allah ﷺ says in the Holy Qur’aan in the 33rd Sura *al-Ahzaab* (the Confederates) in verse 23:

منَّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ رِجَالٌ

From amongst the mu’mineen are rijaal

I don’t want to translate رَجَالٌ ‘rijaal’ as men because it becomes misleading. If you look at the Arabic word ‘rajul’ – rajala—means ‘to stand up on ones two feet’.

Maulana Abul Abbas Ahmad ibn Muhammad ibn al-Mukhtār Tijani al-Hasani al-Fatimi al-Alawi127 رَحْمَةُ اللهِ ﷺ مَنَّهُ [1150 AH/1735 CE -1230 AH/1815 CE] said as reported in *Kitaab Jawahir al-ma’ani wa-bulugh al-amani fi fayd Sidi Abil al-Abbas at-Tijani* (Gems of Indications and Attainment of Aspirations in the Overflowings of Sidi Abil Abbas Tijani),

You should know that femininity does not prevent inclusion among the best of Allah ﷺ’s chosen servants, for Allah ﷺ has not referred to the men in any of the spiritual stations without combining the reference to them with reference to the women as in His saying: ‘Men who surrender and women who surrender and men who believe and women who believe and men who obey and women who obey and men who speak the truth and women who speak the truth and men who are patient and women who are patient and men who are humble and women who are humble and men who give in charity and women who give in charity and men who keep the fast and women who keep the fast and men who guard their private parts and women who guard theirs and men who remember Allah ﷺ frequently and women who remember Allah ﷺ has prepared for them forgiveness and a vast reward (33:35) Of all
the spiritual stations attained by men, other than Messengership (Risaalah), Prophethood (Nabuwwah) and Poleship (Qutbaniya), there is not one that is not teeming with good women who are true believers, devoutly pious, righteous and obedient. Consider what is related in the Mighty Qur’aan of which we are told ‘Falsehood cannot approach it from before it or behind it’; (41:42) about Mary and her condition. She is mentioned in the Qur’aan in thirty places, and this has resulted in difference of opinion as to whether or not she was endowed with Prophethood. The fact is that she was a Champion of the Truth (Siddiqua) since Prophethood is peculiar to men, as indicated by Allah /jalla/s saying: The Messiah, son of Mary, was only a Messenger, and his mother was a Champion of the Truth. So it has been made known that women are not denied access to Championship of the Truth (Siddiqiyya) nor to any of the spiritual stations below it, down to the lowest of them. There have been many women who attained to spiritual stations to which very few men have attained."

Hazrat Fatimah ✅ is regarded by many to be the first spiritual pivot (Ghaus) after the Holy Prophet Muhammad ✅. Thus a ‘rijaal’ is somebody who is in a station of Adamic Nature- they are the خليفه Khalifa in the ارضي ard of Allah ✅. Khalifa can mean ‘deputy’ or ‘one who comes after’ in human to human relations but with reference to Allah ✅ such a meaning will be blasphemous since Allah ✅ requires no deputy and He is free of ‘before or after’. Therefore according to the Sufis Khalifa means, ‘one who can change things or interfere in things’ - this is our function. Allah ✅ gave us raw materials and we create from it. Allah ✅ creates from nothing and we create from the raw materials he supplies to us. The Khilafah imbues himself with the attribute of Allah ✅, al-Musawwir – ‘The Fashioner’. This is our function. Therefore Allah ✅ says in the Qur’aan in the 23rd Sura al-Mu’minaun (the Believers) in verse 14:

فَتَبَارَكَ اللَّهُ أَحْسَنُ الْخَالِقِينَ

Blessed is Allah ✅, the Best of Creators

Creation and interference is possible by man on the lower level of physical science. Man can build, roads, bridges and space craft utilising
The Caliphs and Imams of *Ahl al-Bayt*

the raw materials Allah  supplies. Allah  sent the Holy Prophet Muhammad  to build us into His *Khalifa*, since we are supreme in His creation. To implement change at the higher level, that is, spirituality. Those who acquire characteristics of *khalifat-Allah*, as spiritual beings or moral beings and servants of Allah , become mirrors wherein Allah ’s attributes are reflected. They can do greater wonders than the physical scientist can. If on a physical dimension man can bring about change how powerful must the *Abdullah* be who can bring about change on the spiritual dimension. Einstein may have split the atom through physical science but the great Sufi, Muhayuddin Ibn Arabi wrote in his book ‘*Qaseedatur Ruh*’ (the story of the essential being) centuries ago, when physical science was still in its infancy and astrophysics was not yet born that he asked Allah permission so that his soul may travel into the atom and it was granted. In this book he writes that the atom is the indivisible particle. On the basis of his higher reason and his five inner senses, he undertook this journey of knowledge. He penetrated into the atom and said, ‘the atom has several cyclozones’. Modern science only found this out in 1954. Maulana Jalal ad-Din Muhammad Rumi had reported that the heavenly bodies are held in their orbits by electromagnetic fields. He only could have discovered this on the basis of transcendental reason. One of the last great thinkers in Islam, Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlavi (February 21, 1703 - August 20, 1762) says:

> When a human being passes away no relation is left between his soul and the world of matter. The souls return to their origin, become like angels, and like them, give inspiration and help to men. They help in the dissemination and strengthening of Allah ’s religion. They rush to help those who work for this path. It has been witnessed that they come to help in groups.

If this is the condition of the humble followers of the Holy Prophet Muhammad , what must be the condition of his purified lineage? This is the true *Khalifa*; they continue to function even after their physical departure, due to their reaching a high stage of surrender to Allah , Who has replaced their will, with His will. Allah radiates on them with His attribute of al-*Wali*, the Protecting Friend, and they become the
Madinah to Karbala

means through whom Allah activates His attribute of protective friendship.

This is the maqaam of the rajul. It is not دَكْر zakar or male. Allah distinguishes between zukoor (males) and rijaal in the Holy Qur’aan. So the rijaalullah are models of success. So a spiritual station is being referred to in this hadith. This hadith is also in Sahih Bukhari as follows:

سَمَعَتُ النَّبِيُّ صَلَّى اللّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمُ يَقُولُ يَكُونُ اَثْنَى عَشَرَ أَمِيِّرًا فَقَالَ كَلِمَةً ثُمَّ أَسْمَعْهَا فَقَالَ أَبِي إِنَّهُ قَالَ كَلِمَةً مِنْ فَرِيقِهِ

Narrated Jaabir bin Samura: I heard the Holy Prophet saying, ‘There will be اَثْنَى عَشَرَ Twelve Muslims with spiritual authority.’ He then said a sentence which I did not hear. My father said, ‘All of them will be from Quraysh’.

[Sahih Bukhari, Vol 9, The Book of Al-Akaam (Judgments) Chapter 51, Page 207, Hadith Number 7222.]

In other traditions there is a slight difference, and the word ‘caliph’ is replaced by ‘امير’. A different version of this tradition is as follows as recorded in ‘Treasure of the Doers of Good Deeds’ (Kanz al-Ummal fi sunan al-aqwal wa’l af’al) is a known 8 volume set Islamic hadith collection, collected by Islamic Scholar Ali ibn Abd-al-Malik al-Hindi (d1567 CE/975 AH).

This ummat will have twelve custodians from Quraysh and those who intend to insult them will not cause them any harm. This upright faith will not decline till the twelve from Quraysh remain. When all of them pass away the earth will swallow its inhabitants.

According to the Sunni school of thought:

Twelve Imams of Ahl al-Bayt, according to the Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama’ah are:

1. Ali ibn Abu Talib [600-661 CE]; the Mawla or protecting spiritual guide, of all Muslims after the Holy Prophet Muhammad; we acknowledge him as the fourth Caliph. He
The Caliphs and Imams of Ahl al-Bayt

holds a high position in all Sufi Muslim orders (Turuq); the members of these orders trace their spiritual lineage to the Holy Prophet Muhammad through him. He was assassinated by Abd-al-Rahman ibn Muljam, a Kharijite in Kufa, who slashed him with a poisoned sword. Buried at the Imam Ali Mosque in Najaf, Iraq.

2. Hasan ibn Ali [624 to 680CE] He was the eldest surviving grandson of the Holy Prophet Muhammad through his daughter, Hazrath Fatimah. Hasan succeeded his father as the caliph in Kufa, and on the basis of peace treaty with Hazrath Muawiyah, he relinquished the Caliphate following a reign of seven months. He was poisoned by his wife in Madinah, Arabia on as part of a political conspiracy against ahl al-Bayt. Buried in Jannat al-Baqi.

3. Husayn ibn Ali [626 to 680 CE]: He was the second grandson of the Holy Prophet Muhammad through his daughter, Hazrath Fatimah. Husayn opposed and protested against the validity of caliphate of Yazid, the first. As a result, he and his family were later martyred in the Battle of Karbala by Yazid's forces. After this incident, the commemoration of Husayn ibn Ali has become a central rite in Sunni, Sufi and Shia identity.

4. Imam Ali ibn al-Husayn a.k.a. as Zayn al-Abidin (approximately 6 January 659 - 20 October 712 CE) His mother was Hazrath Sherbanu and his father was Imam Husayn ibn Ali. His brothers include Imam Ali al-Asghar ibn Husayn and Imam Ali al-Akbar ibn Husayn. He is known as Zayn al-Abidin ‘Beauty/Best of the Worshippers’. He is buried in Jannat al-Baqi.

5. Imam Ali ibn Husayn a.k.a Imam Muhammad ibn Ali al-Baqir [676-743 CE / 1 Rajab 57 AH – 7 Dhu al-Hijjah 114 AH] He is known as al-Baqir al-Ulum (splitting open knowledge). His father was the previous Imam Ali ibn al-Husayn and his mother was Sayyida Fatimah bint Hasan ibn Ali. He is highly respected by Sunni Muslims for his religious knowledge and Islamic scholarship.
Madinah to Karbala

6. Imam Jaafar al-Saadiq ibn Muhammad ibn Ali ibn Husayn (702-765 CE/ 83–148 AH) Imam Jaafar al-Saadiq is said to be highly respected by Sunni Muslims for his great Islamic scholarship, pious character, and academic contributions. Imam Jaafar as-Saadiq’s mother Umm Farwah bint Qaasim ibn Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr is the great-great-granddaughter of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique. His presence also graces the Naqshbandi Sufi chain. He was a polymath (someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects) an astronomer, alchemist, Islamic scholar, Islamic theologian, writer, philosopher, physician, physicist and scientist. He was also the teacher of the famous chemist, Jabir ibn Hayyan (Geber), and of Imam Abu Hanifa.

7. Imam Musa ibn Ja’far ibn Muhammad al-Kaazim (November 6, 745 - September 1, 799 CE/ Safar 7, 128 – Rajab 25, 183 AH). He was the son of the 6th Imam Jaafar al-Saadiq and his mother’s name was Hamidah Khatun. Imprisoned and poisoned in Baghdad, Iraq. Buried in the Al-Kadhimiya Masjid in Kadhimiya, Baghdad.

8. Imam Ali ibn Musa al-Rida (December 29, 765 - August 23, 818 CE) the son of Imam Musa ibn Jaafar ibn Muhammad al-Kaazim. He was famous for his discussions with both Muslim and non-Muslim religious scholars. Buried in the Imam Reza mazaar in Mashad.

9. Imam Muhammad al-Taqi or Muhammad al-Jawad [Rajab 10, 195 AH - Dhu al-Qadah 29, 220 AH: approximately April 8, 811 CE - November 24, 835 CE] His father was Ali ibn Musa al-Rida and mother was Khaizaran, a woman from the family of the blessed wife of the Holy Prophet Muhammad Maria al-Qibtiyya. Buried in the Al-Kadhimiya Masjid in Kadhimiya, Baghdad.

10. Imam Ali ibn Muhammad ibn Ali al-Hadi [March 5, 828 - June 27, 868]. He was also known as Ali an-Naqqi. He was born in Madinah to the ninth Imam, Muhammad al-Taqi, and Lady Sumanah. He was eight years old when his father died, and when
The Caliphs and Imams of Ahl al-Bayt

he was appointed with the baatini Khilafat or Imamate. Buried in the Al-Askari Masjid in Samarra, Baghdad.

11. **Imam Hasan al-Askari** [الإِمَامُ حَسَنُ ﰊِنْ ﰊِعَلِيّ ﺍﳊﺴpostData here.](8 Rabi’ al-Thani 232 AH – 8 Rabi’ al-Awwal 260 AH; approximately: December 1, 846 - January 1, 874] was the eleventh of the Twelve Imams after Panjattan. He was born in Madinah to Imam Ali al-Hadi and The Lady Saleel. His title *al-Askari* derives from the Arabic word *Asker* which means Army. Hasan’s title was reflective of his living most of his life in a garrison town. He married a Byzantine princess who was the granddaughter of a Byzantine emperor, named Narjis. He was 22, when his father was killed and the period of his Imamate, following his father’s death, was six years. Hasan Al-Askari was 28, when martyred in 260 Hijra and was buried in Samarra.

12. **Imam Muhammad al-Mahdi** zaman محمد المهدي: the Mahdi will come from the family of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, the signs suggest that he has already been born but his exact identity and birth is only known to Allah ﻪ and the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. His will be a universal Khilafat. He would belong to the House of Muhammad ﷺ (ahl al-Bayt). His name would be Muhammad and his family name would be Abul Qaasim, his father's name would be Abdullah, and he would appear in Makkah. He himself would not know he is the Mahdi till a divine voice announces it at the Holy Kaaba. He would protect the Muslims from destruction and would restore the religion to its original position. Sunnis also believe that Hazrath Isa ﷺ (Jesus) will return alongside the Mahdi. In Islamic tradition the Mahdi (مهدى) is the prophesied redeemer of Islam who will stay on earth seven, nine, or nineteen years before the coming of the day, *Yaum al-Qiyamah* (Day of the Resurrection or Day of the Standing). Muslims believe the Mahdi will rid the world of error, injustice and tyranny alongside Hazrath Isa ﷺ (Prophet Jesus ﷺ).

**Note 1:** Imam Muhammad ibn Hasan ibn Ali ﷺ (محمد ابن الحسن ابن علي) is he whom the Shia erroneously believes is the missing Imam and will re-
appear as the Mahdi. His mother was Lady Narjis (Melika), an Italian princess who pretended to be a slave so that she might travel from her kingdom to Arabia. His father was Imam Hasan al-Askari. Shiahs believe he is the Imam Mahdi but this is not the Ahl as-Sunnah wa’l-Jama’ah view though we believe he had disappeared from view (ghaibul Imam) of the common people. According to the respected Chishti Sufi Shaykh, Khwaja Hasan Nizami (1878-1955) from the family of the custodians of Hazrath Nizamuddin Aulia’s mazaar in his book ‘Imam uz Zaman ki Aamad’ on page 68 it is mentioned that Hazrath Ali said regarding this Imam that he will re-appear leading an army from the east to help Imam Mahdi:

An Army will march from beyond Khurasan and the Imam leading this army will have the title ‘Khalifatul Mahdi’. He will be a blood relation of the Mahdi. He will carry a Black Flag. Muslims are exhorted to join this army.

Note 2: The Spiritual Pivot of the universe from the lineage of Hazrath Hasan ibn Ali ibn Abu Talib is Hazrath Shaykh Sayyid Abd al-Qadir al-Hasani al-Husayni al-Jilaani [1077-1166 CE] who was a noted Sunni Hanbali preacher, Sufi Shaykh and the figurehead of the Qadiri Sufi order. He was born during Ramadan in 1078 CE, in the Persian province of Jilaan (Iran) south of the Caspian Sea. He belongs to the spiritual chain of Junayd Baghdadi. He is popularly known as al-Gauth al A’zam (the Supreme Helper). Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi, Mujaddid Alf Saani or the Reviver of the Second Millennium’ [1564-1624] in his Maktubaat-e-Imam Rabbani writes that:

Allah has made Hazrath Ali the source of sainthood (mamba e wilaya) and the Spiritual Treasure House [it was shared by Hazrath Fatimah, Imam Hasan and Imam Husayn as its direct legatees.] Thereafter it was filtered down to the Imams [Imam Zaynul Aberdeen, Imam Baqir, Imam Jaafar Saadiq, Imam Musa Kaaazim etc]. He states there were eleven Imams before Hazrath Ghaus al’A’zam. The Fountain of Sainthood when it passed to Hazrath Ghaus al’A’zam it will remain with him till the advent of Imam Mahdi.

Note 3: Hazrath Ali reports that the Holy Prophet said,
The Caliphs and Imams of *Ahl al-Bayt*

Ibn Majah included this hadith in his collection on the authority and narration of Abu Salt al-Harawi ﷺ; who transmitted it on the authority of Sayyid Imam Ali bin Musa Raza ﷺ. The *sanad* or *isnad* (chain of transmission) which is Sayyid Imam Ali bin Musa Raza ﷺ who heard it from his father Sayyid Musa Kazim ﷺ, who heard it from his father Sayyid Imam Jaafar Saadiq ﷺ, who heard it from his father Sayyid Imam Muhammad al-Baqir ﷺ, who heard it from his father Sayyid Imam Zainul Aberdeen ﷺ, who heard it from his father Sayyid Imam Husayn ﷺ, who heard it from his father Sayyid Imam Ali ibn Abi Talib ﷺ who heard it from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Abu Salf al-Harawi ﷺ who transmitted this Hadith to Imam ibn Majah ﷺ, one of the prominent Imams of Hadith, whose collection is part of the *Sihah Sittah* (six most authentic books of hadith) states that if this *sanad* or *isnad* (chain of transmission), not the *matan* (text or subject matter), but the names of the Imams of the Household of the Holy Prophet ﷺ; the transmitters from Sayyid Imam Ali bin Musa Raza ﷺ to the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is recited and one blows his breath on an insane person then he will be instantly cured. If the names of the *Ahl al-Bayt* have such power, what power their beings must possess.

I felt it was my duty to clear this belief in our Sufi Circle of *Chishti Nizami Habibi Soofi* Sufi Order, since we have held this belief in Twelve Imams (*Bara Imaam*) for many years and recently due to ignorance; assumed intelligence or malicious intent we have been branded *Shia* by some out of ignorance or malice.
Hazrath Abu Bakr as-Siddique or Abdullah bin Abu Quhafah as the first caliph ruled from 8 June 632 CE/10 AH – 23 August 634 CE/13 AH. Hazrath Abu Bakr wore a simple single garment, which he used to pin together, so much so that he became known as the ‘man of the two pins’. The Messenger of Allah once noticed that Hazrath Abu Bakr’s clothes were torn in several places. He said:

‘Abu Bakr there was a time when you were in great luxury. Now look at what suffering you have to bear for Islam.’

Hazrath Abu Bakr replied that intimacy of Allah and His Messenger was worth an entire lifetime of toil and suffering. Hazrath Abu Bakr wanted to spend his wealth on the Messenger of Allah, but feared the disrespect of having his hand above the one that would receive, and for this he would weep all night. He thus prayed to Allah for the Holy Prophet to spend his wealth as the master saw fit. Allah accepted his prayer, and hence, the Messenger of Allah used to spend Hazrath Abu Bakr’s wealth as his own. The Messenger of Allah once said:

Indeed Abu Bakr is the greatest among all people in regards to sincerity, service, and wealth.

**Lineage and Title of Abu Bakr**

Hazrath Abu Bakr’s full name is Abdullah ibn Uthman ibn Aamir ibn Amr ibn Ka’ab ibn Sa’ad ibn Teem ibn Murrah ibn Ka’ab ibn Luaiy ibn Ghaalib alQurashee At-Teemee. His name Abd- Allah means (Servant of Allah). Although he is most known by his title ‘Abu Bakr’, he has many other titles. He was given the title ‘Siddique’ (the embodiment of truth) by the Holy Prophet Muhammad after he believed him in the event of Isra and Mi’raaj when other people didn’t, and Hazrath Ali confirmed that title several times.
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique

Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Holy Prophet once climbed the Mountain of Uhad with Abu Bakr, Umar and Uthman. The mountain shook with them. The Holy Prophet said (to the mountain), "Be firm, O Uhad! For on you there are no more than a Prophet, a Siddique and two martyrs.

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 5, The Virtues of the Companions of the Holy Prophet, Chapter 5, Page 27, Hadith number 3675]

From this Hadith we can deduce many aspects of belief. Here the Holy Prophet Muhammad is demonstrating his knowledge of the unseen. Also the Holy Prophet himself called Abu Bakr, Siddique. The mountain also gets ecstatic out of love.

Early life

Abu Bakr was born in Makkah some time in the year 573 CE, in the Banu Taim (or Teem) branch of the Quraysh tribe. Abu Bakr's father's name was Uthman Abu Quhafa referred to as Abu Quhafa, and his mother was Salma bint Sakhr ibn Ka’ab ibn Teem. Her title (kunyah) was Umm al-Khair (Mother of Virtues). Hazrath Ayesha described her father Hazrath Abu Bakr as:

He was a man with fair skin, thin, withered, with a sparse beard, a slightly hunched frame, sunken eyes and protruding forehead, and the bases of his fingers were hairless.

[Tarikh al-Tabari or Tarikh al-Rasul wa al-Muluk (History of the Prophets and Kings)]

He was born in a rich family of the tribe of Quraysh. He spent his early childhood like other Arab children of the time among the Bedouins who called themselves Ahli-Ba’eer (the people of the camel), thus he developed a particular fondness for camels. In his early years he played with the camel foals and goats, and his love for camels earned him the nickname of Abu Bakr, (the father of the foal of the camel). When Abu Bakr was 10 years old he went to Syria along with his father with the merchants' caravan. The Holy Prophet Muhammad, who was 12 years old at the time, was also with the caravan. In 591 CE at the age of 18, Abu Bakr went into trade and adopted the profession of a cloth merchant which was the family's business. In the coming years Abu Bakr travelled extensively with caravans. Business trips took him to Yemen,
Madinah to Karbala

Syria, and elsewhere. These travels brought him wealth and added to his experience. His business flourished and he rose in the scale of social importance. Though his father Uthman Abu Quhafa was still alive, he came to be recognized as chief of his tribe. Abu Bakr was assigned the office of awarding blood money in cases of murder. His office was something like the office of an honorary magistrate.

Like other children of the rich Makkan merchant families, Abu Bakr was literate. On his travels he met with adherents of many religions and was particularly interested in monotheism which he heard from Christians. He never worshipped idols and was searching for the truth and was searching for the religion that was in harmony with his sound and uncorrupted nature. He memorised lines of poetry of poets who spoke about monotheism. He used to attend the annual fair at the Ukkaadh marketplace, and participate in poetical conference. He had a very good memory and had a good knowledge of the genealogy of the Arab tribes, their stories and their politics. When the Holy Prophet Muhammad married Hazrath Khadijah bint Khuwaylid and moved to her house, he became a neighbour of Hazrath Abu Bakr who lived in the same locality. That was the quarter of Makkani aristocracy. Like the house of Khadijah, the house of Abu Bakr was double-storied and impressive. As neighbours, the Holy Prophet Muhammad and Hazrath Abu Bakr developed a friendship. They were almost the same age and in the same business.

Acceptance of Islam

On his return from a business trip from Yemen, he was informed by friends that in his absence the Holy Prophet Muhammad had declared himself as the Messenger of God, and proclaimed a new religion. Abu Bakr was the first adult free male to accept Islam, though there is a minority view that Hazrath Abu Talib was the first. Being an adherent of the Chishti School of Sufism I subscribe to the view that Hazrath Abu Talib accepted Islam. In Ajmer Shareef, at the Mazaar of Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti [The Birth of Hazrath Abu Talib] Jashan-e-Abu Talib is celebrated annually on the 28 Shawwal. See the website http://www.ziaratekhwaja.com/programmes.htm [I will discuss this later]. Scholars, as well as some Sunnis Muslims maintain that the first child to
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique

publicly accept Islam was Hazrath Ali ibn Abi Talib, though to Sufi’s Hazrath Ali always knew of the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s status through pre-knowledge. There are many Hadith to prove that Hazrath Ali was the first to accept Islam. However, Hazrath Ali was still a pre-pubescent child when he accepted Islam. Hazrath Abu Bakr was the first person outside the family of the Holy Prophet to openly become a Muslim.

Life after accepting Islam
All his children accepted Islam. Hazrath Abu Bakr’s conversion brought the most benefit to Islam and his da’wah brought many people to Islam. He persuaded his intimate friends to convert to Islam. Slavery was common in Makkah, and many slaves accepted Islam. When an ordinary free man accepted Islam, despite opposition, he would enjoy the protection of his tribe. For slaves however, there was no such protection and they commonly experienced persecution. Hazrath Abu Bakr felt compassion for slaves so he purchased many and freed them. Most of the slaves liberated by Abu Bakr were either women or old and frail men. The father of Abu Bakr asked him as to why doesn't he liberate strong and young slaves who could be a source of strength for him. Hazrath Abu Bakr replied that he was freeing the slaves for the sake of Allah, and not for his own sake. The 92nd Sura al-Layl (the Night) verses 5 to 7 was revealed due to this:

فَأَمَّا مَنْ أَعْطَى وَأَطْعَى
So he who gives away (his wealth in the way of Allah) and
commits himself (to Allah)

وَصَدَقَ بِالْحُسْنَى
And truthfully testifies to the best,

فَسَيْسِيرَهُ لِلْبَيْسِرَى
We will indeed make smooth for him the path to Bliss

In this verse Allah has referred to Hazrath Abu Bakr as Siddique. The rest of the verses 8 to 21 also applaud Hazrath Abu Bakr.
Madinah to Karbala

Persecution by the Quraysh

For three years after the advent of Islam, Muslims kept secret their faith, and prayed in secret. In 613 CE after the open call to people to Islam, the first public address, after the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, inviting people to offer allegiance to the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was delivered by Abu Bakr ﷺ. In a fit of fury the young men of the Quraysh tribe beat him mercilessly till he lost consciousness. Following this incident Abu Bakr ﷺ’s mother converted to Islam. Abu Bakr ﷺ was persecuted many times by the Quraysh. Abu Bakr ﷺ’s beliefs would have been defended by his own clan, but not by the entire Quraysh tribe. Hazrat Umar bin Aas ﷺ related:

The Messenger of Allah ﷺ was praying with us one day in the Holy Mosque in Makkah (al-Haram) when Utbah bin Abu Mu’ith stepped forward and started strangling him with a thin cloth. Hazrat Abu Bakr ﷺ stepped forward and pulled him away, saying:

‘Are you going to kill a man just because he says that Allah ﷺ is my Creator?’

When Hazrat Abu Bakr ﷺ said this, the unbelievers abandoned their primary target and assaulted him instead, beating him so severely that most thought him dead. Hazrat Abu Bakr ﷺ was brought home, by his family members of Bani Teem, covered with wounds. The first thing he wanted to know upon regaining consciousness was the condition of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ. His mother rushed to the house of Umme Jamil bint al-Khattab ﷺ to inquire. Umme Jamil bint al-Khattab ﷺ accompanied his mother to the bedside of Hazrat Abu Bakr ﷺ and reassured him that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was well and being nursed at the House of al-Arqam. Abu Bakr ﷺ made an oath that he will not eat or drink until he sees the Holy Prophet ﷺ. Both these noble ladies assisted him to the house where the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was. As soon as the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ saw him he hurried towards Abu Bakr ﷺ and kissed him. He introduced his mother to the Holy Prophet ﷺ and requested that the Holy Prophet ﷺ pray for her and invite her to the faith. The Holy Prophet ﷺ did as requested and Abu Bakr ﷺ’s mother immediately accepted. Here Hazrat Abu Bakr ﷺ
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique 

presents an exemplary example of *ishq*, in that he put his pain and suffering second to the condition of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.

**Migration to Madinah**

In 622 CE on the invitation of the Muslims of Madinah, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, as per Divine decree, ordered Muslims to migrate to Madinah. The migration began in batches. Hazrath Imam Ali ﷺ was the last to remain in Makkah; entrusted with responsibility of fulfilling the obligations the Muslims had in Makkah, and famously slept in the bed of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ when the Quraysh led by Ikrima attempted to murder the Holy Prophet ﷺ as he slept. This was a very significant event that again pointed to the spiritual inheritance.

Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ accompanied the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in his migration to Madinah. The Holy Prophet ﷺ was tired of the oppression of the unbelievers and he migrated (*Hijrah*). Allah ﷺ ordered him to migrate so as to make migration a *Sunnah* for the Community (*Ummah*). The Holy Prophet ﷺ left his abode, whilst Hazrath Ali ﷺ slept on his bed. The unbelievers were keeping a watch on the home of the Holy Prophet ﷺ and were waiting with swords drawn, to ensure that he does not escape alive. The Holy Prophet ﷺ left his home whilst reciting Sura *Ya Sin* وَرَةٌ ﻦٰذِكِهَ and Allah ﷺ did not permit the unbelievers to see him. Allah ﷺ said to the Holy Prophet ﷺ:

‘O My Beloved! Do not hide and leave your home. Recite the Holy Qur’aan and leave. For every aspect of your life, every saying and action of yours will be recorded to serve as a model for all future generations.’

So the Holy Prophet ﷺ left home reciting Sura *Ya Sin*. He went to the home of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ, whom he found awake with a lamp lit in his home. The Holy Prophet ﷺ asked:

‘O Abu Bakr! You are awake and waiting as if you knew I was coming?’

Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ replied:

O Messenger of Allah ﷺ! Some time back, within your discourse, you had stated that we will have to migrate from here, and you gestured towards me saying I would be your...
companion on this journey. I have not slept at night from that time. I thought what if, you, my Master, were to come at night with the enemy on your heels and I would be asleep. The period in which you would wake me could prove fatal, and you could be harmed. So my Master, I have not slept at night from that day on waiting for you.

The Holy Prophet ﷺ said:

Allah ﷺ has granted us permission to migrate. So let us leave.

The Holy Prophet ﷺ left with Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ. About 6 miles or 10 kilometres from Makkah, the Ennobled, is a mountain named Jable Thawr, containing a cave called Gaare Thawr, which is located at a height of five kilometres. It is a difficult and hazardous climb, especially in the dark of night. History records the belief, love and service of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ, who said to the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ:

Master, climb onto my shoulders and I will carry you up.

He carried the Holy Prophet ﷺ. Gauge what esteem the Holy Prophet ﷺ must have held Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ at that time. What love the Holy Prophet ﷺ must have entertained for Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ during that climb. What a condition Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ must have been in? His condition must have been that:

May this climb last forever and may we not reach the cave so that the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s blessed body may always be this close to me.

When they reached the cave Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ did not even mention that he was tired and desired rest but on the contrary he said:

Master, rest on my lap

The Holy Prophet ﷺ is asleep on his lap and Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ is looking at the blessed face of the Holy Prophet ﷺ. There was a snake in the cave that had been informed that the beloved Prophet of Allah ﷺ would come into this cave hence it had made that cave its home with the desire of seeing the Beloved of Allah ﷺ. When the Holy Prophet ﷺ and Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ reached the cave, Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ noticing holes in, tore up his clothing and sealed the holes and ran out of cloth to seal one. He put his toe into that hole with the intention that any creature may bite him, and even if he dies no
discomfort must reach the Holy Prophet ☪. This is ecstatic, intense love. Hazrath Shaykh Abd al-Qaadir Jilaani ☪ says in Al-Ghunya li-Talibi Tariq al-Haqq about a disciple who discards his robe in an ecstatic state of love:

If the Sultan (Allah ☪) confers a robe of honour (khi’la) upon someone, it is incumbent upon the recipient of that honour to remove the garment he happens to be wearing, and don the robe of honour. The situation of the spiritual pauper (faqir) is therefore analogous, since he is obliged to step out of his tattered robe (khirqa) and don what has been conferred upon him by the Maker (Baari) [Allah ☪], in the way of radiant lights, nearness and gracious favours.

A snake bit the toe of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ☪. The effect of the poison brought tears to his eyes and the Holy Prophet ☪ asked him as to what was bothering him. He said:

O Master! A snake is continuously putting its poisonous fangs into my toe in this hole.

The Holy Prophet ☪ asked him to remove his toe from the hole, to which he replied:

O Master! If I do so, it will trouble you

The Holy Prophet ☪ replied:

Don’t be concerned, the snake loves me, it only wishes to see me.

Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ☪ removed his foot and the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪ applied his blessed saliva on the snakebite. This brought immediate relief to Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ☪. The danger passed and the poisonous effect was dispelled with the order of Allah ☪. The snake came out of the hole and fulfilled its desire of seeing the Holy Prophet ☪. The Holy Prophet ☪ asked the snake:

Why did you bite my friend?

It replied:

Master, such a long period has passed in this cave with the desire that when you arrive I will see you. He had closed all avenues for me to come out. As much as I did not wish to
Madinah to Karbala

harm Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ I was forced to do so for I also love you and desired to see you.

The snake then left. Why did the snake bite Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ? The wisdom behind it was that he also might gain the rank of a martyr. In his last days he died of the effects of this same poisonous bite. Remember, he also is counted amongst the martyrs.

He carried the Holy Prophet ﷺ on his shoulders to the cave, sacrificed his life, bore the effects of the poisonous snakebites and let his beloved sleep on his lap. Did the Holy Prophet ﷺ recompense him for this service? Yes he did! The Holy Prophet ﷺ said:

Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ, you sacrificed for my comfort in the cave, I will make place for you in my Burial Chamber (mazaar). In the cave I slept on your lap but in my Burial Chamber you will sleep in my proximity.

Unto this day Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ rests in the blessed Burial Chamber.

The one who carried the weight of Prophethood on his back, Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ, and the bearer of this exalted spiritual station was honoured by the Holy Prophet ﷺ with the transmission of the outward dhikrullah, the ecstatic remembrance, in powerful tones of the beautiful Names of Allah ﷺ, which Hazrath Ali ﷺ would often practice alone in the wilderness. This most exalted among the exalted companions of Divine Love is the trunk of the Tree of Tariqa, which grows from the root of the Holy Prophet ﷺ, called tariqa aaliya. This teaching occurred when the two lovers were together in the cave. The outward dhikrullah of Ali ﷺ and the inward dhikrullah of Abu Bakr ﷺ coexist in the subtle being of the true disciple and in the life of the Sufi way, reflecting infinitely like two clear mirrors facing each other.

Arrival in Madinah

Upon reaching Madinah, the people of Madinah welcomed the Messenger of Allah ﷺ and Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ. The people of Madinah had not seen the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, and they encircled Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ, because the lover had become so inundated with the light (nur) of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, that in appearance, mannerisms,
walk, speech, and dress were so similar that it proved impossible to tell the difference between the two. When the sun reached its peak in the sky, Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ stepped forward and placed his shawl upon his beloved’s head to shield him from the sun. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ did not need this for a cloud sheltered him at all time but Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ did this so the people of Madinah could see the difference between master and servant. It is written in hadith:

 فأقبل أبو بكر حتى ظلّل عليه برداه فعرف الناس رسول الله ﷺ عند ذلك

Only when Abu Bakr ﷺ stepped forward and placed his shawl on the Messenger of Allah ﷺ did the people recognize the Messenger of Allah ﷺ.

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 5, The Merits of Al-Ansaar; Page 151; Chapter 45; Hadith number 3906]

This chain of events tells us of a true lover’s beautiful and complete devotion towards his beloved, annihilates him in the beloved. Hazrath Amir Khusro ﷺ wrote:

من تو شهد تومن شيدي من تن شهد تو جان شدي
ياكس غويدي عزيز من ديرم تو ديكري
Mun tu shudam tu mun shudi, mun tun shudam tu jaan shudi
Taakas na guyad baad azeen, mun deegaram tu deegari
I have become you and you me,
I am the body, you soul;
So that no one can say hereafter,
That you are someone and me someone else

According to Sahih Bukhari and Muslim, when the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ arrived in Madinah the ladies climbed onto the rooftop balconies, the men and children lined the alleys and streets. Some where playing on the duff (drum) and according to the word of the Hadith there was an outburst of happiness with the words:

ينادون: يا محمد! يا رسول الله! يا محمد! يا رسول الله!
Yunaduna Ya Muhammad, Ya Rasul-Allah
They called out ecstatically ‘O Muhammad! O Messenger of Allah!

This is the Sunnah of the ecstatic cry of happiness (narae risaalat).

The ladies and children were playing on the duff and singing:

طَلَّعُ الْبَدْرُ عَلَيْنَا
Tala’ al-badru ‘alaynā
Oh the illumined moon rose over us

من ثُمَّات الوداع
Min thaniyatil-wadā‘
From the valley of al-Wadā

وجب الشكر علينا
Wajab al-shukru ‘alaynā
And we owe it to show gratefulness

ما دَعِى لَهُ دَاعٌ
Mā da‘á lillāhi dā‘
Where the call is to Allah

أيها المبعوث فينا
Ayyuhal mab‘ūthu finā
Oh you who were raised among us

جَنِتْ بالآمَر المطلَع
Ji’ta bil-amri al-muṭā‘
Coming with a word to be obeyed

جَنِتْ شرَفَت المدينة
Ji’ta sharaft al-madīnah
You have brought to this city nobleness

مرحبا يا نخير داع
It was a day of happiness and joy, the likes of which the people of Madinah have never witnessed. These are narrations that belong to the Chapter of Love in this Deen. If this deen is devoid of this Chapter of Love, then it has no relevance in our lives. In the Sunan of ibn Abu Da’ud (202AH/817CE/275AH/888CE) and Imam al-Asqalani [773 AH/852 AH] in Fath ul-Bari fi Sharh Sahih al-Bukhari or Fathul Bari [Grant of the Creator], the most valued Sunni commentary of Sahih Bukhari, in 18 volumes, that when the Holy Prophet Muhammad arrived in Madinah after the Hijrah then the Companions having Abyssinian roots danced ecstatically in happiness. Imam Bukhari has narrated this in at-Tarikh al-Kabir. Imam Nawawi and Imam Asqalani have stated that this was a welcoming ecstatic dance (raqs) by the Abyssinians who by nature did this at joyous occasions. They were playing on the drum, dancing with spears and were in an ecstatic state (raqs) singing. Due to their pronunciation the Holy Prophet Muhammad asked the Sahaba as to what they were saying: 

\[
\text{مُهِمَّدُ أَبُدُّ سَلَة}
\]

Muhammadun abdun saleh
Muhammad is the most righteous slave of Allah

In another narration it is mentioned they were singing:

\[
\text{يقولون : أبو القاسم الطيب}
\]

Abul Qaasim at-Tayyib
Father of Qaasim the Pure (the Good)

This is in the same spirit as Hazrath Amir Khusro saying:

\[
\text{محمد شمع مخلِّف بوود}
\]

Muhammad sham-e-mehfil buud
Muhammad is the light of the gathering

It caught the attention of the Holy Prophet Muhammad since it was different from Arab celebration. He thereafter he had ordered them to
come and perform this ecstatic 'dance of love' (Raqs) on every Eid al Adha. It is also recorded in Tirmidhi and Abu Da’ud. The Imams of Hadith have written commentaries on this Hadith about the African companions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ from Ethiopia (Abyssinia), the Bani Arfida ١٥٠ the residents of Madinah that used to come to visit the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ annually on the occasion of ‘Eid ﻋﻴﺪ since he had ordered them to come and perform this ecstatic ‘dance of love’ (Raqs) ﺭﺎﻕ. They used to perform it annually in front of the Door of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in the Masjid, on the piece of Jannah. Once Hazrath Umar ﷺ walked into the Masjid and tried to stop them. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ made it a point to dispel the Ethiopians' misgivings about Umar ﷺ's intrusion and encouraged them to dance well and, in one account of this authentic story, reassured them to keep up their drumming and dancing, saying:

"Continue with your expression of love, sons of Arfida, so the Jews and Christians know there is latitude in our religion." ١٥١

The Messenger of Allah ﷺ passed by those who were stomping the ground in Madinah (in a display of ecstatic love for him) and He ﷺ stood up to see and I (Ayesha) was watching from behind him and he ﷺ was saying: Carry on O Bani Arfida so the Jews and Christians can see that in our deen there is latitude so they were saying: Father of Qasim ﷺ the Pure (the Good). Umar ﷺ came and they were deterred.

In another report most probably in regard to Hazrat h Umar ﷺ’s intervention the Holy Prophet ﷺ felt compelled to encourage the Muslim African dancers by saying:

دونكم يا بني أرفدة
“Carry on with your drumming and dancing, O Bani Arfida!
So that the Jews and Christians know that there is latitude in
our religion”

This is a lesson for us that we should carry our faith with us wherever we go and not our culture. Wherever Islam went it gave the people the faith and enhanced the indigenous culture.

**Spending for Islam**

When the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ requested a contribution for the Tabuk Expedition, the Muslims gave whatever they could give, but Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ exceeded all the records by giving all that he had to the Holy Prophet ﷺ without leaving anything for his own family. He even included the clothing he was wearing. He appeared in front of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ wearing a sack held together by thorns. The Holy Prophet ﷺ asked him:

**Fi‘alat ‘allah rasu‘lullahi sallallahu ‘alayhi wa sallam idhama ‘abidatilallahi**

The Messenger of Allah ﷺ asked him: ‘What have you left for your family?’

**Qala abidatilallahi wa rasu‘lullahi**

He replied: ‘I have left for them Allah ﷺ and His Messenger ﷺ’

[Sunan Abu Dawud; Volume 2, The Book of Zakaat, Chapter 40; Hadith number 1678]

Allama Iqbal ﷺ encapsulates this incident in his poetical verses where he says:

**Parwaaneh ku chiraag heh bul-bul ku phool bas;**
**Sideeeque keh liyeh heh Khuda ka Rasul bas**

The moth annihilates its existence in the flame whilst, the nightingale desires the flower.

The annihilation of Siddique ﷺ is, in his desire for the Messenger of Allah ﷺ
Madinah to Karbala

What can motivate a man to give in the path of Allah to this extreme except love? After this incident Hazrath Abu Bakr was not seen for a few days and did not appear at the Masjid of the Holy Prophet. The Holy Prophet enquired as to the whereabouts of Hazrath Abu Bakr. The companions told the Holy Prophet that Hazrath Abu Bakr had donated for the expedition to Tabuk, to such an extent that he had nothing to wear except a piece of cloth, which he shared with his wife, each of them using it alternatively to wrap themselves at the time of prayer. The Holy Prophet Muhammad asked Hazrath Bilaal al-Habashi to go to the house of his daughter, Hazrath Fatima and asked her to give an extra piece of cloth that could be given to Hazrath Abu Bakr so that he could clothe himself and come to the Masjid. Hazrath Fatimah had only one piece of cloth made of goat hair. Hazrath Abu Bakr wrapped it around his waist and it was too short. He sewed some date palm leaves to it so that he could cover himself decently, and went to the Masjid. Tirmidhi and Abu Da’ud records a hadith in the Sihah Collection (sihah sittah), also narrated by ibn Asakir that when Allah saw this expression of love of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique, He ordered Jibra’eel, to wear in the same unseemly outfit that Hazrath Abu Bakr was wearing and to go to the Holy Prophet Muhammad and say:

Allah has sent salutations (salaam) to Abu Bakr via your Holy Personality and asks if he has at least left food at his home and if he is pleased with Allah

أراض أنت عني (a’raad anta Anni)

When Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique heard this he went into a state of ecstasy, began whirling and began crying out repeatedly:

أنا عن ربي راض، أنا عن ربي راض، أنا عن ربي راض

I am pleased with my Lord! I am pleased with my Lord! I am pleased with my Lord!

Tirmidhi and Ibn Hibban quote Hazrath Abdullah ibn Mughaffal that the Holy Prophet Muhammad warned:
Hazrath Abdullah ibn Mughaffal narrates that the Holy Prophet Muhammad said; Fear Allah regarding my Companions! After my passing do not make them the target of your attacks! Whoever loves them, loves them on account of his love of me; whoever hates them, hates them on account of his hatred of me. He who harms them has harmed me. He who insults them, has insulted me, and he who insulted me, has insulted Allah, he who insulted Allah, Allah will punish him.

[Jami at-Tirmidhi; Volume 6; Chapters on al-Manaqqib (Virtues); Chapter 58; Hadith number 3862]

To love these companions, due to their love for the Holy Prophet is a sign of love of the Holy Prophet. A lover loves everyone his beloved loves, loves everyone who is faithful to his beloved and loves those that serve his beloved. Thus is forbidden to cut the trees and hurt even the creatures in Madinah, the City of the Beloved. The family, companions and associates of the Holy Prophet Muhammad are worthy of love due to their link (nisbah) with him. The food and other likes of the Holy Prophet is worthy of preference and love. Love makes a lover oblivious of everything other than the beloved and attentive to everything loved by the beloved.

Life in Madinah

In Madinah, the piece of land was chosen for Al-Masjid an-Nabawi by the Holy Prophet Muhammad was paid for by Hazrath Abu Bakr. He
Madinah to Karbala

also took part in the construction. Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ was paired with Khaarijah ibn Zaid Ansari ﷺ (who was from Madinah) as a brother in faith. Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ's relationship with Khaarjah was further strengthened when Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ married Habiba, a daughter of Khaarijah. Khaarijah ibn Zaid Ansari ﷺ live at As-Sunh, a suburb of Madinah, and Abu Bakr ﷺ also settled there. After Abu Bakr ﷺ's family arrived in Madinah he bought another house near the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ's.

The climate of Makkah was dry, but the climate of Madinah was damp and this adversely affected the health of the immigrants, so that on arrival most of them fell sick. Abu Bakr ﷺ also suffered from fever for several days and during this time he was attended to by Khaarijah ﷺ and his family. At Makkah, Abu Bakr ﷺ was a trader in cloth and he started the same business in Madinah. He was a wholesaler, and had his store at As-Sunh, and from there cloth was supplied to the market at Madinah. Soon his business flourished. Early in 623 CE, Abu Bakr ﷺ's daughter Ayesha ﷺ, who was already engaged to the Holy Prophet ﷺ, was handed over to Muhammad in a simple marriage ceremony, and this further strengthen the relation between Abu Bakr ﷺ and the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.

The Ghazu or raid was a sort of national sport in Arabia and a means of redistributing resources in a land where there was simply not enough to go around. In 624 CE /2 AH, Abu Bakr ﷺ was involved in the first ghazwa between the Muslims and the Quraysh of Makkah known as the Battle of Badr, but did not fight instead he was one of the guards of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ's tent. In 625 CE/ 3AH he participated in the Battle of Uhad which ended in a defeat of the Muslims. Before the battle begun, Abu Bakr ﷺ's son Abd ar-Rahman ibn Abu Bakr who was still non-Muslim and was fighting from the side of the Quraysh, came forward and threw down a challenge for a duel. Abu Bakr ﷺ accepted the challenge but was stopped by the Holy Prophet ﷺ. His son later converted to Islam and gained fame during the Muslim conquest of Syria as a great soldier.
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﺔ

There were Sahaba willing to die for the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﺔ. During the Battle of Uhad, Zubayr ibn Awwam ﺔ was jumping to catch the arrows, whilst shielding the Holy Prophet ﺔ. He had 72 wounds on that day. At a later stage a man saw him change his shirt and saw his body covered with scar tissue. He asked Hazrath Zubayr ﺔ:

What’s that from?

Hazrath Zubayr ibn Awwam ﺔ replied:

The Battle of Uhad guarding the Messenger of Allah ﺔ

Talha bin Ubaydullah ﺔ earned the title of the living martyr on the battle of Uhad due to his efforts in defending the Messenger of Allah ﺔ. His body was pierced in more than seventy places by the swords and the spears of the pagans, his hand was severed and he lay unconscious in a ditch. Later the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﺔ said:

Whoever would like to see a man who is still walking on earth after he has met his death, he should see Talhah ibn Ubaydillah.

That is how he earned the title of the ‘living martyr’. Whenever the battle of Uhad was mentioned to Abu Bakr ﺔ, he would say:

That was a day that belonged all to Talhah

The Sahaba didn’t do that because of some special training as bodyguards; or secret service or they had insurance policies. They did so because they loved the Holy Prophet ﺔ more than their own selves. The Holy Prophet ﺔ said:

قالَ النَبِيُّ صلى الله عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ لَا يُؤْمِنُ أَحَدٌ كَمْ حَتَّى أَكُونَ أَحْبَبَ إِلَيْهِ مِنْ وَالِدِهِ وَوَلِدِهِ وَالنَّاسِ أَجْمَعِينَ

Narrated Anas ﺔ: None of you will have truly committed to Allah ﺔ till he loves me more than his father, his children and all mankind

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 1; The Book of Faith; Chapter 8; page 61; Hadith no 15]

Later in the year Abu Bakr ﺔ was a part of campaign against the Jewish tribe of Banu Nadir. In 627 CE he participated in the Battle of the Trench and also in the Battle of Banu Qurayza. In 628 CE he
participated in Treaty of Hudaibiya and was made one of the witnesses over the agreement. In the year 628 CE he was a part of the Muslim campaign to Khaybar.

In 630 CE when the Muslim army went for the Conquest of Makkah, Abu Bakr was a part of the army. In 630 CE he was part of Battle of Hunayn and Siege of Ta'if. He was part of the Muslim army in the campaign of Tabuk under the command of the Holy Prophet Muhammad's.

In 631 CE/ 9AH, the Holy Prophet sent from Madinah a delegation of many Muslims to perform the Hajj according to the Islamic method. Hazrath Abu Bakr was appointed as the leader of the delegates, having the honour of being the first Amir-ul-Hajj in the history of Islam. In the year 632 CE Abu Bakr accompanied the Holy Prophet Muhammad to Makkah for the farewell Hajj.

Merits of the Immigrants and Helpers

Allah says in the Holy Qur'aan in the 9th Sura, at-Tauba in Verse 100:

وَالسَّاِبِقُونَ ٱلْأُولُوِنَ مِنَ ٱلْمُهَاجِرِينَ وَٱلْأَنصَارِ وَٱلَّذِينَ أَتَبَعُوهُمُ

بِإِحْسَانٍ رَضِيَ الَّهُ عَنْهُمْ وَرَضِوَ عَنْهُمْ وَأَطَّلَعَ لَهُمْ جَنَاتٌ

تَجْرِي تَحْتَهَا ٱلْخَيْرُ حَيَالِهِنَّ فِيهَا أَبِدًا ذَٰلِكَ ٱلْفَوْزُ ٱلْعَظِيمُ

As for those who led the way (responding to the invitation to faith), the first of the Immigrants (muhaajir) and of those who helped them (ansaar), and those who followed them in (all) good deeds, well-pleased is Allah with them, as are they with Him: for them Hath He prepared Gardens under which rivers flow, to dwell therein forever: that is the supreme Triumph.

This is the literal translation of this verse. Allah has divided the Companions (Sahaba) into two groups: One group are those who are the first to accept Islam and believe in the Holy Prophet and these are from both the Immigrants (muhaajiruun) and Helpers (ansaar). The second group is those that in truthfulness followed them in faith...
About both these groups of Companions, Allah ﷺ says, in the 98th Sura al-Bayyinah (the Clear evidence), in verse 8, that He is pleased with them and them with Him {ٍرَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُمْ وَرَضَى عَنْهُ}. Ponder upon this. If Allah ﷺ is pleased with somebody and if someone is displeased with them, the person who is displeased with the one with whom Allah ﷺ is pleased will harm himself for he cannot harm one with whom Allah ﷺ is pleased. Secondly, only those can be displeased with one with whom Allah ﷺ is pleased, who is an enemy of Allah ﷺ and in opposition to Him. For, it means that although Allah ﷺ is pleased with them I am against them. The seeker of Allah ﷺ’s pleasure will proclaim:

O Allah ﷺ! With whom You are pleased I am also pleased.

We the Followers of Ahl as-Sunnah wa'l-Jama'ah say:

O Allah ﷺ! With the Companions You are pleased so we also are pleased. For You have stated that You prepared Gardens under which rivers flow for to dwell therein forever, so we believe all of them are inheritors of heaven.

They are inheritors of heaven and will abide therein forever. Of this Allah ﷺ, who is the Most True in informing, has informed us. We have faith in Allah ﷺ’s information and His revealed scripture so we believe the Companions are inheritors of heaven, they will be admitted in heaven and will remain therein forever. This is not the information of any Molvi or Mullah but that of Allah ﷺ. Thus those that don’t consider them to be inheritors of heaven don’t have faith on the Holy Qur’aan. The Companions (sahaaba) are all inheritors of heaven for Allah ﷺ is pleased with them. Allah ﷺ has issued them with the certificate of His Pleasure.

**Status of the Immigrants (Muhajireen) and the Helpers (Ansaaar)**

Is the status of the Immigrants (Muhajireen) greater or that of the Helpers (Ansaaar)? The Immigrants (Muhajireen) are those Companions that migrated from Makkah, The Ennobled to Madinah, The Illuminated. Helpers (Ansaaar) are those Companions that were residents of Madinah. The name ansaar also provides a Solution to a Religious Problem (masla). Why did Allah ﷺ name the Companions who were original residents of Madinah, Helpers (Ansaaar)? The reason is that they helped the
Immigrants (Muhaajireen). Thus Allah ﴿named them Those That Help (ansaar). Those that state that non-can help besides Allah ﴿should be asked as to why Allah ﴿named the Residents of Madinah, Those That Help (ansaar)?

Allah ﴿says in the Holy Qur'aan, in the 9th Chapter, At-Tauba،سورة التوبة، Verse 20:

Those who believe, and have left their homes and striven with their wealth and their lives in Allah's way are of much greater worth in Allah's sight. These are they who are triumphant.

This verse is in reference to the Immigrants (Muhaajireen).

Then, Allah ﴿says in the Holy Qur'aan, in the 8th Chapter, Al-Anfaal،سورة الأئمة, in verse 74:

... those who gave [the Immigrants (Muhaajireen)] asylum and aided them ...

The People of Madinah gave the Immigrants (Muhaajireen) asylum and aided them so Allah ﴿named them The Helpers (ansaar).

Allah ﴿is pleased with both the muhajireen and ansaar sahaba. He has certified His pleasure in the Holy Qur'aan and certified them as being inmates of heaven forever. Let us now see which of the two, muhajireen or ansaar have a higher status as sahaba. Allah ﴿states in the 9th Chapter, At-Tauba،سورة التوبة، Verse 20:

Those who believe (in Makkah)
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ

وَهَاجرُواٍ
And left their homes in Makkah and migrated to Madinah

وَجَاهدُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ بَأَوْلِدهُمْ وَأَنفُسِهِمْ
And strove in the path of Allah ﷺ with their wealth and with their lives

أَعْظَمُ درَجَةٌ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ
They have an exalted status with Allah ﷺ

This conveys to us that the muhajireen have a higher rank with Allah ﷺ for they had to endure greater hardship than the ansaar. The muhajireen were the target of the oppression of the disbelievers of Makkah for thirteen long years. They bore the hardship and even left their homes and belongings and migrated. Therefore the muhajireen have a higher rank with Allah ﷺ. They:

1. believed during a difficult period;
2. they migrated and
3. sacrificed everything for Allah ﷺ thus they have an exalted status

Using these three criterions that exalts the muhajireen over the ansaar; in these three endeavours Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ excels all the muhajireen.

Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ excels all the muhajireen

Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ was the first man to believe. He outshone all in his migration. Other sahaba also migrated but only Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ accompanied the Holy Prophet ﷺ in migration. He outshone all the Makkah Muslims in giving in the path of Allah ﷺ during the Tabuk expedition as I have already discussed above.

Passing away of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ

A short time after returning from the farewell pilgrimage, the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ became ill. In his fatal illness the Holy Prophet ﷺ came out with a piece of cloth tied around his head and sat on the pulpit. After thanking and praising Allah ﷺ he said,
Madinah to Karbala

 إن الله خير عبدا بين الدنيا و بين ما عند ه فا ختا ر د
لك العبد ما عند الله

Allah ☪ has given one of His Slaves the choice of receiving the splendour and luxury of the worldly life whatever he likes or to accept the good which is with Allah ☪. So he has chosen that good which is with Allah ☪.

Abu Bakr ☪ wept profusely and said,

فداك أبي و أمي

Our fathers and mothers be sacrificed for you

The companions were astonished by this statement of the Holy Prophet ☪ and reaction of Abu Bakr ☪. Hazrath Abu Bakr ☪ later told the companions, that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪ meant that he was going to be ushered into the Realm of Divine Beauty. The Hadith in Bukhari is as follows:

Narrated Ibn Abbas ☪: Allah's Messenger ☪ in his fatal illness came out with a piece of cloth tied round his head and sat on the pulpit. After thanking and praising Allah ☪ he said: ‘There is no one who had done more favour to me with life and property than Abu Bakr bin Abi Quhafa ☪. If I were to take a Khalil, I would certainly have taken Abu Bakr but
the Islamic brotherhood is superior. Close all the small
doors in this mosque, except that of Abu Bakr."
[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 1, The Book of Salaat; Page 295; Chapter 80;
Hadith number 467]

Caliphate

Hazrath Abu Bakr is the first successor of the Holy Prophet Muhammad as Khalifatur Rasulullah. On the very day the Holy Prophet Muhammad passed into the realm of divine beauty, Monday, 12th Rabi al-Awwal 11 AH, previously dormant tensions between the Makkan immigrants, the Muhajirun, and the Madinan Muslims, the Ansar, threatened to break out and split the Ummah. The Ansar, leaders of the tribes of Madinah, met in the courtyard of Banu Saa idah, to choose from amongst them the first Caliph. When Hazrath Abu Bakr was informed of the meeting, he, Hazrath Umar, Hazrath Abu Ubaidah ibn al-Jarrah and a few others rushed, from the house of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, where they were helping with funeral proceedings, to prevent a civil war of succession. Accounts of this meeting vary greatly. Hazrath Abu Bakr addressed the gathering, especially, Hazrath Sa’ad ibn Ubaadah, the head of the Khazraj tribe, saying:

You know that the Messenger of Allah said:
‘If people were to travel through one valley and the Ansar traveled through another valley, I would travel through the valley of the Ansar.’

And you indeed know O, Sa’ad that the Messenger of Allah said while you were seated:
‘Quraysh are in charge of this matter (i.e. the caliphate). All good people follow the good among them and the corrupt follow the corrupt among them.’

Sa’ad said:
‘You spoke the truth. We are your ministers and you are our leaders’

The mentality of the majority of Arabs, even those that had recently accepted Islam, was still such that the leader had to be from the Quraysh, for they resided in Makkah for centuries were held in high esteem by all the Arabs. Ibn Khaldun [732 AH-808AH] explains that in this early Arabian tribal society, Quraysh were the most powerful tribe, and it was necessary for that time.
Abu Bakr Elected as Caliph

During the meeting Hazrath Umar nominated that Hazrath Abu Bakr should assume the leadership, and declared his allegiance to Hazrath Abu Bakr, followed by Hazrath Abu Ubaidah ibn al-Jarrah. Hazrath Umar pointed out that Hazrath Abu Bakr had been appointed by the Holy Prophet to lead the people in prayer during the final, fatal illness. Although the Holy Prophet did not explicitly name the first Caliph of the Muslim nation, he did imply on various occasions that Hazrath Abu Bakr was the best man for the position. When Hazrath Umar reminded them of the status of Hazrath Abu Bakr in relation to the Holy Prophet Muhammad, Hazrath Sa’ad ibn Ubaadah al-Ansari was amongst the first to pledge allegiance. Hazrath Sa’ad was among the best of the Holy Prophet’s companions. He partook in the second pledge of al-Aqabah; he was the sole Ansaari tortured in Makkah. This, in my opinion, was a temporary/emergency leadership position. Which, to utilise a modern term, will be called ‘Caliph-elect’, until he was given the bay’ah the next day by over 33000 companions. Thus Hazrath Abu Bakr became the first Muslim caliph, and the only, given the title, Khalifa-tur-Rasool (Successor of messenger of Allah). The Sahaba and Ahl al-Bayt set the example, of giving bay’ah, for obedience to the righteous caliph was obedience to the Holy Prophet Muhammad and obedience to the Holy Prophet Muhammad was direct obedience to Allah as stated in the Holy Qur’aan in 4th Sura, an-Nisaa (Women) in Verse 80:

He who obeys the Messenger of Allah has only obeyed Allah

Hazrath Abu Bakr tried to resign from this position by saying,

O people this is your matter to decide upon, so appoint anyone you want to be your leader, and then I will be like one of you.

The people unanimously replied:

We are indeed pleased to have you (as our leader), for indeed you were the second of the two with the Messenger of Allah (in the cave).
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique

Hazrath Abu Bakr pleaded with the people to step forward if they regretted him being elected. Hazrath Ali stepped forward, not to oppose him but to express his endorsement of Hazrath Abu Bakr as Caliph. Hazrath Ali with sword unsheathed went to the foot of the Holy Pulpit. He placed his one foot on the first step and said:

By Allah! We don’t ask for your resignation, nor will we accept your resignation. The Messenger of Allah placed you ahead of everyone else, who is it that will make you step down?

Hazrath Abu Bakr’s Caliphate lasted two years and three months, during which time he consolidated the Muslim state. The first civil war occurred in his caliphate when some tribes rebelled against the tenets of Islam, and in return he fought the Riddah (apostasy) wars against these Arab tribes to establish Islamic rule over all of Arabia. He also invaded the Sassanid Persian and Byzantine Empire conquering the lands of Syria and Iraq. Hazrath Abu Bakr quelled rebellion within the Ummah, stabilized the state and set in motion the spread of the Islamic Ideology that in just a few short decades would lead to one of the largest empires in history. Hazrath Abu Bakr began with Iraq, but before he could reach out Persian Empire itself, he passed into the Realm of Divine Beauty—his passing came only two years after he had been named the successor of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, not as Prophet but as Head of State. He had little time to pay attention to the administration of state, though state affairs remained stable during his Caliphate. On the advice of Hazrath Umar and Hazrath Abu Ubaidah ibn al-Jarrah he agreed to be paid a salary from state treasury and discontinue his cloth trade. Hazrath Abu Bakr was instrumental in preserving the Holy Qur’aan in written form. It is said that after the victory over Musaylimah in the Battle of Yamama fought in 632 CE, Hazrath Umar realised that many of the Muslims who had memorized the Qur’aan had died in battle. Fearing that the Qur’aan may be lost or corrupted, Hazrath Umar requested the Caliph Hazrath Abu Bakr to authorize the compilation and preservation of the Book in written format. After initial hesitation, Hazrath Abu Bakr made a committee headed by Hazrath Zayd ibn Thabit which included the memorizers of the Qur’aan and Hazrath Umar and to collect all verses of the Book. After collecting all
Madinah to Karbala

Qur’aanic verses from texts in the possession of various sahaba, Zayd ibn Thabit and members of his committee verified the reading by comparing with those who had memorized the Qur’aan. After they were satisfied that they had not missed out any verse or made any mistakes in reading or writing it down, the text was written down as one single manuscript and presented in a book form to the Caliph Abu Bakr. This process happened within one year of the death of the Holy Prophet Muhammad when most of his sahaba (companions) were still physically present.

**Descendants of Abu Bakr**

Today there are many families which are believed to be descents of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique. Most of them are known by the name Siddiqui. But they are also known by some other names in different localities. For example, In East Ethiopia, Siddiqui’s are usually called Qallu, which means people of the religion, as they were the first to bring Islam to this area. In Somalia, they are commonly known as Sheekhaal and they are well-respected by other Somali clans. In Indo/Pak region including, Bangladesh, they are known by the name of Siddiqui.

**Asma bint Umais ibn Ma’bad**

Asma bint Umais ibn Ma’bad ibn al Haarith from the Banu Hashim tribe was a Sahabi who lies buried in Baab Sagheer cemetery, Damascus, Syria. Her father was Umays ibn Ma’ad and her mother is Hind bint Awf. Her half sister was Maymuna bint al-Harith, one of the wives of the Holy Prophet Muhammad and her full sister Salma bint Umays married, the uncle of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, Hamza ibn Abd al-Muttalib. She is probably the only female companion (Sahabia) who has this unique honour of being the wife of three different Sahaba at three different time’s viz. Hazrath Jaafar ibn Abu Talib, She had children with Hazrath Jaafar and several years before Hijrah, she participated in the Migration to Abyssinia with her husband and a group of Muslims. It is also known that Hazrath Jaafar ibn Abu Talib, returned to Madinah after the Muslims conquered Khaybar in 5 AH. In 8 AH Hazrath Jaafar ibn Abu Talib, was martyred in the Battle of Mu’tah which was fought against Byzantine along with Zayd ibn Harithah.
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique

and Abd Allah ibn Rawahah. Mu’tah is in the south of Jordan and Hazrath Jaafar ibn Abu Talib’s mazaar is there.

After Hazrath Jaafar ibn Abu Talib’s death she married Hazrath Bakr Siddique till his passing in 13 AH. When married to Abu Bakr, she was expecting their child but did not want to miss the last and only pilgrimage, of the Holy Prophet Muhammad even though her delivery was near and so she decided to accompany her husband. On one of the stops along the pilgrimage route, Hazrath Asma gave birth to their son who they named Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr. Hazrath Bakr Siddique planned to send Hazrath Asma and their child back to Madinah, but when the Holy Prophet Muhammad learned of his intent he told him to let her continue by making the major ablution, and then rededicating herself in offering the pilgrimage.

When Hazrath Abu Bakr passed away, Hazrath Asma married Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib. Both Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr and Umm Kulthum bint Abu Bakr went to live with Hazrath Ali. The infant Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr was brought up by Hazrath Ali, who referred to him as:

My son from the loins of Hazrath Abu Bakr

Those who have been influenced by malicious Shia propaganda should ponder! Would Hazrath Ali marry the widow of his ‘so-alleged’ enemy and also rear his son? My great-grandfather Hazrath Ghulam Muhammad Siddique, popularly known as Hazrath Soofie Saheb in South Africa, a great wali of the Chishtia Sufi Order, is a direct descendant of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique, through the son of Hazrath Asma, Hazrat Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr. We are in possession of the genealogy kept updated at Port Ibrahim Pattan (Ratnagir), India. We acquired it on 24 Ramadan 1185 AH (1771), a little over two hundred years ago. Hazrath Ghulam Muhammad Siddique, popularly known as Hazrath Soofie Saheb is the 36th descendant and I am humbly blessed to be the 39th descendant.

Passing away of Hazrath Abu Bakr and his Burial

On 8 August 634 CE, Caliph Abu Bakr fell sick and never recovered. The effect of the poisonous snake bite, in the cave, manifested later. Abu
Bakr ﷺ developed high fever and was confined to bed. His illness was prolonged and when his condition worsened he felt that his end was near. He nominated Umar ﷺ as his successor after consultation with senior companions. On Monday 23 August 634 CE, Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ passed into the realm of Divine Beauty. The funeral prayer was led by Hazrath Umar ﷺ. He was buried the same night by the side of the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s grave in Hazrath Ayesha ﷺ’s house next to Al-Masjid al-Nabawi, which is today part of Al-Masjid al-Nabawi.

The Burial of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ

Let’s recall how Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ who is buried in the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s Burial Chamber under the Green Dome, came to be there. Read the books of Islam; the commentary of the Holy Qur’aan, Tafsir e Kabir162 of Fakhr al-Din al-Razi163, and "al-Kasa’is al-Kubra"164 of Imam Jalaluddeen al-Suyuti165. Refer to both of these books.

Hazrath Ali al-Murtaza ﷺ narrates that when the time was close for Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ to be ushered into the realm of Divine Beauty then he gestured to me and said:

O Ali ﷺ! When I die then you must bathe me with your blessed hands that bathed the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, then put fragrance on me and take me to the house of the Holy Prophet ﷺ.
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ

Muhammad ﷺ (. If the door (of Blessed Burial Chamber) opens then bury me in there or (if the door doesn’t open) bury me in the graveyard with the other Muslims.

Hazrath Ali ﷺ says:

After we bathed and shrouded the blessed body, I was the first to go to the door of the Blessed Burial Chamber of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. I addressed the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ saying,

‘O Messenger of Allah ﷺ, Abu Bakr ﷺ requests your permission to enter. I then saw the door of the Sacred Burial Chamber open on its own and I heard the voice (of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ) say,

‘Bring the lover to his beloved, undoubtedly the beloved longs to meet his lover”

Read the Hadith, where it is reported that the door of the Holy Prophet’s Burial Chamber opened on its own and the voice of Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was heard saying,

يقول ادخلوا الحبيب إلي حبيبه فإن الحبيب إلي الحبيب

مشتاق

Bring my beloved to his beloved; bring my friend to his friend; For the Beloved is longing for his beloved

This hadith displays the reverence Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ had for the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and Hazrath Ali ﷺ. Hazrath Abu Bakr ﷺ said ‘take me to the house of the Holy Prophet ﷺ. He did not say grave, for the Sahaba knew that the ‘essential being’ of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is alive and functional. The action of Hazrath Ali ﷺ addressing the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in person and seeking his permission further elucidates the aqa’id167 or aqidah عقيدة of the Sahaba. Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ was buried within the Sacred Burial Chamber.

Ponder, leaving your doubts and sectarian bias aside upon Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ﷺ’s request to be taken to the Holy Prophet ﷺ’s Sacred Burial Chamber, to greet, to proclaim that Abu Bakr ﷺ is present and to say if the door opens on its own then he must be buried inside. Should
Madinah to Karbala

not the Companions have stated as to who will open the door for the Holy Prophetﷺ is buried and dead. The fact that Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddiqueﷺ requested this and the Companions carried out his request are proof that the Companions believed the Holy Prophetﷺ to be alive (Hayaatun Nabie) and functioning. His tasarruf⁶⁸ is prevalent unto this day. The door opened and his voice was heard.

When Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddiqueﷺ was placed in his grave, Hazrath Ali ☪ was at his head side and he witnessed something that made him cry. The Companions enquired as to why he cried and he said:

I saw the Holy Prophetﷺ arise from his grave, look at Abu Bakr ☪ and supplicate:

‘O Allah ☪! For the sake of the white beard of Abu Bakr ☪ forgive all the white bearded members of my community.’

Hazrath Ali ☪ cried witnessing the love of the Holy Prophetﷺ for his community and seeing the status of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddiqueﷺ. Look at the status of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddiqueﷺ, for the Holy Prophetﷺ prays to Allah ☪ using him as a means (wasila). It is that very Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddiqueﷺ who is a lover of the Holy Prophetﷺ.

Three things Abu Bakr ☪ loved most

There is a beautiful Hadith⁶⁹ recorded by Ibn Hajar al-Haytami al-Makki, a Sunni Muslim Shafi’i scholar, born in 909 AH (1503CE) died in 974 AH (1566 CE) in the Munabbihat ʼala al-Isti’dad li-Yawm al-Ma’ad lil-Nus-hi wal-Widad ("Admonitions for Preparation for the Day of the Return for Advice and Love")⁷⁰

Once when the Holy Prophet Muhammadﷺ was sitting among his companions, and he asked, ‘Abu Bakr what do you love most in this world?'
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique

فقال أبي بكر (رضي الله عنه) أحب من الدنيا ثلاث

Abu Bakr replied, I love three things’

الجلوس بين يديك

‘I love most of all to sit in your proximity and blessed company daily’.

والنظر اليك

‘I love to look at your beautiful, radiant face daily.’

وإنفاق مالي عليك

I love that I spend all my wealth on you

 فقال النبي

The Holy Prophet said:

حبب إلي من دنياكم ثلاث

I love three things of this world

الطيب;

Fragrance (perfume عطر)

والنساء;

Women

وجعلت قرة عيني في الصلاة

And the coolness of my eye, in prayer

Hazrath Khwaja Nizamuddeen Awliya (1238 - 3 April 1325) also known as

Hazrath Nizamuddeen Awliya حضرت خواجه نظام الدين اولیا a famous Sufi saint of the

Chishti Order expounds this hadith in Fawa’id Al-Fu’ad١٧١- ‘The Spiritual

and Literary Discourses of Shaykh Nizamuddeen Awliya حضرت خواجه نظام الدين اولیا’ as recorded

by his disciple Khwaja Amir Hasan Sijzi حضرت خواجه امیر حسن سیزی.
Madinah to Karbala

...as the master was talking a dear friend arrived, bringing with him some collyrium (surma) [This cosmetic having the attribute of cooling the eye]. This prompted the master to mention the following tradition: “The Holy Prophet ﷺ used to say,

حب إلي من دنياكم ثلاث الطيب و النساء و قرة عيني في الصلاة

‘Three things of this world have I loved: perfume, women and the coolness of my eye, in prayer.

The Master (Nizamuddeen Awliya ﷺ) commented, “By the word women, the Holy Prophet ﷺ meant Ayesha ﷺ, because of all his wives (after Khadijah ﷺ) he had a special preference for her; and by قرة عيني (‘the coolness of my eye’ or ‘a touch of collyrium (surma) in prayer’, he meant Fatimah ﷺ The Pure, for at that moment she was reciting her prayer,”[and he could see her from the position he was sitting in] After that he added: “Some Muhaddith say that the Holy Prophet ﷺ meant, prayer not ‘Fatimah ﷺ in prayer’, ‘but’, he continued ‘if he meant prayer by this expression, then he would have mentioned it as the first of the things that he loved’.”

The extreme love for Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua ﷺ, Hazrath Fatimah Zahra ﷺ and Ahle Bayt and Sahaba in The Chishti Sufi Order is evident from the explanation of this hadith by Hazrath Khwaja Nizamuddeen Awliya ﷺ. Every mehfil as-Sama١٧٢ (gathering of music audition) begins with the recitation of the blessed saying (qawl) of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ:

من كنت مولاً فعلي مولاً

One who has me as his Spiritual Guide has Ali ﷺ as his Spiritual Guide

This hadith was put into a poetical presentation by the disciple of Hazrath Khwaja Nizamuddeen Awliya ﷺ, Ab’ul Hasan Yamîn al-Dîn Khusrow١٧٣ (1253-1325 CE) better known as Amîr Khusrow ﷺ. Every Chishti Sufi Gathering of Sama or Qawwali begins with this composition for 700 years.
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique

The previously quoted hadith also expounds the love of Hazrath Abu Bakr as-Siddique is to sit in the company of Holy Prophet Muhammad, look at his beautiful face and spend everything he has on the Holy Prophet. From this one can see that the axis of Hazrath Abu Bakr as-Siddique’s faith and love is the Holy Prophet Muhammad Allama Al-Haafidh Shihabuddin Abu’l-Fadl Ahmad ibn Ali ibn Muhammad, popularly known as Allama Ibn Hajar Asqalani (d. 1448 CE/852 AH), the great Shafi Sunni scholar of Islam who represents the entire realm of the Sunni world in the field of Hadith; reiterated this hadith of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, with slightly different wording. He says when the Holy Prophet said:

I love three things in this world: fragrance; a pious wife; and prayer, which is the coolness of my eye

Upon hearing this, Hazrath Abu Bakr as-Siddique became restless with desire and said:

“O Beloved of Allah, I also love three things in this world: to look upon your face, to put my wealth at your disposal and that my daughter is thy wife, O Prophet of Allah!

Awliya Descending from Abu Bakr Siddique

HAZRATH UMAR IBN AL-KHATTAB ﷺ

Hazrath Umar ibn al-Khattab ﷺ Reigned as Caliph from the 23 August 634CE – 7 November 644 CE [13 AH to 23 A.H]. He was one of the most powerful and influential Muslim rulers. As a ruler he lived on olive oil and bread, wearing a garment of multiple patches, some patched with leather and arrived in Jerusalem, as it’s conqueror on foot, with his attendant riding the camel.

**Early life**

Hazrath Umar ﷺ was born in Makkah to the Banu Adi family of the Quraysh tribe, which was responsible for arbitrations among the tribes. His father was Khattab ibn Nufayl and his mother was Fatima bint Hasham, from the tribe of Banu Makhzum. He is said to have belonged to a middle class family. In his youth he used to tend to his father’s camels in the plains near Makkah. His father was famed for his intelligence among his tribe. Despite literacy being uncommon in pre-Islamic Arabia, Hazrath Umar ﷺ learned to read and write in his youth. According to the tradition of Quraysh, while still in his teenage years, Umar ﷺ learned martial arts, horse riding and wrestling. He was tall and physically powerful and was soon to become a renowned wrestler. Hazrath Umar ﷺ was also a gifted orator, and due to his intelligence and overwhelming personality, he succeeded his father as an arbitrator of conflicts among the tribes. In addition, Hazrath Umar ﷺ followed the traditional profession of Quraysh. He became a merchant and had several journeys to Rome and Persia, where he is said to have met the various scholars and analyzed the Roman and Persian societies closely.

**Hazrath Umar ﷺ embraces Islam**

Hazrath Umar ﷺ embraced Islam in 616 CE, one year after the Migration to Abyssinia. His acceptance of Islam was due to the supplication of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ:
Ibn Abbas narrated that the Holy Prophet said:

‘O Allah honour Islam through Abu Jahal bin Hishaam or through Umar bin Al-Khattab.

He said:

So it happened that Umar came the next day to the Messenger of Allah and accepted Islam.

[Jaami at-Tirmidhi; Volume 6; Chapters on Al-Manaaqib; Page 362; Hadith Number 3683]

The event is recounted in Sirah Ibn Ishaq. On the way to murder the Holy Prophet Muhammad, Hazrath Umar met Sa’ad bin Abi Waqqas who enquired as to where he was going to. When Hazrath Umar told Sa’ad that he was going to kill the Holy Prophet Muhammad, he told him to set his own house in order first, as his sister and her husband had converted to Islam. Upon arriving at his sister’s house, Hazrath Umar found his sister and brother-in-law Hazrath Saeed bin Zaid (Umar’s cousin), reciting the verses of the 20th Sura, Tāhā. Hazrath Umar started beating his brother-in-law. When his sister came to rescue her husband, he also started quarrelling with her. They kept on saying:

"You may kill us but we will not give up Islam".

Upon hearing these words, Hazrath Umar slapped his sister so hard that she fell to the ground bleeding from her mouth. When he saw what he did to his sister now, out of guilt he calmed down and asked his sister to give him what she was reciting. She gave him the paper on which was written the verses of the chapter Ta-Ha. He was so struck by the beauty of the verses that he accepted Islam that day. He then went to the Holy Prophet Muhammad with the same sword he intended to kill him with and accepted Islam in front of him and his companions. On his
acceptance of Islam the Muslims exclaimed, shouting with joy, ‘Allahu Akbar’ (Allah is the Greatest) and the sound echoed in Makkah. This is the source of the Sunnah of exclaiming the Call of Tauhid (Naara-e-Takbir). Hazrath Umar was 27 years old when he accepted Islam. Following his acceptance, Hazrath Umar went to inform the chief of Quraysh, Amr ibn Hisham, about his acceptance of Islam. Hazrath Umar thereafter exhorted the Muslims to gather at the Kaaba. Hazrath Hamza, who had accepted Islam a few days before Hazrath Umar led one of the groups of the Muslims to Kaaba. When all the Muslims gathered at the Kaaba they offered their prayer, for the first time, in congregation, in public, led by the Holy Prophet Muhammad. The Quraysh chiefs, Amr ibn Hishām and Abu Sufyan ibn Harb, reportedly watched in anger. This further helped the Muslims to gain confidence in practicing Islam openly. At this stage Hazrath Umar even challenged anyone who dared to stop the Muslims. Hazrath Abdullah bin Masood said:

Umar’s embracing Islam was our victory, his migration to Madinah was our success and his reign a blessing from Allah, we didn’t offer prayers in Al-Haram Masjid until Umar accepted Islam, when he accepted Islam Quraysh were compelled to let us pray in the Masjid.

The Holy Qur’aan says in the 8th Sura, al-Anfaal (Spoils of war) in verse 64:

O (Glorious) Messenger! Sufficient for you is Allah and those Muslims who have committed themselves to follow in your footsteps

This verse was revealed when Hazrath Umar Faruq accepted Islam. He was the 40th Believer and that is when Allah revealed this verse. In effect it is saying:

‘Hereafter anyone follows you or helps you or not, My Beloved Holy Prophet Muhammad! Sufficient for you is Allah and these 40 believers.’

In accepting the faith who is the first? Some have stated the first was Hazrath Khadijah, whilst others have stated it was Hazrath Abu Bakr.

Madinah to Karbala
Hazrath Uthman ibn al-Affan

Siddique, and others say the first was Hazrath Ali. There are some who say the first was Hazrath Zayd. There is a difficulty in recording some aspects of history but our Muhaditheen have resolved this particular aspect, as to who was the first believer, admirably. They have recorded Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique, as being the first male adult; Hazrath Ali as the first minor; Hazrath Khadijah the first female adult; Hazrath Zayd as the first slave to accept Islam. Later, in this book I will produce the view that Hazrath Ali preceded these five blessed personalities in accepting Islam.

So the first of the forty to accept Islam is Hazrath Ali and the fortieth is Hazrath Umar. Between the two ‘ains’; on one side the ‘ain’ of Ali; and on the other the ‘ain’ of Umar: العين means ‘eyes’ in Arabic; thus he has sound vision whose both eyes are sound. The two ‘ains’ – one being the عين aql (intelligence) and the other being the عين ishq (love); thus from Hazrath Umar we attain the عين aql (intelligence) and from Hazrath Ali we acquire the عين ishq (love). He who possesses both aql عقل and ishq عشق possesses sound faith imaan.

Migration to Madinah

In 622 CE due to the growing popularity of Islam in the city of Yathrib (later renamed Madinah an-Nabi) the Holy Prophet Muhammad ordered his followers to migrate to Madinah. Muslims usually migrated at night due to fear of Quraish’s resistance to that migration, but Hazrath Umar is reported to have migrated openly during the day time saying:

Any one who wants to make his wife a widow and his children orphans should come and meet me there behind that cliff

Hazrath Umar migrated accompanied by his cousin and brother-in-law Hazrath Saeed ibn Zaid.

Life in Madinah

Madinah became the new centre of Islam and Islam spread rapidly across Arabia. In 624 CE Hazrath Umar participated in the Battle of Badr. In
Madinah to Karbala

625 CE he participated in the Battle of Uhad. Later in the year Hazrath Umar was a part of campaign against the Jewish tribe of Banu Nadir. In 625 CE Hazrath Umar’s daughter Hafsah was married to the Holy Prophet Muhammad. Later in 627 CE he participated in the Battle of the Trench and also in the Battle of Banu Qurayza. In 628 CE Hazrath Umar participated in the Treaty of Hudaibiya and was made one of the witness over the pact. In 628 CE he was a part of the campaign to Khaybar. In 629 CE the Holy Prophet Muhammad sent Amr ibn al-A’as to Zaat-ul-Sallasal from where Amr ibn al-A’as called for reinforcement and the Holy Prophet Muhammad sent Abu Ubaidah ibn al-Jarrah with reinforcement, serving under him were Abu Bakr and Umar, they attacked and defeated the enemy. In 630 CE when Muslim armies conquered Makkah Umar, was part of that army. Later in 630 CE he was part of Battle of Hunayn and Siege of Taif. He was part of Muslim's army that went for the campaign of Tabuk under the Holy Prophet Muhammad’s command and he was reported to have given half of his wealth for the preparation of this expedition. He also participated in a farewell Hajj of the Holy Prophet in 631 CE.

Title of ‘al-Faruq’

A Jew and a Muslim were involved in a dispute. They took their case to the Messenger of Allah. The Holy Prophet ruled in favor of the Jew. The Muslim, who in reality was a hypocrite, was dissatisfied with the Holy Prophet’s ruling and decided to go to Hazrath Umar who was known for his harshness against the disbelievers. The hypocrite (munaafiq) thought that definitely Hazrath Umar would not rule in favor of a Jew against a Muslim. When Allah takes away Faith (Imaan), He also takes away wisdom. The Hypocrite who lost his case in the Supreme Court goes to appeal in the Lower Court. When they went to Hazrath Umar and explained the situation to him and how the Holy Prophet had already ruled in favor of the Jew, Hazrath Umar made his decision. Hazrath Umar’s insight (firaasa) and the fact that the case was brought to him after the Messenger of Allah’s decision told him that this was not a person of Imaan, but a Hypocrite. Hazrath Umar unsheathed his sword and decapitated the Hypocrite. When the incident became public knowledge, the public at large, began to say that Hazrath Umar had
Hazrath Uthman ibn al-Affan

killed a Muslim. Hazrath Umar went to the Messenger of Allah and said in defense of his action:

O Beloved Prophet Umar slew one who recites the ‘Testifies the Faith’ (Kalimah), observes prayer (salaah) and fasts (saum), but you know that I did not kill a Muslim because they cannot have Faith (Imaan) if they do not accept your judgment.

Allah loved this expression of love of Umar so much that He sent Gabriel [Jibra’el] with revelation on that occasion. Verse 65 from the 4th Sura, al-Nisaa: was revealed.

So, (O Beloved,) by your Lord they cannot become true believers until they make you a judge in every dispute that arises among them, and thereafter they do not feel any resentment in their hearts against the judgment that you make, and submit (to your decision) gladly, with total submission.

The question arises:

Did Allah or His Messenger instruct Hazrath Umar to kill the hypocrite?

No! Hazrath Umar love (ishq) told him that a blasphemer must be put to death. Love does not wait for orders. The Holy Qur’aan affirmed that what Hazrath Umar did was right. For this bold action of Hazrath Umar the Holy Prophet honoured him with the title of ‘al-Faruq’ i.e., the one who makes a distinction between the ‘Truth’ (Haqq) and the ‘Falsehood’ (Baatil). Allah also honoured him by taking his words of defence and revealing it as a verse of the Holy Qur’aan.

Hazrath Umar as Caliph

Hazrath Umar ibn Al-Khattab, who was gifted both militarily and politically, succeeded Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique as Caliph in 634 CE/13 AH. His role in Islam is most significant when he succeeded Caliph Abu Bakr on 23 August 634 CE as the second Caliph. Hazrath Umar continued the spread of Islam begun by Hazrath Abu Bakr.
The Islamic empire expanded at an unprecedented rate ruling the whole Sassanid Persian Empire and more than two thirds of the Eastern Roman Empire. By 640 CE, Islamic military campaigns had brought all of Mesopotamia and most of Syria and Palestine under the control of Islam. Egypt was conquered by 642 CE and the Persian Empire by 643 CE. These were some of the richest regions in the world guarded by powerful militaries—and they fell into Islamic hands in a heartbeat. Despite all this success he remained simple. In his book Encyclopaedia of Islam, Mufti M. Mukarram Ahmed describes Hazrath Umar’s journey to Jerusalem to take control of the city from the Byzantine Patriarch of Jerusalem Sophronius:

Hazrath Umar appointed Hazrath Ali as his deputy and went to Jerusalem with his attendant. They had one camel on which each of them rode by turn. When Hazrath Umar was entering Jerusalem it happened to be the servant’s turn to ride on the camel. Though the servant offered his turn to the "Khalifa" but Hazrath Umar refused and remarked:

“The honour of Islam (i.e., being Muslim) is enough for all of us.”

He entered Jerusalem holding the rope of the camel on which was riding his slave. His clothes were dust-laden and there were several patches on them.

[Mufti M. Mukarram Ahmed, Encyclopedia of Islam]

Will a man ambitious for power behave so humbly? Would Hazrath Ali accept a position of deputy if he was against the Caliphate of Hazrath Ali? In ‘The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire’, Gibbon refers to Hazrath Umar in the following terms:

Yet the abstinence and humility of Umar were not inferior to the virtues of Abu Bakr: his food consisted of barley bread or dates; his drink was water; he preached in a gown that was torn or tattered in twelve places; and a Persian satrap, who paid his homage as to the conqueror, found him asleep among the beggars on the steps of the mosque of Muslims.
Hazrath Uthman ibn al-Affan

Muawiyah appointed Governor of Damascus
In the year 17-18 A.H Hazrath Umar appointed Muawiyah bin Abu Sufyaan as the Governor of Damascus in place of his brother Yazid bin Abi Sufyaan. Hazrath Umar did not require that non-Muslim populations convert to Islam nor did he try to centralize government, as the Persians had done. Instead, he allowed subject populations to retain their religion, language, customs, and government relatively untouched.
The only intrusion would be a governor (amir) and, sometimes, a financial officer called an amil, or agent. He also founded the diwan, a unique Islamic institution. The diwan consisted of individuals that were important to the Islamic faith and the Islamic world. Their contribution to the faith was so great that they were given pensions to live off, thus freeing them to pursue religious and ethical studies and so provide religious or ethical leadership to the rest of the Islamic world. Himself rather than adopt the pomp and display affected by the rulers of the time, he continued to live much as he had when Muslims were poor and persecuted.

Hazrath Umar martyred
Hazrath Umar was martyred in 644 CE, after he was stabbed by Firoz Abu Lulu, a Persian assassin, hired by Persians, in response to the Muslim conquest of Persia, in the Masjid al-Nabawi in Madinah. On 3 November 644 CE, Hazrath Umar was attacked, while leading the morning prayers; Abu Lulu stabbed him six times in the belly and last on the navel, which proved fatal. Hazrath Umar was left profusely bleeding while Abu Lulu tried to flee but people from all sides rushed to capture him, he in his efforts to escape is reported to have wounded twelve other people, six or nine of them later died. At last he was captured but committed suicide from the same dagger. Hazrath Umar passed into the realm of Divine Beauty of three days later on Sunday, 7 November 644 CE. On the 11 November 644 CE, Hazrath Uthman succeeded him as the Caliph.

Burial of Hazrath Umar
Hazrath Umar was carried home from the Masjid of the Holy Prophet Muhammad where he was attacked. When he regained consciousness
he asked who was the assassin and was told that it was the Persian slave Firoz Abu Lulu. Hazrath Umar said:

Praise be to Allah that I have not been murdered by a Muslim.

The doctor that attended to him assessed the wounds were fatal and that Hazrath Umar could not survive for long. The people around him praised him for his virtues and sterling qualities. Hazrath Umar asked them not to praise him. He said:

All praise is to Allah. If all the treasures of this world were to be at my disposal, I would offer them as a ransom to be saved from the trial at the Day of Judgement.

Hazrath Umar asked his son Abdullah to ask Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua her permission for his burial by the side of the Holy Prophet and Abu Bakr. Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua wept as she realised that Hazrath Umar was about to die. She said:

I had kept this place for my own burial, but I give Umar precedence over myself. Let him be buried there.

Hazrath Umar on being informed that Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua had consented to his request said:

Allah bless Ayesha. She has fulfilled my greatest wish.

Now I can die in peace.

Hazrath Umar then asked his son to calculate his debts. He was informed that his debt amounted to eighty six thousand Dirham, inclusive of the salary that he had drawn from the Baitul Mal during his caliphate. He instructed that the debt should be paid by the sale of his property. Thereafter Hazrath Umar gave detailed instructions to his son regarding his funeral. He said:

Be moderate in the expenses of my shroud, for verily if there is anything of good with Allah in my favor, He will give me in exchange what is better than it, and if I have been otherwise, He will strip me of all that I have. And be moderate in the grave that you dig for me, for verily if there be anything of good with Allah in my favor, He will widen it for me, and if I have been otherwise, He will make it narrow for me to squeeze my body. And let no woman go with my funeral. Praise me not for that which is not in me, for Allah knows best what I am.
Therefore when you carry me to the grave, hasten in your going for if there is anything of good with Allah in my favor you will speed me to that which is good, and if I have been otherwise, you will cast from your necks an evil that you bear.

Hazrath Umar ﷺ turned his face to the Qiblah and was ushered into the realm of Divine Beauty. There was a smile on his face.

Read the following Hadith from Sahih Bukhari and ponder on the supplication of Hazrath Ali ﷺ:

وَضَعَ عَمَّرٍ عَلَى سَرِيرِهِ فَتَكَلَّمَهُ النَّاسُ يَدْعُونَ وَيَصِلُّونَ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَرَفَعُ وَأَنَّا فِيهِمْ فَلَمْ يَرَعْنِي إِلَّا رَجُلٌ آخَرٌ مَّنِيكِي فَإِذَا عَلِيٌّ بْنُ أَبِي طَالِبٍ فَتَرَحَّمَ عَلَى عُمَّرٍ وَقَالَ مَا خَلَفْتُ أُحْدَٰلَ أَحْبَّ إِلَيْيَ أَنْ أَلْقَى اللَّهُ مَثَلَ عَمَّرٍ وَقَالَ اللَّهُ إِنِّي كُنْتُ لأَظْنَ أَنْ يَجْعَلَكَ اللَّهُ مَثَلَ صَاحِبِيَّكَ وَحَسِبَ تَأْتِيّ اللَّهُ إِنِّي كُنْتُ كَثِيرًا أَسْمَعْ النَّبِيَّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمُ يُقُولُ ذَهَبَتْ أُنَّا وَأَبُو بَكْرٍ وَعُمَّرٍ وَدَخَلَتْ أُنَّا وَأَبُو بَكْرٍ وَعُمَّرٍ وَخَرَجَتْ أُنَّا وَأَبُو بَكْرٍ وَعُمَّرٍ

Narrated Ibn Abbas ﷺ: “When (the body of) Umar ﷺ was put on his deathbed, the people gathered around him and invoked (Allah ﷺ) and prayed for him before the body was taken away, and I was amongst them. Suddenly I felt somebody taking hold of my shoulder and found out that he was Ali bin Abi Talib ﷺ.

Ali ﷺ invoked Allah ﷺ’s Mercy for Umar ﷺ and said:

"O Umar! You have not left behind you a person whose deeds I like to imitate and meet Allah ﷺ with more than I like your deeds. By Allah ﷺ! I always thought that Allah ﷺ would keep you with your two companions, for very often I used to hear the Holy Prophet ﷺ saying, 'I, Abu Bakr and Umar went (somewhere); I, Abu Bakr and Umar entered (somewhere); and I, Abu Bakr and Umar went out."
Madinah to Karbala

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 5, The Virtues of the Companions of the Holy Prophet ﷺ; Page 32; Chapter 6; Hadith number 3685]

The Hadith in Sahih Muslim is similar but the following is added at the end as being said by Hazrath Ali:

فَإِنَّ كَنَّا نَارَجُوهُ أوَّلَأَظْنُ أَنْ يَجْعَلْكُمُ اللَّهُ مَعَهُمَا

So, I pray - or am of the opinion-that Allah ﷺ will unite you with them

[Sahih Muslim; Volume 6; The Virtues of the Companions; Page 245; Chapter 2; Hadith number 6187]

Awliya from the lineage of Umar ﷺ

Hazrath Sultan Ibrahim Adham ﷺ, Hazrath Baba Fariduddin Ganje Shakar ﷺ, Sufi Hamiduddin Nagouri ﷺ, Hazrath Najmuuddin Kubra ﷺ, Hazrath Abdul Quddus Gangohi Sabri ﷺ, Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi ﷺ, Mawlana Fazle Haqq Khairabadi ﷺ to name a few.
Hazrath Uthman ibn Affan \(\text{radiya}_1\) reigned as Caliph from 644 CE–656 CE. He appeared like a slave in dress and appearance. It is related that as caliph, he once collected his own firewood, and when questioned replied, ‘I wanted to see if my ego would refuse’.

**Life before accepting Islam**

Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya}_1\) belonged to the *Umayyad* family of Quraysh in Makkah. They were a well reputed and honourable family during the pre-Islamic days. In the famous battle of ‘Fajär’ the Commander-in-Chief of the Quraysh army, Harb bin Umayyah was from the same family. The descendants of this family are known as ‘Banu Umayyah’. Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya}_1\) was born in 573 CE seven years after the birth of the Holy Prophet \(\text{salla}_1\). He was the son of Affan ibn Abi al-As and Urwa bint Kariz. Urwa bore only two children from Affan, Uthman \(\text{radiya}_1\) and his sister Amna. Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya}_1\) was one of the few persons of Makkah who knew reading and writing. His father died and left him a large inheritance. He started a business in cloth and soon became one of the richest men in Makkah. He used his money in virtuous ways and always helped the poor. He was a soft natured and kind hearted man. He did not hesitate to spend any amount of money on seeing a man in trouble in order to remove his misery. Due to his noble qualities the Makkans had great respect for him.

**Acceptance of Islam**

Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya}_1\) accepted Islam on the invite of Hazrath Abu Bakr \(\text{radiya}_1\). Some record him as the fourth adult male to accept Islam. Though ‘Banu Hashim’ (the Holy Prophet \(\text{salla}_1\)'s family) was rivals to ‘Banu Umayyah’ (Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya}_1\)'s family); Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya}_1\) did not hesitate to acknowledge the prophethood of the Holy Prophet Muhammad \(\text{salla}_1\). The fact that the Holy Prophet Muhammad \(\text{salla}_1\) was a *Hashemite* was one of the primary reasons why Quraysh leaders, belonging to Banu Umayyah, like Abu Sufyaaan, were opposing the Holy Prophet \(\text{salla}_1\). Hazrath Ruqayyah bint
Madinah to Karbala

Muhammad ⲙ, the daughter of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ⲙ was given by the Holy Prophet ⲙ in marriage to Hazrath Uthman ⲙ. He migrated to Abyssinia with his wife and later returned.

Migration and life in Madinah

In 622 CE, Uthman ⲙ and his wife, Ruqayyah ⲙ, migrated to Madinah. He could not participate in the first battle of Islam against non-believers of Makkah at Badr, because his wife was very ill. She died during the time the Battle of Badr was being fought, and the news of the victory of Badr reached Madinah as Ruqayyah ⲙ was being buried. Hazrath Uthman ⲙ brought all his wealth with him to Madinah and soon established himself as a successful trader. This was a challenge to the Jews who dominated the market within the town since most of the Arabs were farmers. This was a significant step for the Muslims to become economically independent. Hazrath Uthman ⲙ soon became one of the richest men in Madinah. He bought a well from a Jew and gave it to the Muslims. After the Battle of Uhud he married the Holy Prophet Muhammad ⲙ's second daughter, Hazrath Umm Kulthum bint Muhammad ⲙ. Thus he became known as ‘the possessor of the two lights’ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ ⲱ. Besides Badr he fought in all battles and for the safety of Islam. He was sent as the ambassador of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ⲙ to negotiate with the Quraysh in Makkah, during Hudaibiya. When the al-Masjid an-Nabawi became too small to accommodate the increasing population, it was Uthman ⲙ who bought land for its extension. He was one of the scribes who recorded revelation. He was a member of the ‘Shura’ (Advisory Council) during the caliphate of Abu Bakr ⲙ and Umar ⲙ.

Caliphate of Uthman ⲙ

Hazrath Umar ⲙ, on his death bed formed a committee of six people to choose the next Caliph from amongst them. They were Hazrath Ali ⲙ, Hazrath Uthman ibn Affan ⲙ, Hazrath Abdur Rahman bin Awf ⲙ, Hazrath Sa’ad ibn Abi Waqqas ⲙ, Hazrath al-Zubayr ⲙ and Hazrath Talhah ⲙ. After consultation with the other leaders of public opinion in Madinah, the majority of the people favoured the election of Hazrath Uthman ⲙ. On the fourth day after the death of Hazrath Umar ⲙ, 11 November 644 CE / 5 Muharram 24 AH, Hazrath Uthman ibn Affan ⲙ was elected as the third Caliph.
Reign as a Caliph (644 CE–656 CE)
On assuming office, Uthman extended the realm of Islam in the west to Morocco, in the east to South East Pakistan, and in the north to Armenia and Azerbaijan. During his caliphate, the first Islamic naval force was established, administrative divisions of the state were revised, and many public projects were expanded and completed. Uthman ruled for twelve years. The first six years were marked by internal peace and tranquillity, and he remained the most popular Caliph among the Rashidun; but during the second half of his caliphate a rebellion arose. Uthman had the distinction of working for the expansion of Islam, and he sent the first official Muslim envoy to China in 650 CE, headed by Sa’ad ibn Abi Waqqas. Uthman also sent official Muslim envoys to Sri Lanka.

Public works
Under Hazrath Uthman people became economically more prosperous. Many new and larger buildings were constructed throughout the empire. As many as five thousand new Masajid were constructed. Uthman extended, and embellished the Al-Masjid al-Nabawi and the al-Masjid al-Haraam as well. The Muslim army was increased tremendously, guest houses were provided in main cities to provide comfort to the merchants coming from faraway places. More and more markets were constructed. In Iraq, Egypt and Persia numerous canals were dug, which stimulated agricultural development. In the cities, particular attention was directed towards the provision of the water supply. In Madinah, many wells were dug to provide drinking water for the people and in Makkah the water supply was also improved. Water was brought to Kufa and Basra by canals. Uthman established Jeddah as a new seaport. He also reformed the police departments in cities.

Economic reforms
Uthman’s businessman skills contributed a lot to the Rashidun Caliphate. Citizens were permitted to draw loans from the public treasury. The first Islamic coins were introduced being a modification of the Persian coin. The first original minting of the Islamic Dirham was done in 695 CE during Umayyad period.
Madinah to Karbala

Umar, the predecessor of Uthman was very strict in the use of money from the public treasury. Apart from the small allowance that had been sanctioned in his favour, Umar took no money from the treasury. He did not receive any gifts, nor did he allow any of his family members to accept any gift from any quarter. During the time of Uthman there was some relaxation in such strictness. Uthman did not draw any allowance from the treasury for his personal use, nor did he receive a salary, he was a wealthy man with sufficient resources of his own, but unlike Umar, Uthman accepted gifts and allowed his family members to accept gifts from certain quarters. Uthman honestly felt that he had the right to utilize the public funds according to his best judgment, and no one criticized him for that. The economic reforms introduced by Uthman had far reaching effects; Muslims as well as non-Muslims of the Rashidun caliphate enjoyed an economically prosperous life during his reign.

Administration

Umar had instructed his successor not to make any change in the administrative set up for one year after his death. Uthman maintained the pattern of political administration as it stood under Umar. After a year he made some changes. He made Egypt, which was divided into two in Umar’s reign, into one province and created a new province for Africa (Efriqya). Under Umar, Syria was divided into two provinces but Uthman made it one province. During Uthman’s reign the empire was divided into twelve provinces, Madinah, Makkah, Yemen, Kufa, Basra, Jazeera, Faris, Azerbaijan, Khorasan, Syria, Egypt, Efriqya (Africa, signifying N. Africa). The provinces were further divided into districts (more than 100 districts in the empire) and each district or main city had its own Governor, Chief Judge and Amil (tax collector). The governors were appointed by Uthman and every appointment was made in writing. At the time of appointment, an instrument of instructions was issued with a view to regulating the conduct of the governors. On assuming office, the governor was required to assemble the people in the main mosque, and read the instructions before them. Uthman appointed his family members as governors of four provinces: Egypt, Syria, Basra and Kufa. The kindest explanation for this reliance on his kin is that the Rashidun caliphate had expanded so far, so fast, that it was
Hazrath Uthman ibn al-Affan

becoming extremely difficult to govern, and Uthman felt that he could trust his own kin not to revolt against him. However some did not see this as caution; they saw it as preferential treatment. There is a law, which is always in operation in the history of mankind; wealth and power corrupts. In the process of expansion and the building up of the Islamic Empire with such a rapid pace, Muslims gained both power and wealth, and the corrupting influence of these developments on the upper strata of Muslim society soon showed. This bred a brand of hypocrites who in their quest for worldly power and wealth (dunya) lost reverence and respect for the Sahaba and Ahl al-Bayt. This had been predicted by the Holy Prophet Muhammad in the following hadith:

Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua narrates that the Holy Prophet Muhammad said: O Uthman! if Allah puts you onto the seat of Caliphate and hypocrites desire to remove the mantle of Caliphate that Allah adorned you, with from your being; then you must never remove this mantle of Caliphate'. The Holy Prophet Muhammad repeated this thrice.

[Ibn Majah has recorded this hadith].

Anti-Uthman sentiment

Uthman was not strict upon his people like Umar. Uthman focused more on economic prosperity. People became rich and independent and thus politically strong. No institutions were devised to channel political activity, and, in the absence of such institutions, the pre-Islamic tribal jealousies and rivalries, which earlier caliphs, kept in check, surfaced once more. In view of the democratic and liberal policies adopted by Uthman, the people took advantage of this freedom, which became a headache for the state, and it culminates in the assassination of Uthman.
Foreign powers became nervous at the success of the Muslims under the leadership of Uthman, and aided and abetted subversive movements within the territories of Uthman’s caliphate. According to some viewpoints, under such circumstances, leaders like Abdullah Ibn Saba, a former Jewish scholar and convert to Islam, felt that it was a good opportunity to accomplish their aims of rebellion by starting arguments over religion. However, the figure Abdullah Ibn Saba is believed by many Shia Muslims to be an imaginary one created by certain Sunni historians to stir up anti-Shia sentiment.

There was growing political agitation in the Islamic state. Political leaders in many towns campaigned against Uthman. Initially, they started with arguments over Uthman’s kinsmen, who were governors of Egypt, Basra and Kufa.

The actual reason for the anti-Uthman movement is disputed among the Shia and Sunni. Many anonymous letters were written to the leading companions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, complaining about the alleged tyranny of Uthman's appointed governors. Moreover, letters were sent to the leaders of public opinion in different provinces concerning the reported mishandling of power by Uthman’s family. This contributed to unrest in the empire and finally Uthman had to investigate the matter in an attempt to ascertain the authenticity of the rumours. The movement however exploited differences between the Hashemite (The Holy Prophet’s and Hazrat Ali’s family) and Umayyad (Uthman’s family) of Quraysh.

While Sunni Muslims believe this to be a tactic used by seditionists to overthrow the realm of Uthman, by making him lose control over the main provinces of Egypt, Syria, Kufa and Basra, where Uthman, had appointed his own kinsmen for loyalty's sake.

**Uthman’s emissaries to the provinces**

The situation was becoming tense and so the Uthmani administration had to investigate the origins and extent of anti-government propaganda and its aims. Some time around 654 CE, Uthman called all the governors of his 12 provinces to Madinah to discuss the problem. In this
Council of Governors, Uthman directed the governors that they should adopt all the measures they had suggested, to peacefully quell rebellion, according to local circumstances. Later, in the Majlis al Shura (Council of Ministers), it was suggested to Uthman that investigators should be sent to various provinces to investigate the matter and report to the Caliph. Uthman sent his agents to the main provinces. Those sent to Kufa, Basra, and Syria submitted their reports that all was well. Ammar ibn Yasir, the emissary to Egypt, however, did not return to Madinah. He joined an opposition in Egypt. These were people who felt that Uthman should step down and Ali should assume the Caliphate. They were entitled to their view in these trying times. Some historian’s record that the most prominent of these were Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr was raised in Hazrath Ali’s house. I emphasise that it is hard to record history in partisan times, because history will be recorded with sectarian bias. When Hazrath Abu Bakr passed away, Asma bint Umais, the mother of Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr, married Hazrath Ali.

Hazrath Ali reared Hazrath Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr, as one would rear his own son. Thus he would have affection for Hazrath Ali and know his high spiritual status. He had spent considerable time in Egypt and was part of the delegation that complained about the activities of the governor of Egypt to the Hazrath Uthman. The Caliph promised to dismiss the Egyptian governor and replace him with Hazrath Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr. At one stage he was led to believe that Hazrath Uthman, betrayed him (but this was actually perpetrated by Marwan ibn al-Hakam). Hazrath Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr initially was against Uthman. On learning the truth he repented and withdrew from the uprising. The history is related as follows:

A group of seven hundred Egyptians came to complain to Caliph Uthman about their Governor Ibn Abi Sarh’s tyranny, so Uthman said: "Choose someone to govern you." They chose Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr, so Uthman wrote credentials for him and they returned. On their way back, at three days’ distance from Madinah, a messenger caught up with them with the news that he carried orders from Uthman to the governor of Egypt. They searched him and found a message from
Madinah to Karbala

Uthman ibn Abu Sarh ordering the death of Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr and some of his friends. They returned to Madinah and besieged Uthman. Uthman acknowledged that the camel, the slave, and the seal on the letter belonged to him, but he swore that he had never written nor ordered the letter to be written. It was discovered that the letter had been handwritten by Marwan ibn al-Hakam.\textsuperscript{177}

In 655CE, Uthman requested the people who had any grievance against the administration to assemble at Makkah for the Hajj. He promised them that all their legitimate grievances would be redressed. The opposition came in large delegations from various cities to present their grievances before the gathering.

The rebels realized that the people in Makkah supported Uthman. It is recorded by Sunni Muslim accounts, that before returning back to Syria, the governor Muawiyah, Uthman’s cousin, suggested Uthman should come with him to Syria as the atmosphere there was peaceful. Uthman rejected his offer, saying that he didn't want to leave, Madinah, the city of the Holy Prophet Muhammad.

Protest in Madinah

After the Hajj of 655 CE, things remained quiet for some time. With the dawn of the year 656 CE, there was a campaign against the Caliphate of Uthman. When the crisis deepened in Madinah, Uthman addressed the congregation in the Masjid al-Nabawi and gave an explanation and negation of all the claims against him. The general public was again satisfied with Uthman.

Armed revolt against Uthman

The politics of Egypt played the major role in the propaganda war against the caliphate, so Uthman summoned Abdullah ibn Saad, the governor of Egypt, to Madinah to consult with him as to the course of action that should be adopted. Abdullah ibn Saad came to Madinah, and in his absence, a coup in Egypt put the rebels in power. Eventually Kufa and Basra became ungovernable.
Hazrath Uthman ibn al-Affan

Rebels in Madinah
A group of about 1000 people from Egypt was sent to Madinah, with instructions to assassinate Uthman and overthrow the government. Similar contingents marched from Kufa and Basra to Madinah. The representatives of the contingent from Egypt contacted Hazrath Ali and asked him to assume the role of Caliph in opposition to Uthman, which Ali turned down. The representatives of the group from Kufa waited on Zubayr, while the representatives of the contingent from Basra put the same proposal to Talhah. Both of them like Ali turned down the offer. In suggesting alternatives to Uthman as Caliph, the rebels neutralized the bulk of public opinion in Madinah and Uthman’s supporters could no longer offer a united front. Uthman had the active support of the Umayads, and a few other people in Madinah, but the rest of the people of Madinah chose to be neutral.

Blockade of Uthman
The situation in Madinah was advantageous to the rebels. Satisfied that the people of Madinah would not resist, they entered the city and laid siege to the house of Uthman, essentially taking it over but not confining the Caliph. They announced that anyone who does not resist them will be safe. Uthman, instructed his supporters to refrain from violence but many appealed for permission to fight against the rebels. Uthman refused to grant permission.

At first the rebels merely surrounded the house without placing any restrictions on Uthman. He led the al-Masjid al-Nabawi congregation as usual. The rebels prayed under the leadership of Uthman. The caliph addressed the people in the Masjid. Opponents criticised him, whilst supporters defended him. Tempers flared on both sides, words were exchanged and that led to the pelting of stones at one another. One of the stones hit Uthman he fell unconscious and was carried to his house unconscious.

The majority remained neutral, preferring to watch developments. The rebels took advantage of the situation by tightening the siege of the house of Uthman. Uthman was confined to his home, denied the freedom to move about and was not allowed to go to the Masjid. Gradually the
rebels intensified the pressure, forbidding the entry of any food or provisions, and later water as well, into his house.

During the siege, Uthman was asked by his supporters, who outnumbered the rebels, to let them fight against the rebels. Uthman prevented them in an effort to avoid the bloodshed of Muslim by Muslim. Unfortunately the situation turned violent. The gates of the house of Uthman were shut, by his supporters, and guarded by Abdullah ibn al-Zubayr, Imams Hasan ibn Ali and Husayn ibn Ali among others. A conflict erupted between the opponents and the supporters of Uthman at the gate, some anti-Uthman partisans were killed, and the rebels were finally pushed back.

Assassination

The rebels climbed the back wall of the house and sneaked in leaving the guards at the gate unaware of what was going on inside. The rebels entered Hazrath Uthman’s room and struck blows at his head, whilst he was reciting the Holy Qur’aan. It is recorded that his blood flowed down to the words of the Holy Qur’aan on verse 137 of the 2nd Sura al-Baqarah (the Cow):

\[
\text{فإنَّ أمنْتُوا بِمَثَلِ مَا آمنْتُم به فقد أهتدَوَا وَإِن تَولُوْا فَإِنَّما هُمُ في شِفَاقٍ فَسِيَّكُنُّهُمُ اللَّهُ وَهُوَ السَّمِيعُ الْعَلِيمُ}
\]

Then if they believe the way you have believed in Him, then they will be guided aright. And if they turn away then that they are sunk in sheer enmity. So Allah is sufficient to guard you against their evil and He is All-Hearing, All-Knowing.

According to Qadi Iyad bin Musa in *Ash-shifa bi Ta'rif Huquq al-Mustafa*, (Healing by the recognition of the Rights of the Chosen one) in the Chapter entitled: ‘The Prophets Knowledge of the Unseen and Future Events:

He said: Uthman will be killed while reciting the Qur’aan. Perhaps Allah will have him wearing a shirt [i.e. the Caliphate]. They will want to remove it and his blood will fall on his utterance of Allah’s words: "Allah is enough for you against them." (2:137).
Hazrath Uthman ibn al-Affan 🕔

[A similar narration is in Jaami at-Tirmidhi, Volume 6, Chapters on al-Manaaqib, page 380, Hadith Number 3705]

The divine words of the text shed light on this dark chapter of history. Uthman 🕔 pressed the Holy Qur’aan to his chest and blood flowed upon the sacred text. Naila 🕔 the wife of Uthman 🕔 shielded him with her body. Raising her hand to protect him she had her fingers chopped off and was pushed aside. Hazrath Uthman 🕔 was martyred. His wife was the only person with him in the house at that time. He died as a martyr on Friday, the 18th of Dhul-Hijjah 35 AH at the age of eighty two or ninety. The supporters of Uthman 🕔 counter-attacked the assassins and, in turn, killed them. The rebels maintained a presence round the house in order to prevent the dead body from being carried to the graveyard.

The Funeral
After the body of Uthman 🕔 had been in the house for three days, his wife approached some of his supporters to help in his burial. The body was lifted at dusk, was not washed, as Islamic teaching states that martyrs bodies are not washed before burial. Thus Uthman was carried to the graveyard in the clothes that he was wearing at the time of his assassination.

The Burial
The body was carried to the graveyard of Madinah (al-Jannat al-Baqi), the Muslim graveyard. Some rebels gathered there resisting the burial of Uthman 🕔 in the graveyard of the Muslims. The supporters of Uthman 🕔 insisted that the body should be buried there. They later buried him behind Jannat al-Baqi. Later on the Muslim graveyard was extended, thus his grave was inside.

Aftermath
Uthman 🕔’s martyrdom was tragic for many reasons, including the fact that he was the first Islamic caliph or leader to be killed by fellow Muslims. The relatives of the murdered Caliph fled to Makkah with vows of vengeance. A citizen of Madinah, wrapping carefully the severed fingers of Naila in the blood-stained shirt of Uthman 🕔, symbols of revenge, carried them off to Damascus, and laid them at Muawiyah 🕔’s feet. Madinah was in political chaos for a number of days. Many of the companions approached Ali 🕔 to take the role of Caliph, which he
refused to do initially. The prominent families of Madinah and other areas persuaded Ali to become Caliph, which he did in 656 CE becoming the fourth Caliph of Islam. Hazrath Ali was being pressured by the Umayads especially Hazrath Muawiyah, to punish the men who had stained their hands with the blood of Uthman. Hazrath Ali however gave priority to stabilizing the state. He was over fifty years of age. Hazrath Ali transferred his capital from Madinah to Kufa in what is now Iraq. The capital of the province of Syria, Damascus, was held by Muawiyah, the governor of Syria and a kinsman of Uthman, Ali's slain predecessor. Hazrath Muawiyah had hung the blood stained kurta of Hazrath Uthman and the severed fingers of his wife in the central mosque of Damascus to stir enmity against Hazrath Ali.

_Awliya from lineage of Uthman_

Hazrath Shaykh Jalaluddin Kabirul Awliya and Qazi Thanaullah both of Panipat are two of the most prominent.
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib

HAZRATH ALI IBN ABU TALIB

Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib reigned as Caliph from 656 CE to 661 CE/ 36 AH to 40 AH. He wore the simplest clothing, using a cobbler's knife to cut off his shirtsleeve that was too long.

The Holy Prophet Muhammad conveyed the message first of all to his blessed wife Hazrath Khadijah and to their blessed household. Hazrath Ali’s father Hazrath Abu Talib was the custodian of the Kaaba and a Chief of the Banu Hashim Family, of the Quraysh tribe. He was also a paternal uncle of the Holy Prophet Muhammad. When Hazrath Abu Talib went through hard times, financially, Hazrath Ali was taken into the blessed household of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, being reared, taught and trained there.

Born in the Kaaba

According to Traditions, Hazrath Ali was born on the 13th of Rajab about 23 years before Hijrah, within the blessed precincts of the Holy Kaaba. Hazrath Fatimah bint Asad bin Hashim, the mother of Hazrath Ali, whilst being pregnant with the blessed Hazrath Ali visited the Kaaba to perform the pilgrimage. While she was circumambulating the Kaaba, she felt the pangs of childbirth. She retired to a secluded place in the precincts of the Holy Kaaba, and there Hazrath Ali was born. Hazrath Ali has thus had the unique honour to be born in the House of Allah. Imam Haakim or Abu Abd-Allah Muhammad ibn Abd-Allah al-Hakim al-Nishapuri (d. 403 AH) was a Sunni scholar and the leading traditionalist of his age, frequently referred to as the Imam of the Muhaddithin’ says, in Al-Mustadrak alaa al-Sahihain or Mustadrak al-Hakim that the only person that was born in the Kaaba prior to this was Haakim ibn Hizaam a nephew of Hazrath Khadijah. He then states:

فُقد تواترت الأخبار أن فاطمة بنت أصد ولدت أمير المؤمنين علي بن أبي طالب كرم الله وجهه في جوف الكعبة
Madinah to Karbala

Narrations came to us by multiple transmissions that Fatimah Bint Asad gave birth to Amir al-Mu’mineen Ali ibn Abu Talib inside the Kaaba.

The narration about Haakim ibn Hizaam is mentioned in Sahih Muslim as well. [Sahih Muslim, Volume 4, The book of financial transactions, page 234, Hadith number 234]

This honour of being born, in the Kaaba had endowed Hazrath Ali with a halo of sanctity. A hundred years later, Imam Zain-ul-Abidin, a grandson of Imam Ali ibn Abu Talib (son of Hazrath Imam Husayn), met an Arab woman at Najaf who told him that her grandmother had helped Hazrath Fatimah bint Asad (the mother of Hazrath Ali) on the occasion of Hazrath Ali’s birth. She narrated that according to the account of her grandmother:

The child was beautiful; a smile played on his lips; he did not cry like other children; and his birth did not cause any pain to his mother.

When both mother and the child returned home, the Holy Prophet Muhammad, and Hazrath Khadijah came to see her newborn child. Since his birth, he had not opened his eyes, for three days, and that worried both Hazrath Fatimah bint Asad and Hazrath Abu Talib. However, when the Holy Prophet Muhammad took the child in his lap, then he opened his eyes. So the first person that Hazrath Ali saw after his birth was the Holy Prophet Muhammad. When the Holy Prophet was asked whether he approved of the child being named either Asad or Zayd, he said that since the child was born in the House of God, he should be named Ali being a derivative of an attribute of Allah - Al-Aaliyy - ‘The Exalted). Hazrath Ali had thus had the distinction of being named after Allah. No one before him had ever been so named. Furthermore, the name acquired more sanctity because it was suggested by the Holy Prophet Muhammad. The great historian, al-Mas’udi writes on page 76 of Volume II of his book, Muruj adh-dhahab wa ma’adin al-jawhar (The Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gems), that one of the greatest distinctions that Hazrath Imam Ali ibn Abi Talib
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib ﷺ

enjoyed was that he was born in the House of Allah ﷺ. Many others have recorded this incident (see footnote 183).


God have mercy upon Ali ibn Abi Talib ﷺ. He was born in the Kaaba. He witnessed the rise of Islam; he witnessed the Da’wah of Muhammad ﷺ, and he was a witness of the Wahi (Revelation of Al-Qur’aan al-Majid). He immediately accepted Islam even though he was still a child, and he fought all his life so that the Word of Allah ﷺ would be supreme.

Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlavi (February 21, 1703 - August 20, 1762)185 records the birth in the book Izalat al-Khafa’an Khilafat al-Khulfa186 (Removal of Ambiguity about the Caliphate of the Early Caliphs) giving reference from Imam Haakim’s Mustadrak quoted above.

Khwaja Sayed Muhammad Muinuddin Chishti (Ajmeri) ﷺ mentions this fact in his famous quartet:

Waqtiki Bakabah Murtaza Shood Paida;
Dar Ard U Sama Jalwa Numa Shood Paida
What a time it was, when Ali ﷺ was born in the Kaaba.
Shimmering Nur was spread right from the Earth to the Sky
Jibra’eel Za Asm’an Faru Amad U Guft;
Ai Khatmi Rusul Farzand Ba Khanai Khuda Shood Paida
Jibra’eeel appeared and proclaimed:
O Rasul ﷺ! What a blessing of Allah ﷺ that a son has been
born inside the Kaaba

Khwaja Nizamuddeen Awliya ﷺ said:

Imami Haqq Kasi Bashad Ki Dar Waqti Wiladat Au;
Bud Darri Kaaba U Kaaba Za Kafashash Dar Safa Bashad
Madinah to Karbala

Who else can be the true Imam, who at the time of his birth, was in the Kaaba and the Kaaba glorified by his steps

Maulana Jalal ad-Din Muhammad Rumi  in his Masnavi-I Ma’navi or Mathnavi meaning ‘Rhyming Couplets of Profound Spiritual Meaning’  writes,

Ai Shehnai Dashti Najaf Az Tu Najaf Dedai Sharaf;
Tu Durri U Kaaba Sadaf Mastan Salamat Mi Kund
O Emperor of Najaf! Only because of you Najaf got the honor, you are the pearl and Kaaba is the oyster, accept Salutations from your loved ones

Hazrath Imam Ali  was born within the Holy Kaaba, which is the centre of Allah’s blessings because it is here that 120 Divine Blessings descend every day, and are then distributed to the rest of the world. Rajab is a month in which the pious engage in acts of piety. It is narrated that it is the special Month of Allah and special blessings descend during that month. It is one of the four months that was honoured even in the pre-Islamic Arab culture as a month in which it was forbidden to engage in war. So the place of birth is blessed; the Month is blessed; and even the thirteenth day is a blessed day.

It was reported from Ibn Milhaan al-Qaysi from his father who said

The Messenger of Allah  ordered us to fast the days of the white days (bright nights due to full moon): the thirteenth, fourteenth and fifteenth. He  said:

“This is like fasting all the time”.

[Sunan Abu Dawud, Volume 3; The Book of Fasting, Page 176; Chapter 68, Hadith Number 2449]

My love tells me that Hazrath Imam Ali  was luminously bathed, at birth and was spiritually enabled to see the blessed face of the Holy Prophet Muhammad  first when he opened his eyes, because of whose pleasure Allah  made the Kaaba the direction of prayer (Qiblah).
First of the Forty to Accept Islam Is Hazrath Ali 

My love tells me that the newborn Hazrath Ali with his first glimpse of the blessed face accepted the Holy Prophet Muhammad. This is also confirmed by Hadith of the Holy Prophet Muhammad.

An Ansaar, Abu Hamza narrates that, 'I heard Hazrath Zayd bin Arqam say that the first to accept Islam was Hazrath Ali.'

Amr bin Murrah said: So I mentioned that to Ibrahim an-Nakhai, so he rejected that and said: ‘The first to accept Islam was Abu Bakr Siddique.’

[Jaami at-Tirmidhi, Volume 6, Chapters on al-Manaaqib (Virtues); page 402, Hadith number 3735]

Imam Tirmidhi classified it Hasan Sahih

There is also another Hadith in the collection of Imam Tirmidhi (209 AH - 279 AH):

Ibn Abbas said: The first to perform salaat was Ali...Some of the People of Knowledge said that the first to accept Islam amongst men was Abu Bakr As-Siddique; and Ali accepted Islam when he was a boy of eight years; and the first accept Islam amongst women was Khadijah.

[Jaami at-Tirmidhi, Volume 6, Chapters on al-Manaaqib (Virtues); page 401, Hadith number 3734]

Some of the great scholars have stated the first to accept Islam was Khadijah bint Khuwaylid, whilst others have stated it was Sayyidina Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique, and others say the first was Sayyidina Hazrath Ali. There are some who say the first was Sayyidina Hazrath
Zayd ibn Harithah ☪. There is a difficulty in recording some aspects of history but our Muhaddithin have resolved this particular aspect, as to who was the first believer, admirably. They have recorded Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ☪, as being the first male adult; Hazrath Ali ☪ as the first minor; Hazrath Khadijah ☪ the first female adult; Hazrath Zaid ☪ as the first slave to accept Islam. Amongst these five who preceded the other cannot be ascertained. Thus among the first of the forty to accept Islam is Hazrath Ali ☪ and the fortieth is Sayyidina Hazrath Umar ibn al-Khattab ☪.

When the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪ reported that he had received a divine revelation, Ali ☪, then only about ten years old, believed him and announced his acceptance of Islam. Ali ☪’s grandfather, Abd al-Mutallib, along with some members of the Banu Hashim clan, were Hunafa, followers of a monotheism, prior to the coming of Islam. They never took part in any pre-Islamic Makkkan traditional religious rites, regarded by Muslims as polytheistic (shirk) or paganistic. It will be discussed under the section of Abu Talib ☪ how the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪ invited his family to accept Islam and the young Hazrath Ali ☪ was the first to respond. We also discussed how Hazrath Ali ☪ had put his life on the line for the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪. During the persecution of Muslims and boycott of the Banu Hashim in Makkah, Ali ☪ stood firmly in support of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪.

**Migration to Madinah**

In 622 CE, in the year of the migration to Yathrib (now Madinah), Ali ☪ risked his life by sleeping in the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪’s bed to impersonate him and ruin an assassination plot so that the Holy Prophet ☪ could migrate in safety. This event has a great spiritual relevance. Imam Fakhruddin Razi says in his *Tafsir Kabir* (vol. II, page 189) that this verse was expressly revealed in recognition of Ali ☪’s great and glorious service on the night of Hijrah. Allah ☪ says in the 2nd Sura *al-Baqarah* (the Cow) in verse 207:

وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَنْ يُشْرِي نَفْسَهُ إِنَّعَا مَرْضَاتَ اللَّهِ وَاللَّهُ رَؤُوفٌ بِالْعِبَادِ
And among people there is also someone who sells even his life to attain the pleasure of Allah. And Allah is Most Kind to the servants.

The Holy Prophet had asked Ali to settle all unpaid loans of the migrants and returned all valuables deposited with the Holy Prophet to their owners. The pagans of Makkah opposed Islam, yet they trusted the Holy Prophet. They left valuables with him knowing he was truthful and honest. He was their ‘banker’. Hazrath Ali said:

I slept so soundly that night as I had never slept in all my life, for the Holy Prophet Muhammad said: ‘Allah has ordered me to go to Yathrib. You sleep in my bed and tomorrow return all the deposits of the Makkans to them.’

Thus I knew I will definitely wake up safe in the morning.

Ali risked his life again by staying in Makkah to carry out the Holy Prophet’s instructions. Hazrath Ali then migrated to Madinah with his mother, the Holy Prophet’s daughter Fatimah and two other women. If Hijrah had failed, the State of Madinah would never have come into existence. The State of Madinah was the physical representation of the first and the last Kingdom of Heaven on Earth. Allah made His slaves, Ali ibn Abi Talib and Abu Bakr Siddique the instrument’s through whom He put that Kingdom on this earth. Thus from these personalities flowed four rivers of spirituality, the Qadri, Chishti, and Suharwardi from Ali and the Naqshbandi from Abu Bakr. This lineage also indirectly connects to Hazrath Ali, via Imam Jaafar as-Saadiq, who is the great grandson of Imam Husayn. Imam Jaafar as-Saadiq’s mother Umm Farwah bint Qaasim ibn Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr is the great-great-granddaughter of Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique.

**Life in Madinah**

Ali was 22 or 23 years old when he migrated to Madinah. When the Holy Prophet Muhammad was creating bonds of brotherhood among his companions, he selected Ali as his brother. This was again a significant gesture pointing to the Spiritual Caliphate. For the ten years that the Holy Prophet Muhammad led the community in Madinah, Ali was extremely active in his service as his secretary and deputy,
serving in his armies, the bearer of his banner in every battle, leading parties of warriors on raids, and carrying messages and orders.

**The Marriage of Ali to Fatimah the Bonding of Two Spiritual Oceans**

In 623 CE the Holy Prophet Muhammad informed Ali that Allah ordered him to give his daughter Fatimah Zahra to Ali in marriage. Allah says in the Holy Qur'aan, in the 55th Sura, ar-Rahmaan (Most Affectionate), verse 19 to 21:

{ مَرَجَ الْبَحْرَٰتِينَ بَعْظِيَانَ {19} بِيَّنَهُمَا يَرْزَحُ لَا يَبْعَيْيَانَ {20}
فَبَأَيْنَآ أَلَا رَبُّكُمَا نَكْذِبُبَانَ {21} يَرْزَحُ مَنْ يَهْمِيُّ الْلُّؤْلُؤَ {22}
وَالْمَرْجَانُ {22} فَبَأَيْنَآ أَلَا رَبُّكُمَا نَكْذِبُبَانَ {23}}

He is the One who has made the two bodies of water flow and join each other; There is a barrier between them; they cannot breach (their respective) limits. So which of your Lord’s blessings will you both deny? The pearls (shading green) and corals (shading red) come forth from both (the seas). So which of your Lord’s blessings will you both deny?

Hazrath Abdullah ibn Masood, a prominent companion of the Holy Prophet reports that the Holy Prophet:

**Unzilla alal Qur’aanu ala sabati akruk**

The Holy Qur’aan descended with seven variants in recitation and translation

**Wa li kulli harfin minha zahrun wa batalun**

Every letter has an external and internal connotation

**Wa inna Ali yabne Abi Talibin indahu minaz zahire wa batin**

The external and internal meaning of every letter and word in the Holy Qur’aan is known to Hazrath Ali. From that treasure house of internal knowledge (Marifah), Hazrath Ali, the door to the city of Knowledge, the Holy Prophet Muhammad. He is the door to the wisdom of the Holy Prophet. He who wants to acquire the treasure has to go via the door. He who seeks to enter the
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib ﷺ

Treasure house by any other means, besides the door, is an intruder or thief. Taking a few droplets from that treasure house, we attempt to translate this verse, with reference to Imam Jalaluddeen Al-Suyuti (849 AH/1445-1505 CE) in Al-Durr Al-Manthur Fi Tafsir Bil-Ma’thur (The Scattered Pearls) quoting hadith as reported by ibn Abbas ﷺ and Anas bin Malik ﷺ.

Arabic Reference:

وأخبر ابن مروءة عن ابن عباس في قوله: مَرَّ جَ الْبَحْرَيْنِ بَنَبْقِيَانِ.

Urudu Reference

آمام ابن ماردیا ﷺ کا ذیل است کہ آپ ابن عباس ﷺ کے پریکش میں میں رائعت را سے جلی جاگیں ئے مَرَّ جَ الْبَحْرَیْنِ بَنَبْقِیَانُ.

English Translation

Imam ibn Marduya ﷺ has reported the following statement from Hazrath Ibn Abbas ﷺ: ‘the two oceans’ refers to Hazrath Ali ﷺ and Hazrat Fatimah ﷺ. And in ‘Coral and pearls’ is in reference to Imam Hasan ﷺ and Imam Husayn ﷺ, the two princes. 

Allah ﷺ says:

مَرَّ جَ الْبَحْرَيْنِ بَنَبْقِیَانِ

Two oceans met and flowed. They met as they ought to have met. No more they remained two, becoming one but a barrier in between.
stabilizes them so that one does not overawe the other. So they flow in equitable proportion. Then Allah ﷺ questions as to which of the favours of Allah ﷺ will we reject? Allah ﷺ then says:

یَخْرُجُ مِّنْهَا الْوَلُوْدُ وَالْمَرْجَانُ

When these two bodies of water met and flowed, then out of it came pearls and corals. Again Allah ﷺ questions as to which of the favours of Allah ﷺ will we reject? Let me speak briefly on pearl and coral. The pearl is cultivated within the clam being shaped by the effect of the waves of the flow of the water. Examine a pearl. If you see a green hue within it then it is a genuine pearl. If the green hue is not within then know that it is an imitation. As for coral it is has a reddish colour. A green pearl and a red coral resulted from the meeting of the two bodies of water.

What are those two bodies of water? What is the barrier in between the bodies of water? What does pearl and coral refer to? The meeting of the two bodies of water in general translation and exposition of the Holy Qur'an then it is written that it refers to a body of salty water and a body of sweet water. I feel that salty and sweet is symbolic. Salty is symbolic of strength whilst sweet is symbolic of delicate and refined. Salt makes water heavy and it displays force. Sweet water displays refinement and gentleness. One body of water is that of authoritative power (shahja’at) and intimacy with Allah ﷺ (wilaayat) whilst the other body of water is that of nobility (ismat) and purity (tahaarat). The water of authority (shuhja’at) and intimate friendship (wilaayat) is Hazrath Ali ﷺ whilst the other body of water is that of nobility (ismat) and purity (tahaarat) is Hazrath Fatimah ﷺ. Now the meeting of two bodies of water can be conceived in its spiritual connotation. The barrier in between that acts as a bond yet maintains the flow of the independence of the oceans is the bonding relationship of marriage (nikah). They were not joined in the bond of nikah in this temporal world but Allah ﷺ performed their nikah in the heavens and the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ on earth.

Let us concentrate on the ocean of nobility (ismat) and purity (tahaarat), Hazrath Fatimah Zahra ﷺ. The books recording the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ's traditions (Ahadith) expounding the status of Hazrath
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib

Fatimah Zahra are many be it Bukhari or Muslim; Tirmidhi or Nasa’i; Abu Da’ud or Ibn Majah; or any other. It is narrated by Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua, and many other companions that when the leader of the women of the world (Sayida-e-kaayinaat), Hazrath Fatimah Zahra used to come to the Holy Prophet Muhammad the Holy Prophet used to stand out of love for her, take her hand in his hand, kiss it out of affection and make her sit on his place of sitting. Hazrath Fatimah Zahra mirrored the actions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad in her talking, walking, standing, speaking and her every mannerism reflected the character of the Holy Prophet Muhammad. People who saw her blessed face said she resembled the Holy Prophet. I am deliberately handpicking the traditions and their narrators to dispel the disease of suspicion against certain prominent companions, questioning their love for ahl al-Bayt.

The following Hadith has been narrated by Hazrath Umar Faruq and personal research has not come up with this being narrated by any other companion other than the son of Hazrath Umar Faruq, Hazrath Abdullah bin Umar. Whenever the companions addressed the Holy Prophet and were hopeful of securing favour from him, they affectionately exclaimed:

‘May my father and mother be sacrificed for you, O Messenger of Allah!’

It is recorded by Imam ash-Shawkani (1759-1834 C.E/ 1173-1250 AH) in Darr-us-sahabah fi manaqib al-qarabah was-sahabah (p.279) and Imam Hakim narrated it in al-Mustadrak. Hazrath Umar Faruq says one day he heard the Holy Prophet Muhammad speaking to Hazrath Fatimah Zahra and the Holy Prophet said:

"عن عمر بن الخطاب رضي الله عنه: أن النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم قال لفاطمة: فداك أبي و أمي"

Umar bin Khattab narrates that the Holy Prophet used to say to Fatimah:
“My mother and father be sacrificed for you.”
This is the love reflected by the Holy Prophet ﷺ for Hazrath Fatimah az-Zahra ﷺ.

It has been repeatedly mentioned in numerous books of Ahadith that on the Day of Reckoning, when the court of Allah ﷺ will be in session, a divine voice will proclaim, that the highest respect be shown to Hazrath Fatimah ﷺ, the daughter of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ:

وعلى بني الله ﷺ، قال: قال النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم: إذا كان يوم القيامة، قيل: يا أهل الجمع! غضوا أبصاركم لتمر فاطمة بنت رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم فتمر وعليها ريطتان حضراءوان.
قال أبو مسلم: قال لي أبو قلابة وكان معنا عبد الحميد أنه قال: حمراوان.

Ali ﷺ narrates that the Holy Prophet ﷺ said:

"On the Day of Judgement it will be said, ‘Oh people of mahshar! Lower your gazes so that the daughter of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ may pass.’ She will pass through wearing two green garments.”

Abu Muslim said that when Abd-ul-Hameed was with us, Qalabah told me that the Holy Prophet ﷺ said, “(Fatimah ﷺ will pass wearing) two red garments.”

It is reported that Hazrath Fatimah Zahra ﷺ will be escorted, with great honour, by seventy thousand damsels of Heaven (houries).
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib

Ali narrates that the Holy Prophet said, “On the Day of Resurrection my daughter will be raised wearing the dress of honour washed in the ‘Water of Life’. The whole creation will be amazed on seeing her. Then she will be given the dress of Paradise, each layer comprising of a thousand layers. Each layer will read in green, ‘Take the daughter of Muhammad to Paradise in the best form, great dignity, high esteem and deep respect.’ She will be beautified like a bride and will be taken to Paradise surrounded by seventy thousand hurs (beautiful women of Paradise).”

The two oceans were united with the bond of nikah in heaven and on Earth. Many sahaaba have reported that the Holy Prophet said:

Ali narrates that the Messenger of Allah said, “An angel came to me and said: Oh Muhammad, Allah sends peace upon you and says, ‘I have had your daughter married to Ali bin Abu Talib in the Upper Heavens and now you also arrange the marriage ceremony of Fatimah with Ali on earth.’”

This is similar to people who are resident in two different cities and host a feast to celebrate the marriage with friends and colleagues in both cities. Hazrath Ali and Hazrath Fatimah Zahra are residents of this temporal realm (farsh) and the heavenly ream (arsh) thus, two nikahs were performed. Hazrath Jibra’eeel had informed that the sermon of nikah
Madinah to Karbala

on the heavenly ream was performed by him and the guests were all the beings of the heavens. Forty thousand angels had attended. The nikah on earth had been performed by the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.

Thus the bonding of the two spiritual oceans had taken place. The ocean of authority (shuhja’at) and intimate friendship (wilaayat) and the ocean of nobility (ismat) and purity (tahaarat) had met. This divine bond produced a pearl and a coral. A green hue can be seen emanating from a genuine pearl when it is held to the light. The green hue of the pearl is symbolic of the poison that ushered Imam Hasan ﷺ, to the realm of Divine Beauty thus the pearl symbolizes Imam Hasan ﷺ. Coral is red in colour. The red of the coral is symbolic of the blood of Martyrdom that ushered Imam Husayn ﷺ; to the realm of Divine Beauty thus the coral symbolizes Imam Husayn ﷺ.

According to some scholars Ali ﷺ was twenty-one years old at the time of marriage, while Fatimah ﷺ was sixteen years old. Other scholars say Ali ﷺ was 25 years old at the time of marriage and Fatimah ﷺ was about 20 years old at the time of marriage. The Holy Prophet ﷺ asked Hazrath Ali ﷺ if he had any possessions to bear the cost of marriage. He said that he has a sword and a shield. The Holy Prophet ﷺ instructed him to keep the sword and sell the shield. He was told to sell the shield and purchase necessities for the marriage. Hazrath Uthman ﷺ arrived and secured Ali ﷺ’s word that he would accept whatever offer he made for the shield. He bought the shield from Hazrath Ali ﷺ and he gave Hazrath Ali ﷺ eight times the market value of the sword. When Hazrath Ali ﷺ objected that this was too much, he reminded him of his promise to accept whatever was given. Hazrath Uthman ﷺ asked Hazrath Ali ﷺ if he was aware of the Holy Prophet ﷺ saying that one must not refuse a gift. Hazrath Ali ﷺ said he was aware. Hazrath Uthman ﷺ now said that he is giving him the shield as a gift. This was the love and service of Hazrath Uthman, therefore Allah ﷺ says of him in the Holy Qur’aan, in the 48th Sura, al-Fath (Victory) ﷺ: Verse 29:

الْفَتُحُ: فِي هَمِّهِمْ ۖ ۖ

232
Lovingly, compassionate to one another

Allah says these companions are always compassionate to one another.

Hazrath Bilaal was asked by the Holy Prophet Muhammad to bring some perfume (itr) and a few other things and Hazrath Anas was sent to call Hazrath Abu Bakr, Hazrath Uthman, Hazrath Talhah, Hazrath Zubayr with some companions from the Ansaar. The nikah was performed by the Holy Prophet Muhammad. The Holy Prophet declared:

‘... in obedience to the Will of Allah I perform the marriage ceremony of Fatimah with Ali, and ask you to bear witness that I have given Fatimah in marriage to Ali against a dower of 400 pieces of silver coin. May Allah create love between the pair, bless them, purify their offspring, make their progeny a mine of wisdom, and a source of Allah’s blessing and solace to the believers in faith.’

Hazrath Fatimah was sent to Hazrath Ali’s house with a simple but spiritual farewell accompanied by Umm Ayman, the Muslim Abyssinian companion, who was called Barakah. The Holy Prophet Muhammad referred to her as 'my mother after my own mother'. After the isha Salaat, the Holy Prophet Muhammad went to their house, asked for a basin of water, put his blessed hands into it and sprinkled it on both Ali and Fatimah and put their foreheads together and said:

I put you and your children in the care of Allah, so that He may save you from Satan.

The Holy Prophet gave them as a gift, a silver bracelet, two Yemeni sheets, four mattresses, one blanket, one pillow, one cup, one hand-grinding mill, one bed, a small water skin and a leather jug for wudhu. I implore you to ponder on the simplicity of the marriage. The Sunnah is to have a simple wedding but we have fallen prey to societal pressure and vanity.

The following day the Holy Prophet Muhammad asked Hazrath Ali if he had the means to hold a walima (wedding feast). Hazrath Ali said he had a goat. The Holy Prophet Muhammad asked him to cook it but after it has been cooked he should not open the pot, for many
Madinah to Karbala

guests would come to partake in the feast. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ made wudhu from water in a vessel and put the wudhu water in the pot. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ then made dua:

اللهُمَّ بَارِكُ فِيهِمَا وَبَارِكْ عَلَيْهِمَا وَبَارِكْ فِي نَسْلِهِمَا

O Allah ﷺ! Shower your blessings on these two (Ali and Fatimah); and blessings for them; and their entire progeny (all generations).

Thus all descendants of the Sayyid family have been blessed. The Hadith is as follows.

عن بريدة رضي الله عنه، قال: فلما كان ليلة البناء قال: يا علي! لا تحدث شيئا حتى تلقان، فدعا النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم يماء فتوضأ منه ثم أفرغه على علي، فقال: اللهم! بارك فيهما وبارك عليهما وبارك لهما في نسلهما.

واللهُمَّ وَبَارِكُ فِيهِمَا وَبَارِكْ عَلَيْهِمَا وَبَارِكْ فِي نَسْلِهِمَا.

Buraidah ﷺ narrates that the Holy Prophet ﷺ on the night of Ali ﷺ and Fatimah’s wedding, said to Ali ﷺ, “Do not do anything without consulting me.” Then he ﷺ asked for water and performed ablution. He ﷺ then sprinkled the remaining water on Ali ﷺ and said, “Oh Allah ﷺ! Bless their relationship, shower them with blessings and bless both of them regarding their children.”

In another narration also narrated by Buraidah ﷺ the words are:

“Bless both of them regarding their coming generations.”

Thereafter the walima was held.

The marriage of Ali ﷺ and Fatimah ﷺ had been performed in the Heavens in accordance with the order of Allah ﷺ because the Wilaya of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ had to continue with Ali ﷺ and the pure lineage through him and Fatimah ﷺ.
The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ stated that Imam Ali ﷺ is the wali of all believers after the Holy Prophet ﷺ:

إن عليا مني وأنا منه وهو ولي كل مؤمن بعدي

Verily, Ali ﷺ is from me and I am from Ali ﷺ, and he is the Master of the believers after me.

This hadith is evidence that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s nur wilaya is continued through Ali ﷺ and Ali ﷺ was created from the essence of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ or nur! Both of them were created from one Light.

حداثنا عبد الرزاق عن معمر عن الزهري عن خالد بن

معدان عن زادان عن سلمان، قال: قال رسول الله ﷺ

كنت أنا وعلي بن أبي طالب نوراً بين يدي الله تعالى قبل

أن خلق آدم بأربعة آلاف عام فلم يخلق آدم قسم ذلك النور

جزئين فجزء أنا وجزء علي، وفي روایة خلقت أنا وعلي من

نور واحد

Salman al-Farsi ﷺ narrated that:

I heard the Messenger of Allah ﷺ saying:

‘I and Ali ﷺ were one light in the hands of Allah ﷺ fourteen thousand years before He created Adam ﷺ. When Allah ﷺ created Adam ﷺ He divided that light into two parts, one part is me and one part Ali ﷺ.’

According to Jawahir al-Maani, Sidna Shaykh Mawlana Shaykh Abil Abbas Tijani ﷺ records:

The Holy Prophet ﷺ said: ‘We were, me and Ali, two lights before Allah ﷺ and then He left us in the loin of Adam ﷺ and kept moving us from loin to loin until we reached our
Madinah to Karbala

grandfather Abd al-Muttalib. Then I moved to the loin of Abdullah and he moved to those of Abu Talib. Then, our light reunited in Al-Hasan and Al-Husayn: they are in fact two lights of the light of the Lord of the worlds’.

Remember that Fatimah has been declared by the Holy Prophet Muhammad to be a part of his essence.

Fatimah is a part of my essence

Thus a special family was conceived from this marriage. As Imam Ahmad Raza Khan beautifully stated:

Tere nasle paak meh heh bacha bacha nur ka
Tu heh ain nur tera sab gharana nur ka
In your lineage every child is light manifest
You are Divine Light manifest; your entire household is light

Family Life

Prior to the marriage of Ali and Fatimah, Fatimah lived at the house of Hazrath Ayub Ansari with her blessed father. After the marriage the Holy Prophet Muhammad asked Hazrath Ali to acquire a house. Hazrath Ali acquired a house that was a little distance away from the house of the Holy Prophet. While the urban layout of the city during this period is difficult to determine precisely, it was about the size of about the present Masjid of the Holy Prophet Muhammad. After Hazrath Ali and Fatimah settled in their home the Holy Prophet Muhammad could not bear the separation from his beloved Fatimah. He asked Hazrath Fatimah if it was possible to relocate her house near his home. There was a companion Hazrath Haritha bin Numan al-Ansari. The Holy Prophet’s houses were on land belonging to Hazrath Haritha. Whenever the Holy Prophet would get married Haritha would give him some land as a gift. When the Holy Prophet requested that Hazrath Fatimah relocate she replied that there was no house nearby his blessed house, but since Hazrath Haritha lived next to him, he could request that Hazrath Haritha
exchange houses with them. The Holy Prophet Muhammad said to Fatimah that he was too embarrassed to ask from Haritha land for Fatimah. Somebody overheard this conversation and reported it to Haritha. Haritha came to the Holy Prophet Muhammad and during the conversation casually asked the Holy Prophet:

Do you not miss your daughter Fatimah?

The Holy Prophet Muhammad knew what was being implied and said:

Yes, but I am too embarrassed to ask because you have given us so much

Haritha fell at the feet of the Holy Prophet Muhammad and emotionally exclaimed,

**Innama anna, wa maali lillahi wa rasulih**

I (my life) and my belongings belong to Allah and His Messenger

He went on to say:

By Allah, the land that I give to you is more beloved to me then the land that I keep with me, so take this piece of land for them.

The Holy Prophet Muhammad said,

**Sadaqa** (You have spoken the truth)

Allah has given you in return a palace in Paradise.

Hazrath Haritha then exchanged houses with Hazrath Ali. The house was next to the house of the Holy Prophet Muhammad. It is mentioned in hadith that there was only a courtyard of two meters separating the two houses. From the two windows; facing each other, between the house of the Holy Prophet and Hazrath Fatimah, the Holy Prophet used to look at his beloved daughter and his two grandsons, Imam Hasan and Imam Husayn. These two windows which faced each other, actually symbolized two hearts which open onto each other in atunement, the heart of the greatest father and the heart of the greatest daughter. Each morning they open onto each other, exchanging salutations and love. It is also mentioned in Hadith that when the Holy Prophet Muhammad left home for the *fajr salaah* he stood at the door of Hazrath Fatimah and called out:

الصلاة! يا أهل البيت (O ‘people
of the house’, perform your prayer”) and recited the The Verse of Purity (Ayat at tathir).

It is also mentioned that the Holy Prophet ﷺ visited the house of Hazrath Fatimah ﷺ before commencing a journey and he visited her house on his return, before going back to his own home.

"Oh Fatimah! My mother and father be sacrificed for you." ²⁰⁴

This love and nigah of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ developed Hazrath Fatimah ﷺ as the owner of the values of her father, the inheritor of all the honours of her family. She is the continuation of the chain of great ancestors and great successors. The link from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in this chain of Divine justice, the rightful chain of truth is Fatimah ﷺ.


Theirs was a simple life of hardship and deprivation. Hazrath Ali ﷺ remained materially poor working as a drawer and carrier of water.
Hazrat Ali ibn Ali Talib

Hazrat Fatimah worked as a grinder of corn. Often there was no food in their house. One day she said to Ali:

I have ground corn until my hands have blistered.

Hazrat Ali replied:

I have drawn water until I have pains in my chest.

The State had acquired wealth together with many male and female servants, as booty, after a battle which The Holy Prophet was going to distribute. Hazrat Ali told Hazrat Fatimah that she must to her blessed father and request that he give them a female servant to help them. She went home of the Holy Prophet, but he was not at home when she got there. She told Hazrat Ayesha Siddiqua as to why she came and she replied that most surely her father would give her a servant. Hazrat Ayesha Siddiqua told Hazrat Fatimah to go home and she would present the request to The Holy Prophet and motivate him to fulfil her request. When Hazrat Ayesha Siddiqua presented the request to the Holy Prophet he immediately went to the house of Hazrat Fatimah and told her that he would give her something better than her request. He told her that after every prayer and before sleeping she should recite 33 times, Glorious is Allah (Subhanallah); 33 times, Praise be to Allah (Alhamdulillah) and 34 times, Allah is the Greatest (Allahu Akbar). He told her that this was better than what she had requested and left. Mothers and sisters ponder. He did not give a servant as requested to his most beloved daughter, the leader of the women of paradise, but he gave her an extra duty to perform. Hazrat Fatimah did not display any displeasure or anger. She accepted her father’s wish. He could not give her a servant because he came as a guide to even the poor ladies, who could not afford servants, so he wants her to be an example to them and serve as solace for them. I say, that he did not give her a servant because they were not worthy of her since angels and damsels of paradise would serve her.

It was a hot day in the month of Ramadaan and the Holy Prophet sent Umme Ayman on an errand to Hazrat Fatimah. It was noon and she found the door locked. She peeped into the house and saw a fasting Bibi Fatimah sleeping. She was amazed that the grinding stone was grinding on its own and the cradle of Imam Hasan and Husayn was
Madinah to Karbala

rocking on its own. Umm Ayman  returned to the Holy Prophet ﷺ and reported as to what she had seen. The Holy Prophet ﷺ replied that Fatimah ﷺ is loved by Allah ﷺ, so He induced sleep on her fasting body and sent angels to do her household chores.

In that age manual labour was used. It was not this mechanized age that we live in. Today we have many comforts yet our ladies have no time to perform their salaah. Hazrath Fatimah ﷺ used to do all her housework, yet Hazrath Imam Hasan ﷺ reports; ‘I have seen my mother on many occasions so absorbed in optional devotions after Isha salaah that she used to be absorbed in prayer till the fajr azaan.’ At night after putting her children to bed she used to go to her musalla and prior to the beginning of the Fajr Salaah, she used to perform 1000 cycles of nafil (voluntary) salaah. She lengthened the last sajda until she heard the adhan of fajr. After the adhan she used to take a deep breath and exclaim:

O My Allah ﷺ you have made such short evenings that I could not prostrate enough to fulfil my duty to You.

Is it not logical that such a devoted household should bear children that would preserve thedeen of Islam by sacrificing their lives?

Their marriage lasted until Fatimah ﷺ’s was ushered into the realm of Divine Beauty, ten years later. Although polygamy was permitted, Ali ﷺ did not marry another woman while Fatimah ﷺ was alive, and his marriage to her possesses a special spiritual significance for all Muslims because it is seen as the marriage between two great figures surrounding the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. After Fatimah ﷺ’s passing, Ali ﷺ married other wives and fathered many children.

Military Career

With the exception of the Battle of Tabuk, Ali ﷺ took part in all battles and expeditions fought for Islam. Ali ﷺ used a bifurcated sword known as Zulfiqar ﺍﻟﻔﻘﺎﺭ ﺫﻭ. It was Arab custom that swords were given names. This sword was a gift to Ali ﷺ from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Imam Husayn ibn Ali ﷺ used Zulfiqar at Karbala.
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib

La fattah illa Ali, la saif illa Zulfikaar
In the Battle of Badr, at the peak of the battle, whilst Hazrath Ali displayed his God given bravery, a voice from the unseen used to pronounce:

لا فتي إلا علي لا سيف إلا ذو الفقار

La fattah illa Ali, la saif illa Zulfikaar
There is none brave like Ali and there is no sword like Zulfikaar

These are the words of Hadith. Someone has added this line to this verse.

Shah-e-Mardaa’n, Shere-Yazdaa’n, Kuwat-e-Par’wardegaar
La fattah illa Ali, la saif illa Zulfikaar
A King amongst men, a lion possessing Divine Strength
There is none brave like Ali and there is no sword like Zulfikaar

The Conqueror of Khyber
About a hundred miles from Madinah on the route to Syria was a settlement of the Jews called Khyber. ‘Khyber’ means a fort and the place consisted of many forts occupied by the Jews. After being expelled from Madinah, most of the Jews of Banu Qainuqa and Banu Nadir took refuge in Khyber. They planned an invasion of Madinah. The Holy Prophet led a Muslim army to Khyber. The Jews ostentatiously said that their forts were impenetrable. Hazrath Ali carried the heavy door of the fort of Khyber with his hands and the Muslim Army seized the fort. When the fort had been conquered, forty men tried to lift the door and they failed. They asked him:

O Ali! How did you carry this door?

He replied:

‘I did not carry it with my physical strength, but I carried it with Divine Strength.’

The ruins of this fort are still to be seen. The fort is on a hill. The Jews locked themselves within the safety of the fort on this height. They placed heavy rocks against the locked door, so that the door may not open. After numerous attacks the Muslims failed to conquer the fort. The
Madinah to Karbala

Holy Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Tomorrow we will give the flag to a man who will conquer Khyber205.’ He did not name the person but said:

يَحْبُبُ اللَّهُ وَرَسُولُهُ أَوْ قَالَ يَحْبُبُ اللَّهُ وَرَسُولُهُ

He loves Allah ﷺ and His Messenger or Allah ﷺ and His Messenger love him

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 4, The Book of Jihad, Chapter 121, Page 139, Hadith Number 2975]

This statement of the Holy Prophet ﷺ proves that Hazrath Ali ﷺ is loved by Allah ﷺ and His Messenger. Allah ﷺ says:

عَنْ أَبِي هُرَيْرَةَ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهُ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ إِنَّ اللَّهَ قَالَ مِنْ عَادِي لِي وَلَيْبًا فَقَدْ آتِئتُ بِالْحَرَّبِ وَمَا تَقْرَبَ إِلَى عَبْدِي بَشَيْءٍ أَحْبَبْ إِلَيْهِ مَا افْتَرَضْتُ عَلَيْهِ وَمَا يُزَاَلُ عَبْدِي يَتَقْرَبُ إِلَيْ بِالْتَوَافِلِ حَتَّى أَحْبَبْهُ فَإِذَا أَحْبَبْهُ كَنَّتَ سَمَعَهُ الَّذِي يَسْمَعُ بِهِ وَبَصَرُ الَّذِي يُصَرُّ بِهِ وَيَدِ الَّتِي يَبْطَشُ بِهَا وَرَجْلُ الَّتِي يُمْشِي بِهَا وَإِنَّ سَأَلَنِي لَأَعْطِيَهُ وَلَنَّ اسْتَعْدَانِي لِأَعْيُذَتُهُ وَمَا تَرْدِدُ ذَكْرَةَ عَنْ شَيْءٍ أَنَا فَاعَلَهُ تَرْدِدُ ذَكْرَةً عَنْ

نَفْسِ الْمُؤْمِنِ يَكْرِهُ الْمَوْتَ وَأَنَا أَكْرِهُ مَسَاءَتُهُ

Narrated Abu Huraira ﷺ: The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: “Allah ﷺ said, ‘I will declare war against him who shows hostility to an Intimate Friend of Mine.’ And the most beloved things with which My slave comes nearer to Me, is what I have made necessary upon him; and My slave keeps on coming closer to Me through performing Nawafil (praying or doing extra deeds besides what is obligatory) till I love him, so I become his faculty of hearing with which he hears, and his faculty of sight with which he sees, and his hand with which he grasps, and his leg with which he walks; and if he asks Me, I will give him, and if he asks My protection (Refuge), I will
Protect him; (i.e. give him My Refuge) and I do not hesitate to do anything as I hesitate to take the soul of the believer, for he hates death, and I hate to disappoint him."

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 8, The Book of Ar-Riqaaq, Chapter 38, Page 275, Hadith Number 6502]

Note Allah ﷻ says:

وَيَدَّهُ الَّذِي يَبْطَشُ بِهَا

He whom I love... I become his hand with which he grasps...

In the light of the above understand what Hazrath Ali ﷺ said. He said:

'I did not carry the door of the fort of Khyber with my physical strength (quwwate jismani), but I carried it with Divine Strength (quwwate Rabbani).'

It was the hand of Ali ﷺ but the strength of Allah ﷻ that carried the door. The Holy Prophet ﷺ had given this news to the companions, without naming the person, so the companions spent the whole night in expectation. They could not wait for the day to dawn, to see who that fortunate person would be who will be given the flag by the Holy Prophet ﷺ and he would be the conqueror of Khyber. The next day the companions were gathered in front of the Holy Prophet ﷺ, looking at him with expectation, that he may utter the name of the fortunate one. The Holy Prophet ﷺ asked:

فَقَالَ أَيُّهَا الْ أَلِيَ عَلِيٌّ

Where is Ali the son of Abu Talib?

The Holy Prophet ﷺ was told that Ali ﷺ’s eyes were swollen due to an infection, too such an extent that he could not move about easily. The Holy Prophet ﷺ did not change his nomination, but ordered that Ali ﷺ be brought to him. Hazrath Ali ﷺ was brought to the Holy Prophet ﷺ and the Holy Prophet ﷺ seated him in front of him and applied his blessed saliva into the eyes of Hazrath Ali ﷺ. Listen to the words of the Hadith:

قَبِضَ فِي عَيْنِهِ

The Holy Prophet ﷺ spat into both the eyes of Hazrath Ali ﷺ
He was immediately cured

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 4, The Book of Jihad, Chapter 102, Page 125, Hadith Number 2942]

Hazrath Ali reported that he could not say for sure if the blessed saliva reached his eye first or his eye got cured before the blessed saliva could reach it. He said that for the rest of his physical life he never suffered with an ailment of the eye.

After this battle the Holy Prophet Muhammad gave Ali the name ‘Lion of Allah’ (Asadullah).

Service for Islam

Ali was one of the scribes who would write down the text of the Qur'aan. As Islam began to spread throughout Arabia, many Sahaba including Ali helped establish the new Islamic order. Ali wrote the Treaty of Hudaibiya, a peace treaty between Muslims and the Quraysh in 628 CE. Ali carried most of the messages and orders of the Holy Prophet Muhammad to the various tribes and provinces. In 630 CE, Ali recited to a large gathering of pilgrims in Makkah the portion of the Qur'aan that declared the Islamic community were no longer bound by agreements made earlier with Arab polytheists. During the Conquest of Makkah in 630 CE, the Holy Prophet Muhammad and Ali broke all the idols worshipped at the Kaaba. Ali was sent to Yemen one year later to spread the teachings of Islam. He was also charged with settling several disputes and putting down the uprisings of various tribes.

The Status of Hazrath Ali

This Blessed Hadith of the Holy Prophet which has been collected by Abu Abd-Allah Muhammad ibn Abd-Allah al-Hakim al-Nishapuri (d. 403 AH) in the Mustadrak and by Imam Maalik in Al-Muwatta has been narrated often and thus highly popularized:
Maalik reports on the authority of al-Haakim that Hazrath Abu Hurairā that the Holy Prophet Muhammad said, ‘I am leaving two things in your midst if you hold fast to it you will not go astray. They are The Book of Allah and the Sunnah of His Apostle.

Another Hadith has also been Haakim narrated it in al-Mustadrak (3:109 # 4576); Imam Al-Nasa’i (214AH - 303 AH) in, as-Sunan-ul-kubra (5:45, 130 # 8148, 8464); Al-Tabarani212 [260 AH (821 CE) 360 AH (918 CE), al-Mu’jam-ul-kabir (5:166 # 4969); and Ibn Abi Asim related it briefly in as-Sunnah (p.644 # 1555); Nasa’i related it with a sound chain of authorities in Khasa’is amir-il-mu’minin ‘Ali bin Abi Talib (pp.84, 85 # 76) Abu Mahasin copied it in al-Mu’tasar min-al-mukhtasar min Mashkal-il-athar (2:301) as having been said after the Farewell Pilgrimage.

The Holy Prophet also said.

عن زيد بن أرقم رضي الله عنه. قال: لما رجع رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم من حجة الوداع, ونزل غدير خم. أمر بدوحات فقمين, فقال: كأني قد دعت فأعجبت. إن قى قد تركت فيكم الثقلين, أحدهما أكبر من الآخر: كتاب الله تعالى, وعترتي, فانظروا كيف تخلقو فيهما, فإنهما لن ينفرقا حتى يردا على الحوض. ثم قال: إن الله عز وجل مولاي, وأنا مولى كل مؤمن. ثم أخذ بيد علي رضي الله
Madinah to Karbala

“It is narrated by Zayd bin Arqam: When Messenger of Allah was returning after the Farewell Pilgrimage, he stayed at Ghadir Khum. He commanded that a canopy should be put up and so it was done. Then he said: It seems as if I am about to breathe my last which I shall accept. Indeed, I am leaving two important things in your midst which exceed each other in importance: One (is) Allah’s Book and the other (is) my progeny. Now it is to be seen how you do treat both of them after me and they will not be separated from each other, and they will appear before me at the Fountain of Kauthar. Then added: Surely Allah is my Master and I am the master of every believer. Then, holding Ali’s hand, he said:

One who has me as his master has him (Ali) as his guardian. O Allah! Befriend him who befriends him (Ali) and be the enemy of one who is his enemy.”

The expounding of the sunnah of the Holy Prophet Muhammad is through his family and companions (sahaba). A very large number of Sufi saints have carried this tradition of expounding the sunnah through their (haal) condition and (qaal) statements.

The dictionary Mu’jam Maqayis al-Lugha by Ibn Faris defines an itra as:

His relatives such as his children, grandchildren and paternal cousins Imam Ahmad bin Hamnbal and Imam Muslim narrated from Zayd bin Arqam. Note that this hadith in the Sihah Sittah: The six major Hadith collections; al-Kutub al-Sittah. On the return journey from his ‘Farewell Pilgrimage’ the Holy Prophet Muhammad, on the 18 Zil
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib

Hijjah stopped at Ghadir Al-Khumm (غدير الخمّم) (which is close to today's Juhfah), an Oasis between Makkah and Madinah. It was a place where people from different provinces after travelling together from Makkah used to depart from each other and take different routes for their home provinces. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ called the gathering of Companions from the various tribes and after addressing them on important matters he announced that he had received a message from Allah ﷻ to declare as follows: - The Messenger of Allah ﷺ declared:


“Zayd bin Arqam ﷺ narrates: We set out with Allah’s Messenger ﷺ until we reached Ghadir Khum. He commanded that a canopy should be put up. He looked tired on that day and it was a very hot day. He praised Allah ﷻ and then said: O people, out of the prophets Allah ﷻ sent, each new prophet had a life span half as much as that of his predecessor, and it seems to me that soon I may be called (to breathe my last) which I shall accept. I am leaving in your midst something that will never let you go astray, and that is the Book of Allah ﷻ. Then he stood up, held Ali ﷺ ’s hand and said: O people, who
Madinah to Karbala

is he who is nearer than your lives? All of them said: Allah ﷺ and His Messenger ﷺ know better. (Then he added:) Am I not nearer than your lives? They said: Why not! He said: One who has me as his Mawla has Ali ﷺ as his Mawla.”

These were two gifts one from Allah ﷺ and one from the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Don’t ever leave the gift of Allah ﷺ or the gift of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. The one gift and bond (nisbah220), being the Holy Qur’aan and the other gift and bond (nisbah) being the Ahl al-Bayt221

‘Don’t you know I am nearer than the lives of the believers?’

Everyone said: ‘yes!’

The asking three times was the declaration of the Wilaayat-e-Muhammadī. This was declaring the authority in protection and friendship with the believers. The Holy Prophet ﷺ declared while raising the hand of Hazrath Ali ﷺ:

مَنْ كُنتُ مَوْلاً فَعَلِيُّ مَوْلاً

One who has me as his protecting guide has Ali ﷺ as his protecting guide

This was the declaration of Ali ﷺ’s spiritual sovereignty and its unconditional acceptance is binding on the believers till the Day of Judgment. It clearly proves that anyone who denies Ali ﷺ’s spiritual leadership in fact denies the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s leadership. The Holy Prophet ﷺ then lifted his hands and invoked Allah ﷺ saying:

اللهم! وال م والاه وعاد من عاداه

O Allah ﷺ! Befriend him who befriends him (Ali ﷺ) and be the enemy of one who is his enemy.”
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib ﷺ

If one ponders on the words of the above quoted hadith then three wilaayat has been spoken of at Ghadir-Khum:

1. ﻣﻦ ﻭﺍﻝ! ﺍﻟﻠﻬﻢ Wilaayate illahi - Allah's intimacy and protection of the believers - (Allahumma waali man)
2. ﻣﻦ ﻭﺍﻝ ﻭﻋﺎﺩ ﻣﻦ ﻋﺎﺩﺍﻩ Wilaayate Muhammadi (Man kunto Maula)
3. ﻣﻦ ﻭﺍﻝ ﻭﻋﺎﺩ ﻣﻦ ﻋﺎﺩﺍﻩ Wilaayate Ali (fa Ali u maulahu)

These three wilaayat (intimacy and protection) has been interconnected in such a manner, that he who denies Ali ﷺ's wilaayat has denied the wilaayat of Muhammad ﷺ and him, who denies the wilaayat of Muhammad ﷺ, has denied the wilaayat of Allah ﷺ. He who denies the wilaayat of Ali al-Murtaza (the selected one) has denied the wilaayat of Muhammad al-Mustafa (the chosen one) and thus has denied the wilaayat of Allah ﷺ. By marginalising Hazrath Ali ﷺ, neither is the Holy Prophet ﷺ attained nor Allah ﷺ. You may question that, I have said something in an emotive mood that leaves a good taste (zauq) but produce the proof? The supplication (dua) of the Holy Prophet ﷺ,

اللهم! وال من والاه وعاد من عاداه

O Allah! Befriend (love) him who befriends him (Ali ﷺ) and be the enemy of one who is his enemy.”

This is the proof! The supplication of a Prophet is always fulfilled. I swear by Allah ﷺ’s honour and the green dome of Madinah that Allah ﷺ offers protective friendship (wali) to him whose protective friend (wali) is Hazrath Ali ﷺ.

The following Hadith is in the collection of Tirmidhi. The Holy Prophet ﷺ stated:

إنّ عليًا مبني و أنا منه، وهو ولي كل مؤمن من بعدي

Ali ﷺ is from me and I am from Ali ﷺ. Ali ﷺ is the protector (wali) of every believer (mu’min) 222

[Jaami’ at-Tirmidhi, Volume 6, Chapters on al-Manaqib, Chapter 19: Page 386, Hadith Number 3712]
Wali means ‘one who helps’. The Holy Prophet ﷺ has declared that Hazrath Ali ﷺ is the helper of every believer. Alhamdulillah, true believers (mu’mins) accept him as a helper. Wali also means ‘friend’. A friend is also a helper. One who does not help is not a friend. Shaykh Saadi Shiraazi ﷺ says:

A true friend is one who helps at the time of distress

A point to note in the last quoted Hadith is that the Holy Prophet ﷺ said:

إنّ علياً مني

Ali ﷺ is from me

The meaning is apparent for ‘from me’ means from my family, my community, my believers, my companions or my dear ones. But what did the Holy Prophet ﷺ mean when he says:

و أنا منه

I am from Ali ﷺ

It means my beauty (jamal) and perfection (kamal) is reflected from Ali ﷺ. It means that if you want to see my beauty (jamal), perfection (kamal) and divine effusion (faiz) Ali ﷺ is from me for every excellence that he possesses is from me. He is a reflector of my perfection (kamal).

Realise the status of loving Hazrath Ali ﷺ

The Holy Prophet ﷺ said:

من أحبه فقد أحبني، و من أحبني فقد أحب الله عزوجل و
من أغضبه فقد أغضبني و من أغضبني فقد أغضب الله عزوجل

He who loves Ali ﷺ has loved me and he who loves me has loved Allah ﷺ He who looks down on Ali ﷺ has looked down on me and he who looks down on me has despised Allah ﷺ

This Hadith is in the Mustadrak of Imam Hakim ﷺ. It teaches us that love for Hazrath Ali ﷺ is love for Allah ﷺ and the Holy Prophet ﷺ and to hate Hazrath Ali ﷺ is to hate Allah ﷺ and the Holy Prophet ﷺ. When I
read this Hadith and ponder upon it then I think what a great message it contains. What a status the love of Hazrath Ali Ḥasan has. He who denies the protective friend (wilaayat) of Hazrath Ali Ḥasan, can perform Hajj and Umra, grow beards, wear kurtas, make Tablīgh, build mosques, write books, preach, for the rest of their lives but it is useless pursuit. I belong to the group mainstream of Islam i.e. Ahl as-Sunnah wa'l-Jama'ah.

I swear by Allah this is the aqīda of Ahl as-Sunnah wa'l-Jama'ah. This is sunniyat, so the major problem is against the Kharijis that have sat on the throne of Damascus and present day Wahabis that sit on the monarchical thrones in the Arab World.

Listen to a Hadith that will refresh your imaan. When the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ had declared the wilaayat of Hazrath Ali Ḥasan then the first congratulations was given by Hazrath Abu Bakr Ḥasan, and Hazrath Umar Faruq Ḥasan.

The narrator says that after this (the declaration of Ali Ḥasan as Mawla) Umar bin al-Khattab Ḥasan met Ali Ḥasan and said to him: O Ibn Abi Talib! Congratulations, you have become the master of every male and female believer, morning and evening (for ever).”

Imam al-Manawi226 (b. AH 952 / AD 1545; d. AH 1031 / AD 1621) has written in Faydul-qadīr (6:217) that when Abu Bakr Ḥasan and Umar Ḥasan had heard the Holy Prophet’s saying:

One who has me as his Mawla has Ali Ḥasan as his Mawla.

They said to Ali Ḥasan:

O son of Abu Talib! You have become the Spiritual Master and protecting friend of every male and female believer, morning and evening (for ever).”

Those who accept Hazrath Abu Bakr Ḥasan, and Hazrath Umar Faruq Ḥasan and the khilafah, but don’t accept Hazrath Ali Ḥasan as Mawla have strayed whilst those that revere the ahl al-Bayt and condemn al-Khulafā’u r-Rāshidūn227...
Madinah to Karbala

(The Righteous Caliphs) have also strayed. If I have to write on every wave a lifetime can pass by. It is reported in Hadith that the Mother of the Faithful, Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua, was at home and her blessed father Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique was sitting next to her. Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua narrates:

كان ابوبكر يكثر النظر الي وجه علي فسالته عائشة فقال
سمعت رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم النظر الي وجه علي عبادة

Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique used to gaze intensely at the blessed face of Hazrath Ali. When Hazrath Ayesha asked him why he does this and Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique replied: 'I heard the Holy Prophet Muhammad say that to look at the face of Ali is ibaadat.

We respectfully petition the Mother of the Faithful, Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua:

We who did not live during his physical presence, is there a blessing for us in the august personality of Hazrath Ali?

There is another report from Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua, recorded by Ibn Hajar Haytami in Al-Sawa’iq al-Muhriqah (Loud/Frightening Lightning) in which she says, that the Holy Prophet said:

The best of my brothers is Ali, the best of my paternal uncles is Hamza, and remembrance of Ali and speaking about him is worship.

Nabi and Wali

Once the Holy Prophet Muhammad stated:

Lower your shoulder in the presence of a possessor of Imaan

This is a lesson in humility. ‘Lower your shoulder’ is symbolic language which denotes humility. Hazrath Ali’s ‘love and following’ (itteba) of the Holy Prophet was so sound that the Holy Prophet Muhammad acted upon this advice literally when it came to Hazrath Ali. The Holy Prophet Muhammad was cleansing the Holy Kaaba of idols and when
the need arose to remove the idols on top of the Kaaba the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ lowered his blessed shoulder to carry Hazrath Ali ﷺ to the height of the Kaaba to drop the idols on it. The hadith is as follows:

أخبرنا احمد بن شعيب، قال: اخبرنا احمد بن حرب، قال: حدثنا اسباط، عن نعيم بن حكيم المدائني، قال: اخبرنا أبو مريم قال: قال علي رضي الله عنه: انطلقت مع رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم حتى اتينا الكعبة، فصعد رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم على منكبي فنهض به علي، فلما رأى رسول الله صلى الله عليه وسلم علي ضففي قال لي: اجلس فجلسست، فنزل النبي صلى الله عليه وسلم وسلم وجلس لي، وقال لي: اصعد على منكبي، فصعدت على منكبيه فنهض بي. فقال علي رضي الله عنه: إنه يخيل إلي إن لو شئت لنبت افق السماء، فصعدت على الكعبة وعليها تمثال من صفر أو نحاس، فجعلت اعجله لازيله بينا وشمالا وقادما ومن بين يديه ومن خلفه حتى استمكنت منه، فقال نبي الله ﷺ: اقتذه، فقصده به فكسرته كما يكسر القوارير، ثم نزلت فانطلقت أنا ورسول الله صلى الله عليه وآله وسلم حتى توارينا بالبيوت خشية أن يلقانا أحد.

Abu Maryam ﷺ narrated that Ali ﷺ reported:
I was with the Holy Prophet ﷺ; till I reached Kaaba; so he climbed on my shoulders; and I tried to stand up; the Holy Prophet ﷺ felt helplessness in me; so he said ‘sit’ and I sat and he ﷺ stepped down; then he ﷺ said ‘you climb on my
shoulders’ so I climbed; and he stood up; I felt as if I could catch the corners of skies; then I climbed Kaaba; and there was a metallic statue, I up uprooted it from right and left, front and back till I did it; then Holy Prophet ﷺ said ‘throw it’ so I threw it then I broke it like mirror is broken. I came down; then the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and I stepped quickly, taking cover of homes, so that none can see us.231

It was the task of the Holy Prophet ﷺ to remove the idols but he is performing this function via his wali. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ could have utilized some other means to reach the height where the idols were placed and remove them personally. The fact that he himself raised Ali ﷺ to the height was to demonstrate to mankind that he is performing this task via his household. Don’t think that your heart is something ordinary. It is the location of a spiritual heart (qalb), the nucleus of your soul, which is the ‘throne of Allah ﷺ’ (arshe illahi). It is a very important spiritual organ. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ has stated:

قلب المؤمن عرش الله

The Heart of a Mu’min is the arsh232 of Allah ﷺ

In the era of Hazrath Bayzid Bistami233, (804-874 CE) a person dreamt that he is carrying the ‘throne of Allah ﷺ’ (arshe illahi) on his head. He decided to visit Hazrath Bayazid Bistami ﷺ in Bustaam to get the interpretation of his dream. On reaching the city he learned that the great saint, Hazrath Bayazid Bistami ﷺ, had just passed away and he felt sad that he could not get the interpretation of his dream. He had some solace that he would be able to attend the funeral prayer of such a great personality and at least be able to carry the bier (janaza). Due to the big crowd he ended up being pushed under the janaza and literally the janaza was resting on his head. He thought to himself, ‘I had come to ask this great saint about my dream of carrying the ‘throne of Allah ﷺ’ on my head and here am I carrying his janaza on my head.’ As he thought this Hazrath Bayazid Bistami ﷺ spoke to him and said, ‘this is the interpretation of your dream, for on your head is the ‘heart’ of Bayazid.’
Ponder as to what status the spiritual heart (qalb), the nucleus of your soul, has. But, as the polytheists (mushrikeen) of Makkah had polluted the Holy Kaaba in Makkah, the Ennobled, with idols, the Shayateen of this age have placed many idols in our hearts. Anger, hatred, jealousy, revenge etc. are pollutants of the heart. How many idols of desires have we placed in our hearts? So if you want to cleanse this Kaaba of the Heart then keep your gaze fixed on the cleanser of that Kaaba in Makkah. The physical Kaaba was cleansed by two, the greatest Nabi and the greatest wali, so if we desire to cleanse our hearts we have to fix our gaze on both. This is the condition of Hazrath Ali’s following (itteba) and obedience (ita’at).

Hazrath Ali left his salaah for the Holy Prophet Muhammad

This Hadith is in the Hanafi book, Mushkil al-athar, by Imam Abu Jaafar al-Tahawi (239-321), the greatest Hanafi Imam of Hadith, presented with two chains of narration.

Hazrath Asma bint Umaiya ibn Ma‘bad ibn al-Harith reports that, ‘Revelation descended on the Holy Prophet whilst his blessed head was resting on the lap of the Hazrath Ali. Hazrath Ali did not read his Asr salaah on time to the extent that the sun set. The Holy Prophet Muhammad supplicated, ‘O Allah! Undoubtedly Ali was in Your obedience and the obedience of...”
Madinah to Karbala

Your Messenger’ and the sun came back. Hazrath Asma 🕌 says
I saw the sun set and I saw it re-rise.

Asma bint Umail ibn Ma’bad ibn al Haarith 🕌 is the wife of
Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique 🕌, from whom, my paternal great
grandfather, Hazrath Ghulam Muhammad Siddique 🕌 (Hazrath Soofie Saheb 🕌) of South Africa descends.

Many Imams have presented this Hadith and classified it as sound and
reported with each reporter being trustworthy (Hasan Sahih). Those who
get uncomfortable when we expound the excellence of the Holy Prophet 🕌 say this Hadith is weak. I say that their Imaan is weak. The Holy
Prophet 🕌 was present at Wadi e Sheba and the Muslim army was around
him. The salaah of Asr had been performed and Hazrath Ali 🕌 did not
read his salaah, for he only arrived after the Asr congregational salaah had
been performed. The Holy Prophet 🕌 after reading salaah intended to
rest and Hazrath Ali 🕌 requested that the Holy Prophet 🕌 rest on his
lap. The Holy Prophet 🕌 rested on Hazrath Ali 🕌’s lap. Hazrath Ali 🕌 let the time of Asr salaah expire not wanting to disturb the Holy Prophet Muhammad 🕌. Probably he did not inform the Holy Prophet 🕌 out of
‘intense protective love’ (ghayrate ishq) that whilst he is reading his Asr, the
Holy Prophet Muhammad 🕌 may find another lap to rest on. The sun
was about to set and Hazrath Ali 🕌 is looking at the setting sun of the sky
and sometimes looks at that beautiful sun of Madina h resting on his lap.
The sun in the sky indicates:

It’s time for Asr salaah

And Hazrath Ali 🕌’s love says:

‘How could you dare disturb the Holy Prophet 🕌’s sleep’?

For a Muslim which is the most meritorious prayer? Allah 🕌 referred to
Asr when he says in the Holy Qur’aan, in the 2nd Sura, al-Baqara, verse
238:

ハウْ ﻋَﻠَى ُعَا ُصِلََّاتِ ﻭَالصَّلَاةَ ﻭَالوُسْطَىِ ْوَأَوْمَلُوا لِلَّهِ ﻤَقَاتِّٰنَ

Guard strictly your (habit of) prayers, especially the Middle
Prayer; and stand before Allah 🕌 in a devout (frame of mind).
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib ٢٥٧

A Hadith in Sahih Bukhari expounds the word ‘wusta’ (middle) as being reference to Salaat ul-Asr.

من تزل صلاة العصر فقد حب عمله

‘Whoever leaves the Asr prayer, all his (good) deeds will be annulled.’” ٢٣٦

[Sahih al-Bukhari; Volume 1, The Book of the Times of Salaah, Page 332, Chapter 15, Hadith number 553]

Ponder! He who leaves a single Asr Prayer deliberately, his deeds is annulled, so what must the position of him be who leaves his five prayers deliberately daily? The Holy Prophet ٢٥٣ has stressed the importance of this prayer. Here the time for this very important salaah of Hazrath Ali ٢٥٤ is expiring? Did he not know its importance? Nay! He knew for he is the door of knowledge. The Holy Prophet ٢٥٣ stated:

باينا مدينة العلم و علي بابها فمن أراد العلم فليأت الباب

Hazrath ibn Abbas ٢٣٧ narrates that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ٢٣٨ said:

‘I am the City of Knowledge and Ali is its door; whosoever wants to attain knowledge must come to the door’

Hazrath Ali ٢٣٧ said that whatever is contained in the entire Holy Qur'aan is contained The Opening Chapter (Sura Fatiha). Whatever is contained in The Opening Chapter (Sura Fatiha) is in bismillah and that which is in bismillah is contained in the ‘be’ of bismillah. It has been narrated by Hafiz Sulaiman al-Qunduzi al-Hanafi [d 1294 AH] in Yanabi al-Muwadda ينابيع الموادة written in Baghdad.

أي في الدر المنظم (لا ابن طلحة الخليلي الشافعي: أعلم أن
جميع اسرار الكتب السماوية في القرآن وجميع ما في القرآن
في الفاتحة وجميع ما في الفاتحة في البسمة وجميع ما في
البسمة في باء البسمة، وجميع ما في باء البسمة في النقطة
التي هي تحت الباء
Madinah to Karbala

Know that all the secrets of the heavenly books are in the Qur’aan, and everything within the Qur’aan is in the Fatihah (Chapter called The Opener) and all that is within the Fatihah is within the bismillah and everything within the bismillah is within the ba of the basmala and everything within the ba is in the dot beneath the ba.

Then he wrote:

قال: قال الإمام علي [كرم الله ووجهه] | أنا النقطة البتيلة

Imam Ali ﷺ said: I am the dot beneath the ‘ba’.

Hazrath Ali ﷺ said:

If I had to write a commentary on the ‘ba’ of bismillah it would fill so many books that seventy camels would not be able to carry them.

If this is the level of knowledge of the door to the city of knowledge, then what must the level of knowledge of the city of knowledge? Some Fourteenth Century fools compare the knowledge of the Holy Prophet ﷺ with that of children and lunatics? Allah ﷻ preserve us! They have written that Satan has more knowledge than the Holy Prophet ﷺ. It is common practice that everyone praises his or her own leader. They praise Satan and we praise the Holy Prophet ﷺ.

So, Hazrath Ali ﷺ knew that this was the Asr salaah, but he did not awaken the Holy Prophet ﷺ. Why? I present to you some words of love. He did not awaken him because only he is awoken, who is asleep. Him who came to awaken the world from a slumber, what will awaken him? The Holy Prophet ﷺ is not heedless even in a state of sleep. Therefore he ﷺ said as reported in both Sahih Bukhari and Muslim:

إِنْ عَيْنِيَ نَمَاتُانِ وَلَا يَنْامُ قَلْبِي

مُتَفْقِئٌ عَليْهِ

O Ayesha ﷺ, my physical eyes sleep but my heart (qalb) does not.
The spiritual heart (qalb) of the Holy Prophet ﷺ possesses sight and hearing (basirah۲۴۰). So the Holy Prophet ﷺ is aware of the circumstances. The sun is nearly setting. Salaah is compulsory (farz) and on the lap is the Beloved of Allah ﷺ, most beloved to Ali ﷺ. Hazrath Ali ﷺ knew the deeper meaning of ‘the middle prayer’ الصلاة الوسطى (salaat ul-wusta) as being the ‘prayer of the heart’, so he decided:

Namaaze jab qaza hoh, phir ada hoh  
Muhabbat ki qazae, kab ada hoh  
Prayer that is delayed can be performed  
When will love that is delayed be expressed?  
Is koh kehte heh muhabbat, haidare qaraar ne  
Tere soneh par namaaze Asr wari, Ya Rasul!  
This is what you call love. Ali ﷺ left his salaat ul-Asr for you. Ya Rasul ﷺ!

The sun had set. The Holy Prophet ﷺ opened his eyes and enquired from Hazrath Ali ﷺ as to why he looked disturbed? Hazrath Ali ﷺ said that he had missed his Asr salaah. The Holy Prophet ﷺ never forbade him or reprimanded him for holding such belief. Ali ﷺ read his Asr salaah. Ala Hazrath, Imam Ahmad Rida Khan ﷺ says:

Teri marzi pa gaya suraj phira ulte kadam  
Teri ungli uth gayi mah ka kaleja chirgaya  
According to your desire (O Prophet!) the sun returned  
Your finger gestured and the moon tore open its bosom

At another place he says:

Suraj ulte paw palte, Chand ishare se hoh chaak  
Ande munkir dekh le, qudrat Rasulullah ki  
The sun returns and the moon splits with one gesture of his  
O blind rejecter! See the power of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ

Either Hazrath Ali ﷺ reads his salaah or retains the honour of having the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ resting on his lap. Ponder, as to what is Imaan. The Imaan of Ali ﷺ is not going towards salaah but towards the Holy Prophet ﷺ. Asr time passed and it was the time of Maghrib for the sun was setting. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ now enquires if Hazrath Ali ﷺ had read his Asr. Hazrath Ali ﷺ was instructed by the

259
Madinah to Karbala

Holy Prophetﷺ to read his salaah delayed (qaza). Hazrath Ali ﷺ’s expression told the Holy Prophetﷺ:

‘O Master, with you being here how can, Ali read qaza’. ﷺ.

The Holy Prophetﷺ raised his blessed hands and supplicated to Allah ﷺ:

اللهم إنه كان في طاعتك و طاعة رسولك فاردد عليه

الشمس

‘O Allahﷺ! He (Ali ﷺ) was in your obedience and the obedience of Your Messenger.’

The sun came back. Hazrath Asma ﷺ says I saw the sun set and I saw it re-rise.

Hazrath Ali ﷺ missed his salaah and Holy Prophetﷺ supplicates to Allah ﷺ that Ali ﷺ was obeying Allah ﷺ and the Messenger ﷺ? This emphasizes the status of Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ’s respect. The Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ gestured at the sun and it came back to the time of Asr. Thus Ali ﷺ read his salaah on time. Hazrath Ali ﷺ held the belief (aqida) that time and the movement of the sun is subject to the Holy Prophetﷺ, for he ﷺ is the most perfect khalifat-Allah and is the embodiment of what Allah ﷺ says in the Holy Qur’aan says in the 45th Sura, alJāthiyah (the Kneeling): Verse 13:

وَسَخَّرَ لَكُم مَا فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَمَا فِي الْأَرْضِ جَمِيعًا مَّنْهُ

And He has subjected to [all of] you what is in the heavens and what is in earth

He, Hazrath Ali ﷺ, knew that the most perfect personification of this mastery is none other than the khalifat-Allah ‘par-excellence’. Another point is that it is mentioned in hadith in both Bukhari and Muslim242 that a setting sun is actually prostrating itself to Allah ﷺ.
Abu Dharr, narrated: Allah’s Messenger one day asked: Do you know where the sun goes? They replied: Allah and His Messenger know best, He (the Holy Prophet) explained: Verily it (the sun) glides till it reaches its resting place under the Throne. Then it falls prostrate...

[Sahih al-Bukhari; Volume 4, The Book of the Beginning of Creation, Page 269, Chapter 4, Hadith number 3199]

The setting sun is in prostration at the Throne of Allah and the Holy Prophet Muhammad calls it. The sun must have asked:

‘O Allah! What must I do, prostrate to You or heed the call of the Holy Prophet Muhammad?’

Allah must have said:

O Sun! Did you not see what Ali did, he left salaat out of reverence and respect to My beloved Holy Prophet Muhammad? Every night you can prostrate yourself, now you should respond to My beloved’s call’.

So the sun came back and Hazrath Ali read his salaat on time. So the sun was brought back for Hazrath Ali. There was wisdom in this. It could never be recorded in history, that any prayer of Ali was qaza. Today there are many who claim to love Hazrath Ali, don’t even read salaat on the tenth of Muharram. The claimants of love for Ali who don’t read salaat and intoxicate themselves with drugs are false claimants. True lovers follow the teachings of ahl al-Bayt. Love is not lip service it is displayed by actions and sound character.

Ali and the Rashidun Caliphs

Some reports say that Ali did not give his oath of allegiance to Abu Bakr until six-months later when his wife, Fatimah passed away, whilst there is other reports that say Ali gave the pledge on the second day of the election of Abu Bakr. Ali read salaat under the
leadership of Abu Bakr and often advised the Caliph. He also participated in the funeral of Abu Bakr.

Ali pledged allegiance to the second caliph Umar ibn Khattab and helped him, serving as the Chief Judge of Madinah. He also advised Umar to set Hijrah as the beginning of the Islamic calendar. Ali advised the caliph on political issues as well as religious ones. Ali was a member of the electoral council to choose the third caliph. Ali pledged allegiance to Uthman and posted his two sons Imam Hasan and Husayn to guard the house of the caliph during the revolt and subsequent siege.

**Election as Caliph**

Ali reigned as caliph between 656 CE - 661 CE/ 35 AH-40 AH, during one of the more turbulent periods in Muslim history. Uthman's assassination meant that rebels had to select a new caliph. The Muslims gathered in the Masjid of the Holy Prophet Muhammad on June 18, 656 CE to appoint the caliph. Initially Ali refused to accept the Caliphate but when some notable companions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad and the residents of Madinah insisted, he finally agreed. Although there are many conflicting reports from Muslims with sectarian bias, non-Muslim, unaligned historians have recorded that force did not urge people to give their pledge for they pledged publicly in the al-Masjid al-Nabawi. The majority of Madinah’s population as well as many of the rebels gave their pledge.

**Opposition to Ali**

The Islamic Empire had experienced tremendous growth and governors grew very powerful in the regions they governed. Among these governors was Hazrath Muawiyah ibn Abi Sufyaan of Syria who like Hazrath Uthman belonged to the wealthy Umayyad (Banu Umayya) clan of the Quraysh tribe of Makkah. Under Hazrath Uthman, the people became economically more prosperous and on the political plane they came to enjoy a larger degree of freedom. No institutions were devised to channel political activity, and, in the absence of such institutions, the pre-Islamic tribal jealousies and rivalries, which had been suppressed under earlier caliphs, erupted once again. In view of the democratic and liberal policies adopted by Hazrath Uthman, the people took advantage of the
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib

liberties allowed them, and as such became a headache for the State, which culminated in the assassination of Hazrath Uthman as discussed previously. Moreover, the foreign powers became nervous at the success of the Muslims under the leadership of Hazrath Uthman, and now their only hope lay in aiding and abetting subversive movements within the territories of Hazrath Uthman’s caliphate. They felt that it was a good opportunity to accomplish their aims of rebellion by starting arguments over religion. Due to the lack of any particular political department to deal with the growing political agitation in the Islamic state, the political leaders in various towns campaigned against Hazrath Uthman. Initially, they started with arguments over Hazrath Uthman's relatives, who were governors of Egypt, Basra and Kufa. Hazrath Uthman once gave audience to a number of people from Kufa, Basra and Egypt, who had complaints against the governors of their territories. He assured them that he would take action against any corrupt official. On their way out of the city, they encountered a person who carried a secret letter from the Caliph to his governors. This letter was actually a forgery, by the enemies of Islam who sought to stir up trouble in the Muslim Ummah. The hypocrites also used the situation and played on the emotions of simple people. The hands of the rebels were further strengthened, and as a consequence the crisis deepened further, until Uthman was martyred on Friday, the 17th Dhul-Hijjah, 35 AH (the 17th July, 656 A.D.) The Holy Prophet Muhammad had prophesized this martyrdom as per the hadith of Uhad detailed earlier.

Qadi Iyad also states in Shifa Shareef on the same page and chapter prophesizing Uthman’s martyrdom:

He [the Holy Prophet Muhammad] foretold the kingdom of the Umayads and the rule of Muawiyah and counseled him [i.e. Muawiyah] and said that the Umayads would make the Kingdom of Allah into a Dynasty.  

The clash between Ali and Muawiyah

The stage was set for the clash between Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib of the Hashemite family of the Quraysh; and Hazrath Muawiyah ibn Abu Sufyaan of the Umayyad family of the Quraysh.
Madinah to Karbala

Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib was elected as the caliph by a large number of Muslims of Madinah. The Caliphate extended from Egypt in the west to the Iranian highlands in the east. The situation in the Hijaz and the other provinces on the eve of his election was unsettled. Ali warned the citizens of Madinah to behave as true Muslims, warning that he would tolerate no troublemaking and those who were found guilty of subversive activities would be dealt with harshly. Ali as the caliph dismissed provincial governors who had been appointed by Uthman and replaced them. Muawiyah the relative of Uthman and governor of the Levant [the region comprising modern-day Lebanon, Palestine and parts of Syria and Turkey] refused to submit to Ali being the only governor to do so. The old enmity between the two families was revived, by political manipulation. The Caliph, Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib wanted to restore the stability and unity of the Ummah, whilst Hazrath Muawiyah ibn Abu Sufyaan insisted that Ali arrest the murderers of Hazrath Uthman and hand them over to him first. Ali wanted as a priority to restore peace in the Islamic Caliphate State for he needed a peaceful period to trace and arrest the culprits. Muawiyah, who had refused to pay homage to Ali, now openly disobeyed Ali and laid claim to leadership of the Muslim World. Hazrath Ayesha bint Abu Bakr (d 678 CE) beloved wife of Holy Prophet Muhammad and leading Sahaba were incited to oppose Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib.

The Battles of Jamal (the Camel)

Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua was returning to Madinah from Makkah after Hajj, but turned back when she heard the news of Hazrath Uthman's assassination and receiving news that Hazrath Ali ibn Abu Talib to new caliph was not taking steps to arrest the murderers immediately. Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua's two brothers-in-law Hazrath Talha ibn Ubayd-Allah who was married to her sister Umm Kulthum bint Abu Bakr, and Hazrath Zubayr ibn al-Awwam, who was married to her other sister Asmaa bint Abu Bakr two of the most significant Sahaba of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, also arrived in Makkah. Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua got Talha's and Zubayr's support despite them having already given their oath of allegiance to Ali. Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua, Hazrath Talhah, Hazrath Zubayr
and many members of the Umayyad family especially Muawiyah \(\text{radiya1}\) wanted to take revenge for Uthman \(\text{radiya1}\)'s death and punish the rebels who had killed him. The ex-governors of Uthman \(\text{radiya1}\), who had been displaced by Ali \(\text{radiya1}\), also joined her. Yala, the ex-governor of Yemen, had carried off to Makkah a large sum of treasure when he was displaced. He gave over to Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua \(\text{radiya2}\) sixty thousand Dinars, along with six hundred camels; one of which was a very large and well-bred, valued at 200 gold pieces. It was named Al-Askar and was especially presented for Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua \(\text{radiya2}\)’s personal transportation. Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua \(\text{radiya2}\) mounted the camel Al-Askar, and marched from Makkah at the head of 1,000 men. On her right was Talha \(\text{radiya1}\), and on her left Zubayr \(\text{radiya1}\). On their way many more joined them, and their numbers swelled to 3,000. They marched to Basra, where 4000 suspected persons, who joined the rebels during the siege on Caliph Uthman \(\text{radiya1}\)'s house, were killed. Hazrath Ali \(\text{radiya1}\) also marched to Basra. The Umayyad supporters camped in the 'Wadi-us-Saba' (Valley of the Lion) near the village of Khuraiba outside Basra, Iraq. Hazrath Ali \(\text{radiya1}\) went with his army to meet them. The army of Caliph Hazrath Ali \(\text{radiya1}\) and that of Hazrath Ayesha \(\text{radiya1}\) agreed upon a pact to aid the Caliphate in dealing with the rebels and hypocrites who killed Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya1}\). A point to note is that there were great Sahaba on both sides. Hazrath Ayesha Siddiqua \(\text{radiya2}\)’s brother Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr \(\text{radiya1}\) was in the army of Ali \(\text{radiya1}\). It was decided that the following day when the two armies assembled in the valley, the terms of peace would be negotiated, and the proclamation of peace would be issued. In the army of Ali \(\text{radiya1}\) there were two to three thousand men of Kufa, who were involved in the revolt against Uthman \(\text{radiya1}\). They knew that peace would eventually lead to them being punished for the murder of Hazrath Uthman \(\text{radiya1}\) so they took steps to ensure that the two sides were locked in battle before the peace agreement was executed. In pursuance of this plan before the daybreak the rebels attacked the army of the Hazrath Ayesha \(\text{radiya2}\). Talha \(\text{radiya1}\) and Zubair \(\text{radiya1}\) ordered their forces to meet the attack. The rebels made Ali \(\text{radiya1}\) believe that the confederates had made a surprise attack. Ali asked his forces to take up arms and beat back the attack. Men fell on the battlefield from both the sides. Talha \(\text{radiya1}\) was mortally wounded in this battle. He was carried in an unconscious state to a house in Basra where he soon expired. By noon the forces of Hazrath Ali \(\text{radiya1}\) had routed the confederates. It is reported that during the battle Hazrath Ali \(\text{radiya1}\),
Madinah to Karbala

called Hazrath Zubair ☪ and reminded him of the saying of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ☪ as recorded by to Qadi Iyad bin Musa ☪ in Ash-shifa bi Ta'rif Huquq al-Mustafa, (Healing by the recognition of the Rights of the Chosen one) in the Chapter entitled: ‘The Holy Prophet ☪’s Knowledge of the Unseen and Future Events’, that:

Al-Zubayr would fight against Ali

Hazrath Zubair ☪ left the battlefield and was killed during prayers by one of the soldiers of Hazrath Ali ☪’s army who was pursuing him. On hearing the news of Hazrath Zubair ☪’s assassination, Hazrath Ali ☪ is reported to have said to the killer of Hazrath Zubair ☪:

May you burn in hell

Hazrath Ayesha ☪ came to know of the reasons of the battle and the conspiracy thus she came to the battlefield seated on a camel. She pleaded with both sides to stop fighting. She sent Kasb bin Sur the Chief Justice of Basra to the centre of the battlefield with a copy of the Holy Qur’aan on his head to exhort the armies to stop fighting in the name of God. Many of the sincere on both sides listened to the call of Kaab bin Sur well known for his piety and learning. The rebels who were in the forefront of the fight incited the people by crying out:

He is the man who reported that Talha and Zubair had not taken the oath of allegiance to Ali voluntarily.

Arrows rained on Kaab bin Sur, and he fell dead. The battle intensified and the dead and injured lay piled in heaps. Ayesha ☪ became the main target for attack whilst her followers flocked round her camel to protect her. Ali ☪ felt that as long as the camel of Ayesha ☪ stood, the battle would continue. In order to end the battle, Ali ☪ ordered his men to cut the legs of the camel. Ayesha ☪ was carried to a house in Basra. Over ten thousand persons were killed in the battle. Among the dead on both the sides, there were many prominent companions of the Holy Prophet ☪ who had fought in the wars under the Holy Prophet ☪, and the rightly guided Caliphs. It was a tragic state and Ali ☪ was deeply grieved. He arranged for the funeral prayers, and the burial of the dead from both the sides. Ali ☪ ordered the observance of mourning for three days in the memory of the dead. These three days were spent in the burial of the
dead. After the three days Ali entered the city of Basra and asked the citizens them to assemble in the Masjid. He explained the circumstances under which Uthman had been killed, and how he had been elected as the Caliph. He told them that Talha and Zubair had pledged allegiance to him, and how the demand for the vengeance for the blood of Uthman was merely a pretext for gaining some ulterior end. He said that he had the greatest respect and regard for Ayesha. Thereafter all the people of Basra offered allegiance to Ali. He said that he regarded all the Muslims to whatever side they belonged and had died as martyrs, for rightly or wrongly they were of the conviction that they were fighting for cause of Islam. Ali expressed his satisfaction at finding Ayesha unhurt; adding:

Allah pardon you for our misunderstanding, and have mercy upon you.

Ayesha answered:

And upon you also!

Ayesha, who was forty-five years old, took to weeping day and night and fell sick. Ali visited her frequently and tried to calm her feelings. He made arrangements that she was properly looked after and was provided all facilities. When Ayesha recovered from her illness she expressed the desire to be sent to Madinah. Ali made elaborate arrangements for her journey. A group of women from Basra accompanied her to Madinah. Muhammad bin Abu Bakr, her brother, and Hazrath Ali’s own sons, were commissioned to escort her to Madinah. Ali himself accompanied her short distance on foot. She went first to Makkah where she performed the lesser Pilgrimage and then went to Madinah. Back in Madinah, Ayesha led a retired life and did not thereafter take part in politics. She narrated the traditions of the Holy Prophet and left a legacy in the field of scholarship. She became the rich source of tradition and the narrator of incidents in the Holy Prophet’s life. She passed away in the 58th year of the Hijrah, aged sixty-six.

As a result of this victory, Ali’s caliphate came to be acknowledged by the entire Muslim world except Syria, the power base of Hazrath Muawiyah. This battle gave a precedent to Muawiyah had contented himself, prior to this with cold war. The Battle of the Camel sanctioned
Madinah to Karbala

the use of the sword as an arbiter in the matter of succession to the caliphate. It provided an argument to Muawiyah that if the people of Basra could fight against Ali, so could the people of Syria. Ali appointed his cousin Abdullah ibn Abbas as the Governor of Basra. The anti-Ali forces exploited this appointment saying:

If every Caliph is to appoint his relatives as the Governors, why did we kill Uthman?

With the passage of time the crisis deepened.

Kufa, the Administrative Capital

Ali did not return to Madinah, he went to Kufa and declared it as the new administrative capital of the caliphate. This was probably a decision taken in turbulent times to prevent bloodshed in the spiritual capital, Madinah. Ali knew that a confrontation with Muawiyah was about to happen and Madinah could not serve as a base. Uthman’s assassination had violated the sanctity of Madinah. Ali was thus convinced that the political capital should be shifted elsewhere so that the sacred city should be spared the ordeals of facing political turmoil. Strategically, also, Kufa was more centrally located, and a war against Syria could be carried more advantageously with the base at Kufa instead of Madinah. Ali deposed Muawiyah from the governorship of Syria that he had held for many years since the caliphate of Umar. Muawiyah refused to step down. Muawiyah enticed the people in Syria to defy the authority of Ali.

Rivalry between the Hashemite and the Umayyad

This was rebellion and Ali had to suppress the revolt. The conflict between Ali and Muawiyah was an extension of the rivalry between the Hashemite and the Umayyads who were cousins. During the time of
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib

Abdul Muttalib the leadership of the Quraysh vested in the Hashemite. After the death of Abdul Muttalib the leadership passed on to the Umayads. When the Holy Prophet declared his prophethood, the Umayads were in the forefront in opposition to the Holy Prophet. When the Muslims conquered Makkah, the Umayads had to accept the leadership of the Hashemite. After the passing away of the Holy Prophet, the Caliphate was held by Abu Bakr and Umar who were neither Hashimi nor Umayyad. Uthman was an Umayyad. Muawiyah resorted to propaganda against Ali using the cry for vengeance for the blood of Uthman. He hung the blood stained shirt of Uthman and the amputated fingers of Uthman's wife Naila in the main Masjid at Damascus. The emotions of the people were played upon to resist and oppose Ali. He preached that the election of Ali as Caliph was irregular as it was held under the pressure of the rebels who had assassinated Uthman. When Talha and Zubayr were killed at Basra, Muawiyah preached that they had given up their lives in seeking vengeance for the blood of Uthman. He criticized Ali for the fighting against Ayesha.

Ali attempts to resolve conflict with Muawiyah peacefully
Ali had every reason crush the rebellion in Syria but he decided to strive to settle it through peaceful means. He sent Jarir bin Abdullah, who was the Governor of Hamdan under Uthman whom Ali retained in office, a personal friend of Muawiyah, to ask Muawiyah to submit to the authority of Ali. Muawiyah took Jarir to the main Masjid of Damascus and showed him the blood stained shirt and the amputated fingers and refused to submit to Ali. Jarir bin Abdullah visited other cities in Syria, and saw that the majority were ready to fight Ali to avenge the death of Uthman. Jarir returned to Kufa and reported that the people of Syria were determined upon making war. On the failure of the mission of Jarir people accused Jarir of being pro-Muawiyah, claiming that if he was loyal he should have murdered Muawiyah. Jarir felt disgusted and shifted to Syria where he was well looked after by Muawiyah.

There were some people, in Syria, who were against Muslims fighting among themselves. Abu Muslim, led them to, Muawiyah, and
Madinah to Karbala

advised him to prevent war. Muawiyah said that all he wanted was Qisas or ‘retaliation’ for the murder of Uthman which was a religious obligation for him. He said if Ali took the Qisas from those who were involved in the murder or handed over such persons to him he would be prepared to offer allegiance to Ali. Abu Muslim volunteered to go to Kufa as a representative of Muawiyah. Muawiyah agreed and he went to Ali. Ali took Abu Muslim to the Masjid and told the people the purpose of his mission. The people assembled in the Masjid cried out:

We all are the murderers of Uthman

Ali told him:

You may tell Muawiyah what you have seen and heard

Abu Muslim returned to Syria realising that there appeared to be no possibility of resolving that dispute through peaceful means. The army of Islam, under Ali reached the plain of Siffin, on the banks of the Euphrates River, in what is now Ar-Raqqah, Syria. They found the Syrian forces under Muawiyah drawn up in strength and waiting for them. Ali made one final plea for Muawiyah and his followers to submit to him as Caliph, but they refused.

Battle of Siffin 37 AH/ 657 CE

On 8th Safar 36 AH (26 July 657 CE) Ali gave the order and the Battle of Siffin began. A point to ponder upon is that Ali took up arms to defend his Caliphate. If he had rejected the first three caliphs, he would have done the same. On the contrary he served in their administration and read salaah under their leadership. Combat was followed by a violent battle lasting months. The army of Ali comprised of 90,000 men whilst the army of Muawiyah comprised of 120,000 men. 25,000 from the army of Ali and 45,000 from the army of Muawiyah were killed. The two armies finally agreed to settle the matter of who should be Caliph by arbitration. Edward Gibbon wrote:

Ali generously proposed to save the blood of the Muslims by a single combat; but his trembling rival declined the challenge as a sentence of inevitable death.

A group that later became the Kharijites raised copies of the Holy Qur’aan on spears and started chanting:
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib ﷺ

Let the law of Allah ﷺ, decide

Kharijites (Khawaarij خوارج), literally "Those who Went Out of the fold of Mainstream Islam

Some of Ali ﷺ’s supporters ‘broke away’, saying that they were neither for Ali ﷺ or Muawiyah ﷺ. They became known as Kharijites or ‘those that broke away’. The term literally means; ‘separatists’ or ‘out goers’. They claimed that the Holy Qur’aan was enough to guide them. The movement has its origin among the tribes of Banu Tamim.

Hazrath Abu Said Al-Khudri ﷺ narrated:

While we were with the Holy Prophet ﷺ who was distributing (i.e. some property), there came Dhu-l-Khawaisira, a man from the tribe of Bani Tamim and said, "O Allah's Messenger! Do Justice." The Holy Prophet ﷺ said, "Woe to you! Who could do justice if I did not? I would be a desperate loser if I did not do justice." Hazrath Umar ﷺ said, "O Messenger of Allah ﷺ! Allow me to chop his head off.” The Holy Prophet ﷺ said, 

""No, for he has companions (who are apparently so pious that) if anyone of (you compares his prayer with) their prayer, he will consider his prayer inferior to theirs, and similarly his fasting inferior to theirs, but they will desert Islam (go out of religion) as an arrow goes through the victim's body (game etc.)

Madinah to Karbala

Abdul Wahab Najdi, the founder of Wahabism, the religion of present day Saudi Arabia is from the same tribe of Dhul Khawaisira at-Tamimi, and his other name is Sulaiman ibn Ali ibn Muhammad ibn Ahmad ibn Rashid Al-Tamimi. The Tauhid of the Sahaba included reverence for Holy Prophet ﷺ, whilst the Tauhid of Dhul Khawaisira at-Tamimi, regarded reverence of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ as alien to Tauhid. He did not say it but his actions confirmed his belief. Refer to the above hadith and other similar ones in Sahih Bukhari and ponder and reflect on the identification signs of these people that the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ narrated to his companions (Sahaba):

A thick beard, a shaven head and a waist sheet that was tucked up (high above the ankles)

And

From the offspring of this (man there will come out (people) who will recite the Qur’aan consistently and elegantly but it will not exceed their throats. (They will neither understand it nor act upon it). They would go out of the religion (i.e. Islam) as an arrow goes through a game's body.

And

You have become deluded!

Also:

he has companions (who are apparently so pious that) if anyone of (you compares his prayer with) their prayer, he will consider his prayer inferior to theirs, and similarly his fasting inferior to theirs, but they will desert Islam (go out of religion) as an arrow goes through the victim's body (game etc.) in which case if its Nasl (arrowhead) is examined nothing will be seen thereon, and if its Nady (place of entry of arrow) is examined, nothing will be seen thereon, and if its Qudhadh (point of departure of arrow) is examined, nothing will be seen thereon, for the arrow has gone out too fast even for the excretions and blood to smear over it.

So Ponder:

1. Who does this dress code fit in this age? Every one of them dress in such a manner that no sign of Imaan leaving them is apparent?
2. Who recites Holy Qur’aan beautifully and prays much salaat that it gives us an inferiority complex?
Beware don’t let ‘illusion’ delude you from seeing ‘reality’. [Read more about them in my book ‘Attack on the Spiritual Heart of Islam’]. These people had participated in the revolt against Uthman, and were involved in his murder. When Muawiyah raised the cry for vengeance for the blood of Uthman, they allied themselves with Ali. This is the sign of the Hypocrites- they are ‘dual loyalists’. In order to support their stand, they worked out religious dogmas of their fundamental principle was:

La Hukma illa Lillah
No decision except the decision of God

They maintained that they stood for the establishment of the Kingdom of God and not of men on the earth. They held that they alone wore true believers, and all other persons who called themselves Muslims, but did not subscribe to their views were unbelievers. They maintained that they had the right to kill unbelievers. It followed that they could not live in the midst of unbelievers. On return from Siffin they did not come back to Kufa. Instead they encamped at Harura, a few miles outside Kufa. In this way these people separated from the main body of the Muslims, and came to be known as the Kharijites. There modern-day offspring are the modern day Protestants like Wahabis, Salafis and those influenced by them, as predicted by the Holy Prophet Muhammad:

From the offspring of this (man there will come out (people) who will recite the Qur’aan consistently and elegantly but it will not exceed their throats. (They will neither understand it nor act upon it). They would go out of the religion (i.e. Islam) as an arrow goes through a game's body.

The Arbitration Commission decided that Ali as well as Muawiyah should be deposed and it should be for the community to elect whomsoever they wanted as the Caliph. Modern day rendition of history makes people believe that the Battle of Siffin that Ali represented the Shia side, and Muawiyah the Sunni side. However, this is not true. Both Ali and Muawiyah were adherents of the same faith, of the mainstream Islam. The third group which emerged at Battle of Siffin, the Khawaarij, are the ancestors of the modern day Wahabis and those who have consciously embraced their brand of Islam or have been
Madinah to Karbala

unconsciously influenced by it due to its control of the media and publishing houses.

**The Battle of Nahrawan**

The Kharijites meanwhile established a settlement at Nahrawan, a few miles to the east of the Tigris near Madain. Here the Kharijites gathered in strength. They elected a leader or Amir of their own. They were very thorough in observing prayers and following other injunctions of Islam, claiming to live sinless lives. They declared that they were not interested in the affairs of this world, and that they had sold their lives to win paradise in the next world. If any Muslim questioned their brand of Islam they killed him. They held that no one except themselves was a Muslim thus they had to kill to preserve their ‘so-called’ pure exposition of Islam. They were the first real terrorists in the rural areas and created a problem of law and order for the administration. When the Kharijites of Basra migrated to Nahrawan they met on the way some Muslims including Abdullah bin Khabab  a Sahaba, whom they killed as well as his pregnant wife. Ali  felt that it imperative to rid the Ummah of such fanatics proceeded to Nahrawan instead. On reaching Nahrawan Ali  planted a standard on the ground, and declared that those who came under the standard would have amnesty and safe conduct. Some came under the standard and were given an official pardon. Ali  led the Muslim Army attacked the Kharijites. The Kharijites Out of four thousand Kharijites, only two or three dozen Kharijites escaped; the rest were killed. Ali  won a decisive victory at Nahrawan. Ali  himself killed Dhul Khawaisira at-Tamimi, the man who disrespected the Holy Prophet Muhammad  in this Battle. The Kharijites became a force that would change Islamic History. They took it upon themselves to carry the banner of their version of ‘Islamic purity’. There are still Kharijites around today worldwide, mainly in North Africa and southern Arabia, concentrated in today's Middle East, especially Saudi Arabia, Kuwait and the Gulf States and are distinct from the Sunnis and Shiites. They were the most significant oppositional group in early Islam and remain today. They can be equated to the Protestants in Christianity who refused to revere the saints and felt they could independently interpret the Holy Qur’aan. Hazrath Ali  defeated the Khawaarij at Nahrawan but 4000 had escaped. The snake was wounded but not killed.
Betrayal

At Kufa Ali was betrayed by his troops when they refused to march to Syria. These people who claimed to love Ali called themselves the Shia’tun Ali and the Lovers of Ahl al-Bayt. They defected against the very man they had claimed to follow! This betrayal would later resurface during the prelude to Karbala. This naturally led to the advantage of Muawiyah. Ali had to abandon the campaign to Syria. The Syrians acknowledged Muawiyah as caliph. Muawiyah's army invaded and plundered cities, which Ali's governors couldn't prevent; he overpowered Egypt, Yemen and other areas. This civil war created permanent divisions within the Muslim community and Muslims were divided over who had the legitimate right to occupy the caliphate. Though most of the Kharijites were killed at the Battle of Nahrawan those who escaped vowed vengeance against Ali. The victory of Nahrawan thus paved the way to the assassination of Ali, for a Kharijite assassinated Ali two years later. On the nineteenth of Ramadan, while Ali was praying in the Masjid of Kufa, the Kharijite Abd-al-Rahman ibn Muljam assassinated him with a strike of his poison-coated sword. Ali, wounded by the poisonous sword, lived for two days and was ushered into the realm of divine beauty on the 21st of Ramadan 40 AH in the city of Kufa. He was buried in what is now the city of Najaf, in Iraq.

Umayyad Rule

It is mentioned by Imam Fakhr al-Din al-Razi (543AH/606AH) in Tafsir al-Kabir (The Large Commentary, also known as Mafatih al-Ghayb, Keys to the Unknown), by Jalaluddeen Al-Suyuti in Ad-Durr Al-Manthur Fi Tafsir Bil-Ma’thur; (The Scattered Pearls) and in Imam ibn Jalil’s Tafseere Kabir. Hazrath Hasan narrates in Tirmidhi Shareef that the Holy Prophet Muhammad said:

...the Holy Prophet had a dream in which he saw Banu Umayyah upon his Minbar. That distressed him so...the following was revealed: [97th Sura al-Qadr (The night of Power or Honour)]
Verily we have sent it down on the night of al-\(\text{Qadr}\). And what will make you know what the Night of al-\(\text{Qadr}\) is? The Night of al-\(\text{Qadr}\) is better than a thousand months in which Banu Umayyah rules over you O Muhammad \(\text{sall\(\text{a}\)}\).’ Al-Qaasim [one of the chain of narrators] says ‘We counted the them (the rule of Banu Umayyah) and found that one thousand months, not a day more or less’

[ Jaami at’Tirmidhi, Volume 6, Chapters on Tafsir, Chapter 97, Page 84, Hadith Number 3350]
Hazrath Ali ibn Ali Talib ﷺ

The Night of al-Qadr [the destiny of the Ummah] is better than a thousand months in which Banu Umayyah rules over you O Muhammad ﷺ.

Many scholars who have commented on this say that on counting the rule of the Umayads it amounts to a thousand months. Here Allah ﷻ had consoled the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ by saying:

My Beloved! Those who abuse the honorary status of this Minbar and rule with abuse for a thousand months then remember that one night [The night at Ashura]; will outstrip the one thousand month rule.

The narration has ended without naming that night. My fervour says, and those who wish to reject what I say are free to do so, that that one night which shook the foundations of and overpowered the thousand month rule of the Umayads is the one night of Ashura of the martyrs of Karbala.

Hence you can see the reason why, the ‘modern day’ Kharijites wish to give little importance to the Martyrdom at Karbala.

This strategy has not succeeded in the Holy Land of Quds or in Syria and Yemen. The Holy Prophet ﷺ had prayed for Syria and Yemen and had predicted the Saudi/ Wahabi menace to come from Najd.

Hazrath Abdullah ibn Umar ﷺ narrates that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ supplicated to Allah ﷻ, ‘O Allah ﷻ! Bless Syria for
Madinah to Karbala

our sakes. O Allah 🥄! Bless our Yemen for us’. Then some people requested that he supplicate to Allah 🥄 for Najd (Najd is that part of Saudi Arabia from which the Saudi Rulers originate). The Messenger of Allah 🥄 supplicated again to Allah 🥄, ‘O Allah 🥄! Bless Syria for our sakes. O Allah 🥄! Bless our Yemen for us’. Then some people again requested that he supplicate to Allah 🥄 for Najd. As far as my memory serves me he 🥄 replied on the third similar request; ‘from there (Najd) will emanate earthquakes and fitna (mischief, trials and tribulation); and the Qarn (horn or era) of Satan will emerge from there. [The era of the era of the Wahabbi/Zionist/Euro Alliance].

[Sahih Bukhari, Volume 2, The Book of Istitqaa, Chapter 27, Page 98, Hadith number 1037 also Volume 9, The Book of al-Fitan, Chapter 16, Page 141, Hadith number 7094]

The words طاطِنِي شَيْطَانُ qarnus shaytaan means ‘horn of shaytaan’ and also means ‘epoch of shaytaan’. But the Qur’aan has always used the word نُقْرَنُ Qarn to mean ‘age’ and has never used it to mean ‘horn’. We are living in that ‘epoch’ (نُقْرَنُ Qarn) presently. The Wahabis/Salafis consider themselves to be 'non-imitators' or 'not attached to tradition' (ghayr muqallidun), and therefore answerable to no school of law at all, observing instead what they dupe innocent minds as being the practice of early Islam. This is Protestant Islam. It has developed considerable influence in the Muslim world through the funding of mosques, schools, scholars, television and radio stations and other means from Persian Gulf oil
wealth. It is interesting to note that nobody calls themselves Wahabi; but they are called by others as Wahabi. The name stems from following the strict interpretations of Muhammad Ibn Wahab. The terms ‘Wahabi’ and ‘Salafi’ are often used interchangeably, but Wahabi has also been called ‘a particular orientation within Salafism.’
Madinah to Karbala

ENDNOTES

1 Hadith Number 10: A fourth generation companion, Ibn Abi Jahl, in the hadith, 1 / 207, the number: 1772, 1777, 1767, 17657, 17656, 1758, 17657, 17656, 17657, 17656, 17657, 17657, 17657, 17657.

2 Sihah Sittah: The six major Hadith collections al-Kutub al-Sittah are collections of hadith by Islamic scholars who, approximately 200 years after the Holy Prophet Muhammad's death and by their own initiative, collected hadith. They are sometimes referred to as Al-Sihah al-Sittah (The Authentic Six). They are Sahih Bukhari, Sahih Muslim, al-Nasa'i, Abu Dawud, Jami al-Tirmidhi, Sunan ibn Majah.

3 Ismail ibn Kathir (ابن كثير) was an Islamic scholar. His full name is Abu Al-Fida, 'Imad Ad-Din Isma'il bin 'Umar bin Kathir Al-Qurashi Al-Busrawi. He was born in 1301 in Busra, Syria (hence Al-Busrawi). He was taught by Ibn Taymiyya (expounder of Wahabbism) in Damascus, Syria.

4 Taqi ad-Din Abu 'l Abbas Ahmad ibn 'Abd al-Halim ibn 'Abd as-Salam Ibn Taymiya al-Harrani was a Kurdish Salafi scholar born in Harran, located in what is now Turkey, close to the Syrian border. There is probably no other theologian, medieval or otherwise, who has had as much influence on the modern radical Islamist movement. His teachings, first followed by Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab (d. 1792), became the basis of the Wahhabi movement in the nineteenth century and the guiding principles of the Wahhabi state of Saudi Arabia. Again, in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, through Muhammad Abduh and Rashid Rida, they influenced the modernist Salafiyah movement. He was also a staunch critic of veneration of tombs and treating them as place of acceptance of worship and supplication. He stated that when a Muslim says "La Ilaha Illa Allah", he/she testifies that he/she will worship Allah and Allah alone. Therefore, going through intermediaries, invoking them, and seeking their assistance is an act of shirk (associating partners in the worship of Allah). He influenced an 18th century Arabian scholar named Muhammad ibn 'Abd al-Wahhab, who studied the works of ibn Taymiyyah and aimed to revive his teachings and founded Wahabbism.

5 Ibn Qayyim Al-Jawziyya (1292-1350CE / 691 AH- 751 AH) was a Sunni Islamic jurist, commentator on the Qur'aan, astronomer, chemist, philosopher, psychologist, scientist and theologian. Although he is commonly referred to as "the scholar of the heart," given his extensive works pertaining to human behavior and ethics, Ibn al-Qayyim's scholarship focused in the sciences of Hadith and Fiqh. Ibn al-Qayyim ultimately joined the study circle of Ibn Taymiyah, 661H - 728H (1263-1328), who kept him in his company as his closest student, disciple and his successor. He defended Ibn Taymiyah's religious opinions and approaches, and he compiled and edited most of his works, and taught the same. He eventually accepted the Sufi way when he met the great Sufi Abdullah al Ansari of Heart, Afghanistan. He wrote Madaarij Saalikeen (The Steps of the Spiritual Traveler) which is a commentary of the book by Shaikh Abdullah al-Ansari, Manazil-u Sa'ireen (Stations of the Seekers);

6 Imam ash-Shawkani: Muhammad ash-Shawkani (1759-1834 C.E.) was a Yemeni scholar of Islam. Born into a Zaydi Shi'a Muslim family, ash-Shawkani later on adopted the Salafi ideology within Sunni Islam and called for a return to the textual sources of the Quran and hadith. He
viewed himself as a mujtahid, or authority to whom others in the Muslim community had to defer in details of religious law.

7 Muhammad ibn ’Abd Al-Wahhab ibn Sulaiman ibn Ali ibn Muhammad ibn Ahmad ibn Rashid Al-Tamimi (1703–1792 C.E.) was an Islamic scholar born in Najd, in present-day Saudi Arabia. It is from ibn Abd-al Wahhab that the term Wahhabism derives. He branded Sufis and Shia Islam, are on Kufr (infidels). He was instrumental in destroying the shrines that were erected over graves and was also considering destroying the dome above the grave of the Prophet Muhammad, out of fear that it might be worshipped.

8 Canopus is the brightest star in the southern constellation of Carina and Argo Navis, and the second brightest star in the night-time sky, after Sirius.

9 The Great Shaykh, the Imam, the Allamah, the Muhaddith Thana’ullah Uthmani Panipati was one of the greatest scholars [of undivided India]. He was from the progeny of Shaykh Jalal al-Din ‘Uthmani, through whom his family tree reaches Hazrat Uthman ibn Affan. He was born, and grew up, in the town of Panipat where he memorized the Holy Qur’an and studied Arabic for a while with the teachers of the town. In Delhi he studied under Shah Waliullah, from whom he acquired the science of hadith. He completed his formal education in the sciences of the Deen at the young age of eighteen years. Thereafter he adopted the company of Shaykh Muhammad Abid Sunnami, from whom he received training in tariqah. Through the training imparted by the latter Shaykh, Qadi Thana’ullah Uthmani Panipati reached the level known in tariqah as the ‘annihilation of the heart’ (fana’ al-qalb). He then turned to the great shaykh [Mirza Mazhar] Jan-e-Janan Alawi Dehlawi, who trained him to the final stage in the Mujaddidiyyah tariqah. Shaykh Jan-e-Janan had tremendous affection toward, and love for, Qadi Thana’ullah Uthmani Panipati and gave him the title of ‘Alam al-Huda (the flag of guidance).

10 He has named this tafseer as ‘Al-Tafseer al-Mazhari, after the name of his spiritual master, Mirza Mazhar Jan-e-Janan Dehlavi. This tafseer of his is very simple and clear, and extremely useful to locate brief explanations of Qur’anic verses. Along with the elucidation of Qur’anic words, he has also taken up related narration’s in ample details, and in doing so, he has made an effort to accept narration’s after much more scrutiny as compared with other commentaries

11 Fayz: Divine effusion or overflow of emanation. It is the bestowal from Allah to the heart of His Perfect slave, the Perfect Man.

12 Nestorian: relating to a Southwest Asian Christian denomination that believes that two distinct persons, one divine and the other human, existed in Jesus Christ. This doctrine was declared heresy in 431 CE.

13 Eutychianism: followers of the 5th-century Byzantine monk Eutyches, who taught the doctrine that Jesus Christ has only one nature and does not have a human nature.

14 Arian: a follower of the ancient Greek Christian theologian Arius, who argued that Jesus Christ was the highest created being, but was not divine. This doctrine was pronounced heretical in the 4th century ad.

15 See note 98

16 lauh al-mahfuz: The Inscribed or Guarded Tablet upon which the Supreme Pen (al-qalam al-a’la) writes the destinies of all creation. Lahu al-mahfuz is also called the Universal Soul (an-nafas al-kulliyah).


18 Allama Allusi – Ruh al-Ma’ani fi Tafseer al-Quran al’Azim wa alSab al-Mathan, vol. 1. quoted, on the authority of muhaddith Abd al-Razzaq, the eminent fore-runner Imam Bukhari and author of
Madinah to Karbala


19 Stanley Lane-Poole (18 December 1854 - 29 December 1931) was a British orientalist and archaeologist. His uncle was Edward William Lane. Born in London, England, from 1874 to 1892 he worked in the British Museum, and after that in Egypt researching on Egyptian archaeology. From 1897 to 1904 he had a chair as Professor of Arabic studies at Dublin University.

20 In Shakespeare’s The Merchant of Venice, Portia speaks eloquently of the need for mercy to balance justice’s harsh reality.

21 Abu Zakaria Muhiuddin Yahya Ibn Sharaf al-Nawawi (1234 – 1278), popularly known as al-Nawawi, or Imam Nawawi (631 - 676 A.H. / 1234 - 1278 CE), was a Sunni Muslim author on Fiqh and hadith. His position on legal matters is considered the authoritative one in the Shafi’i Madhab. He was born at Nawa near Damascus, Syria. As with many Arabic and Semitic names, the last part of his name refers to his hometown.

22 Latin (lingua Latina) is an ancient Indo-European language that was spoken in the Roman Republic and the Roman Empire. It was also the de facto international language of science and scholarship in mid and Western Europe until the 17th century. Through Roman conquest, Latin spread throughout the Mediterranean and a large part of Europe. It later evolved into the languages spoken in France, Italy, Romania and the Iberian Peninsula, and through them to Central and South America.

23 From Latin sacrificium, the noun sacrifice, from the verb sacrificare, from sacer, sacred, + -ficium, deed, from the verb facere, do or make.

24 Ibn Ishaq or Muhammad ibn Ishaq ibn Yasar (Madinah, 85 A.H. - Baghdad, 151 A.H.) was an Arab Muslim historian and biographer. He collected oral traditions that formed the basis of the first biography of the Islamic prophet Muhammad. This biography is usually called Sirat Rasul Allah ("Life of God’s Messenger"). The original text of the Sirat Rasul Allah by Ibn Ishaq is unavailable. However, much of it was copied over into a work of his own by Ibn Hisham (Basra - Fustat, 218 A.H.). Ibn Hisham also "abbreviated, annotated, and sometimes altered" the text of Ibn Ishaq.

25 Aristotle (384 BC – 322 BC) was a Greek philosopher, a student of Plato and teacher of Alexander the Great. His writings cover many subjects, including physics, metaphysics, poetry, theatre, music, logic, rhetoric, politics, government, ethics, biology, and zoology. Together with Plato and Socrates (Plato’s teacher), Aristotle is one of the most important founding figures in Western philosophy. Aristotle’s writings were the first to create a comprehensive system of Western philosophy, encompassing morality and aesthetics, logic and science, politics and metaphysics.

26 Jean-Jacques Rousseau: (28 June 1712 – 2 July 1778) was a major Genevois philosopher, writer, and composer of 18th-century Romanticism. His political philosophy heavily influenced the French Revolution, as well as the American Revolution and the overall development of modern political, sociological and educational thought.

27 François-Marie Arouet; 21 November 1694 – 30 May 1778), better known by the pen name Voltaire, was a French Enlightenment writer, historian and philosopher famous for his wit and for his advocacy of civil liberties, including freedom of religion and free trade.

28 Shaykh Abd al-Qaadir Jilaani (1166–1078) the greatest Sufi Master, after the Holy Prophet Muhammad and his companions, the figurehead of the Qadiri Sufi order, whose blessings permeate all Sufi orders. He was a direct descendent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad. He was
born during Ramadan in 1078, in the Persian province of Jilaan (Iran) south of the Caspian Sea.

His contribution to thought and his spiritual status in the Muslim world earned him the title al-Gauth al-Azam (the "Supreme Helper").

Abu Isa Muhammad ibn Isa ibn Surat ibn Musa ibn ad-Dahhak as-Sulami at-Tirmidhi (824-892, i.e. 209 AH - 13 Rajab 279 AH) was a collector of hadith. He was born and died in Bāgh (meaning 'Garden'), a suburb of Termez (Tirmidh), Khurasan - Persia, in present day Uzbekistan. He wrote the Sunan al-Tirmidhi, one of the six canonical hadith compilations used in Sunni Islam. Starting at the age of Islam, he traveled widely, to Kufa, Basra and the Hijaz, seeking out knowledge from, among others, Qutaiba ibn Sa'd, Bukhari, Imam Muslim and Abu Dawud. Tirmidhī was blind in the last two years of his life. Tirmidhi is buried in Sherobod, 60 kilometers north of Termez. He is locally known as Isto At Termizi or Termiz Ota (Father of Termez City).

Mullah Ali Qari (d.1014 A.H./1605 C.E.): One of the great Hanafi masters of hadith and Imams of Fiqh, Qur’anic commentary, language, history and Tasawwuf, he authored several great commentaries such as al-Miqrat on Mishkat al-masabih in several volumes, a two-volume commentary on Qadi ‘Iyad’s al-Shifa’, and a two-volume commentary on Ghazali’s abridgment of the Ihya entitled ‘Āyn al-ilm wa zayn al-ahlim (The spring of knowledge and the adornment of understanding). His book of prophetic invocations, al-Hizb al-azam (The supreme daily dhikr) forms the basis of Imam al-Jazuli’s celebrated manual of Saalawwat (salutations upon the Holy Prophet Muhammad), Dala’il al-khayrat, which along with the Qur’aan is recited daily by many pious Muslims around the world.

al-fuqara: The indigents or the poor. This term refers to the spiritual poverty of travellers (salikun) on the sufi path. They have realized that Allah is the All-Significant and they are the insignificant. They are the poor and Allah is the Rich. The one who is poor and needy towards Allah. In realizing that Allah is the All-Significant and the Independent (ghina), the faqir realizes his own insignificance and dependence. The faqir is the one who "delivers his trust (i.e. existence) back to its Owner". The faqir has returned to his original state of non-existence within the Knowledge of Allah. And because Allah's Knowledge is eternal the faqir too has attained eternity. The person may be materially rich but he has reached realisation that he is poor in comparison to Allah. Thus he leaves his material wealth outside the door of his heart, allowing entry only the intense love of the Holy Prophet Muhammad which ushers in the love of Allah. This is the most exalted state for a man to attain.

Tafsir al-Tustari by Abu Muhammed Sahl ibn 'Abd Allah [818 C.E. (203 AH) - 896 C.E. (283 AH)], was a Persian Muslim scholar and early classical Sufi Master. He founded the Salimiyah Muslim theological school, which was named after his disciple Muhammad ibn Salim. Tustari is most famous for his this well-known Tafsir, a commentary on and interpretation of the Qur’aan. From an early age he led an ascetic life with frequent fasting and study of the Qur’aan and Hadith, the oral traditions, of the Holy Prophet Muhammad. He practised repentance (tawbah) and, above all, constant remembrance of God (dhikr). This eventually culminated in a direct and intimate rapport with God with whom he was considered a special friend and one of the spiritual elect.

Imam Saalih Sharafuddeen Abu ’Abd Allah Muhammad ibn Hasan al-Busiri (1211–1294) was an Egyptian poet who lived in Egypt, where he wrote under the patronage of Ibn Hinna, the vizier. His poems seem to have been wholly on religious subjects. The most famous of these is the so-called Qasida Burda "Poem of the Mantle." It is entirely in praise of the prophet Muhammad, who cured the poet of paralysis by appearing to him in a dream and wrapping him in a mantle.
34 'ibada: Worship and service of Allah with absolute obedience and love. The rites and rituals of Islam are the outer forms containing the inner meanings which will enable to worshipper to know Allah. The reverence of the Holy Prophet is worship of Allah , for he is the manifestative representative of Allah as khilafatullah par excellence.

35 al-haqiqa: Reality. Al-haqiqa indicates the Essential Reality of things or the Divine Truth. It is the reality of the entity. Al-haqiqa is the negation of the effects of the 'slave's' qualities by Allah 's Qualities so that He is the agent through, in and from, the 'slave'.

36 ma'rifa: Divine knowledge. Ma'rifa is a light which Allah casts into the heart of whomsoever He Wills. This is the true knowledge which comes through tasting (dhawq), unveiling (kashf) and witnessing (mushahadah). This knowledge is from Allah , it is not Allah Himself, because He is Unknowable in His Essence. The triad on the path of return to Origin is fear (makhafah), knowledge (ma'rifa) and love (mahabbah). Fear leads to knowledge which opens into unconditional love of Allah . It is said that spiritual struggle (mujahadah) is child's play whilst ma'rifa is men's work.

37 Tawajjuh: Concentration or attentiveness or to 'turn the face towards something'. Tawajjuh can refer to the spiritual concentration between the Murshid and his murid.

39 Qiblah: The ritual orientation or direction in which one prays. Ultimately, the qiblah is in every direction because, "Whithersoever ye turn, there is the Face of Allah" (al-Quran 2:115). To attain knowledge of this 'directionless direction' the spiritual traveller first directs his prayer towards the Holy City of Makkah. After purification of his heart and benevolence of his intent, he turns towards his own purified heart. Then, when Allah , the Truth (al-Haqq) is unveiled to his heart he faces Allah . He has attained to the Truth of Certainty (haqqa l-yaqin) that only Allah is. Allah surrounds him and Allah is within him. To which place can he now turn!


41 Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti also known as Gharib Nawaaz the most famous Sufi saint of the Chishti Order of South Asia. He was born in 536 A.H./1141 CE, in Sajistan, Khorasan (other accounts say Isfahan) in Persia. He was a direct descendent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad . He was one of the most outstanding figures in the annals of Islamic Sufism and founder of the Chishtiyyah order in India.

42 Abu Hamid Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Ghazali or, known as Algazel to the western medieval world, was born and died in Tus, in the Khorasan province of Persia (modern day Iran). He was a Muslim theologian, jurist, philosopher, cosmologist, physician, psychologist and Sufi of Persian origin, and remains one of the most celebrated scholars in the history of Sufi Islamic thought. He is considered a pioneer of the methods of doubt and skepticism, and in one of his major works, The Incoherence of the Philosophers, he changed the course of early Islamic philosophy, shifting it away from the influence of ancient Greek and Hellenistic philosophy, and towards cause-and-effect that were determined by God or intermediate angels.

43 Ghazali's major works is Ihya al-Ulum al-Din or Ihya'ul Ulumuddin (The Revival of Religious Sciences). It covers almost all fields of Islamic sciences: fiqih (Islamic jurisprudence), kalam (theology) and Sufism. It contains four major sections: Acts of worship (Rub' al-'ibadat), Norms of Daily Life (Rub' al-'adatat), The ways to Perdition (Rub' al-muhlikat) and The ways to Salvation
(Rub' al-'munijyat). Many admirable comments were made regarding his this book: “If all Islamic sciences were disappeared, they could be taken back from Ihya'ul Ulumuddin.”. He then wrote a brief version of this book in Persian under The Alchemy of Happiness (Kimyayae Sa'adat).

44 Florence Nightingale, (12 May 1820 – 13 August 1910) was a celebrated English nurse, writer and statistician. A Christian humanitarian, Nightingale believed that God had called her to be a nurse. She came to prominence for her pioneering work in nursing during the Crimean War, where she tended to wounded soldiers. She was dubbed “The Lady with the Lamp” after her habit of making rounds at night. Nightingale laid the foundation of professional nursing with the establishment, in 1860, of her nursing school at St Thomas' Hospital in London, the first secular nursing school in the world. The Nightingale Pledge taken by new nurses was named in her honour, and the annual International Nurses Day is celebrated around the world on her birthday.


46 The Sultan Hasan Mosque and madrasa (School) is considered stylistically the most compact and unified of all Cairo monuments. The building was constructed for Sultan Hasan bin Mohammad bin Qala'oun in 1256 AD as a mosque and religious school for all sects. It was designed so that each of the four main Sunni sects (orthodox Muslim, or Sunni rites, consisting of Shafite, Malikite, Hanefite and Hanbalite) has its own school while sharing the mosque. The cornices, the entrance, and the monumental staircase are particularly noteworthy.

47 Al-Azhar University in Egypt, founded in 970-972 CE as a Madrasah, is the chief centre of Arabic literature and Sunni Islamic learning in the world.

48 Florence Nightingale on mysticism and eastern religions By Florence Nightingale, Gérard Vallée

49 The Crimean War (October 1853 – February 1856) was a conflict fought between the Russian Empire and an alliance of the French Empire, the British Empire, the Ottoman Empire, the Kingdom of Sardinia, and the Duchy of Nassau. The war was part of a long-running contest between the major European powers for influence over territories of the declining Ottoman Empire. Most of the conflict took place on the Crimean Peninsula, but there were smaller campaigns in western Turkey, the Baltic Sea, the Pacific Ocean and the White Sea.

50 Sahih Bukhari, Vol 8, The Book of Al-Adab (Good manners) Chapter 95, Maktaba Dar-us-Salam, Edition printed July 1997, King Fahd National Library Page 106, Hadith Number 6163(also see vol. 4 Hadith no. 3610)

51 Ash-Shaykh as-Sayyid Muhammad b. Ibrahim al- Ya'qoubi al-Hasani al-Idrisi is a well-known scholar from Syria. Born in Damascus in 1962, Shaykh Muhammad descends from a family whose lineage goes back to the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, through his grandson Sayyiduna al-Hasan ﷺ. His ancestors also include some of the greatest scholars of Syria. His father, Shaykh Ibrahim al-Ya'qoubi (d. 1985/1406 H.), was one of the greatest scholars Syria saw in the past 50 years. As a little boy, Shaykh Muhammad crawled in the Grand Umayyad Mosque and the Darwishiyya Mosque, where his father was an instructor for 40 years, and sat in the laps of some of the greatest scholars. Under his father's tutelage, Shaykh Muhammad followed a solid traditional curriculum since the age of four, studying the major classical works on the various disciplines of the Shari'ah as well as the instrumental disciplines. He received ijazas in Hadith from several of the most prominent scholars in Syria.
Madinah to Karbala

52 Sahih Muslim, Vol. 6 The Book of Birr, Nurturing Ties and Manners, (Kitab Al-Birr was-Salat-I-wal-Adab) Maktaba Dar-us-Salam, First Edition 2007, King Fahd National Library Page 452, Hadith Number 6592.


54 Authentic Hadith. Narrated by Abu-Saeed Al-Khudri on the authority of Ibn HajarAl-Asqalani (February 18, 1372 – February 2, 1448, 852 A.H.) a Shafiite Sunni scholar of Islam who represents the entire realm of the Sunni world in the field of Hadith.

55 Shihab al-Din al-Qarafi or in full Shihab al-Din Abu al-Abbas Ahmad ibn Idris (al-Sanhaji al-Bihinsi al-Misri) al-Qarafi (1228 - 1285), was a Maliki jurist of Berber (Sanhaja) origin who lived in Ayyubid and Mamluk Egypt. He was born in the Bahnasa district of Upper Egypt reportedly sometime around 1228. He is considered by many to be the greatest Maliki legal theoretician of the 13th century; his writings and influence on Islamic legal theory (usull al-fiqh) spread throughout the Muslim world.

56 Kitab al-Furuq (Anwar al-Buruq fi Anwa'i al-Furuq) by the Maliki jurist Shihab ad-Din al-Qarafi’s (in fourvolumes) discusses five hundred and forty-eight maxims, and two hundred and seventy-four distinctions and differences (furucq) between similar themes and ideas.


58 48th chapter of the Qur’an, entitled ‘Victory’

59 Ibn Kathir, Vol. III, p. 554, Bukhari relates on the authority of Mu’awia b. Qarra that he saw the Prophet on the day of the conquest of Makkah, when he was riding his camel and reciting aloud the Suratul-Fath.


61 Al-Hajjaj ibn Yusuf (early June AD 661 / AH 4 – AD 714 / AH 95) was a controversial Arab administrator and politician of the Umayyad caliphate. He is also credited for introducing the diacritical points to the Arabic script and for the first time Al-Ḥajjāj (The Pilgrim) convinced the caliph to adopt a special currency for the Muslim world. He was responsible for the development of coinage in the Islamic world, entrusting the first Islamic mint, at Wasit in Iraq, to a Jew named SUMAYR.


65 al-firasat al-imaniyya: Perspicacity through faith. This is a divine light that Allah gives to the person of faith in his inner eye (basirah). Perspicacity through faith is gained through assuming
the noble character traits in perfect harmony, balance and equilibrium. The Prophet Muhammad said, "Be wary of the firasa of a man of faith for he sees with the Light of Allah."

Jalal ad-Din Muhammad Rumi known to the English-speaking world simply as Rumi, (September 30, 1207–December 17, 1273), was a 13th century Persian Sufi, poet, jurist, and theologian. He wrote *Masnavi-ye Manavi* ("Rhyming Couplets of Profound Spiritual Meaning."); a six-volume poem regarded by many Sufis as the manual of *Tasawwuf*. In fact, the *Masnavi* is often called the "*Qur’aan-e Farsi*" (The Persian Qur’aan). It is considered by many to be one of the greatest works of mystical poetry.

Hazrath Abdur Rahman Jaami (August 18, 1414–November 19, 1492) was one of the greatest Persian poets in the 15th century and one of the last great Sufi poets. Jaami was born in a village near Jam, then Khorasan, now located in Ghor Province of Afghanistan, but a few years after his birth, his family migrated to Herat where he was able to study Philosophy, mathematics, Arabic literature, natural sciences, and Islamic philosophy at the Nizamiyyah University of Herat. Afterwards he went to Samarkand, the most important centre of scientific studies in the Muslim world and completed his studies there. He was a famous Sufi, and a follower of the Naqshbandi Sufi Order. At the end of his life he was living in Herat.

Tafsir (تفسير, tafsir, "interpretation") is the Arabic word commentary, Holy Qur’aan. An author of tafsir is a mufassir (تفسير, plural: Arabic: مفسرون, mufassirun).

Tafsir: The heart. The human heart is the place of constant change and fluctuation. It is the supra-rational organ of intuition where the Transcendent Realities enter into contact with man. The heart is the isthmus (البارزخ) between this world and the next. The battlefield of the Greater Holy War (جهاد الالکبار) is the heart. This is where the downward-pulling lower-self (نفس) is confronted by the yearning spirit (روح). The battle is fought between these two adversaries in order for one to take possession of the precious heart of man. Under the misguidance of the Misguider (Satan) theنفس (ego) wants the heart to plummet to the depths of ignorance. However, the spirit, which is from Allah ﷺ, exerts a powerful attraction upon the heart, as it endeavors to guide it towards Knowledge of Allah ﷺ. The greater the purification of the heart the more receptive it is to this irresistible attraction of the celestial spirit. The heart is the sanctified centre of man because it is the "place", which contains Allah ﷺ. Keeping watch over the heart is part of the spiritual struggle (میجاداده) of the Journey of Return. Those well advanced on the path never allow any intruders to enter their sanctified hearts. The heart of the Perfect Man is the Divine Throne (الارش) around which circle the spiritual realities.

Lubb: The kernel, core or innermost consciousness. The ‘lubb’ is that hidden ‘place’ where knowledge of Allah is protected from those who are attached to the world.
His nickname is "Sultan of the Scholars." The Shaykh al-Islam of his time, he took hadith from the hafiz al-Qasim ibn 'Ali ibn 'Asakir al-Dimashqi, and Tasawwuf from the Shafi‘i Shaykh al-Islam Shihab al-Din al-Suhrawardi (539-632). He also studied under Abu al-Hasan al-Shadhili (d. 656) and his disciple al-Mursi. It is related that al-‘Izz would say, upon hearing al-Shadhili and al-Mursi speaking: "This is a kind of speech that is fresh from Allah ."

Malik ibn Anas ibn Malik ibn 'Amr al-Asbahi (c. 711 - 795) (93 AH - 179 AH) is known as "Imam Malik," the "Sheikh of Islam," the "Proof of the Community," and "Imam of the Abode of Emigration." He was one of the most highly respected scholars of fiqh in Sunni Islam. Imam Shafi, who was one of Malik's students for nine years and a scholarly giant in his own right, stated, "When scholars are mentioned, Malik is like the star among them." The Maliki Madhab, named after Malik, is one of the four schools of jurisprudence that remains popular among Muslims to this day.

The Muwatta (ﺍﳌﻮﻃﺄ) is an early statement of Muslim law, compiled and edited by Imam Malik. It is considered the earliest extant source of hadith, the traditions of the Prophet Muhammad that form the basis of Islamic jurisprudence alongside the Qur’an. Nonetheless it is not properly speaking a collection of hadith; many of the legal precepts it contains are based not on hadith at all. The book covers rituals, rites, customs, traditions, norms and laws of the time of the Prophet Muhammad. Much of the book pertains to areas which are not properly "legal" in the western sense, such as Hajj, sacrifice, intercourse etc. This makes it valuable beyond law, for studying historical sociology of the Arabs, for example.

The Renaissance (French for "rebirth"; Italian: Rinascimento, from re- "again" and nascere "be born") was a cultural movement that spanned roughly the 14th to the 17th century, beginning in Florence in the Late Middle Ages and later spreading to the rest of Europe. The term is also used more loosely to refer to the historic era, but since the changes of the Renaissance were not uniform across Europe, this is a general use of the term.

The Pentagon is the headquarters of the United States Department of Defense, located in Arlington, Virginia. As a symbol of the U.S. military, "the Pentagon" is often used metonymically to refer to the Department of Defense rather than the building itself.

The site of the headquarters of the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA)

a drastic decline in the world economy resulting in mass unemployment and widespread poverty that lasted from 1929 until 1939

80 Raghib Isfahani (رﺎﺝﺐ specs) was an Islamic scholar. His full name was Abul-Qa sim Husayn ibn Muhammad al-Raghib al-Isfahani (ابو القاسم حسین ابن محمد الراغب الاصفهاني). He worked in the lines of Philosophical and religious ethics. was one of the most renowned linguists to appear during the 'Abbasid period. He made contributions to tafsir, ethics, theology, sufism, and writings that are valued for their elegance and aesthetic qualities. His fame rests, however, on his Mufradat alfaz al-Qur'an, which reflects his exceptional aptitude for subtle semantic analysis and marks an advance in the systematic studies of the Qur’an. The Mufradat had a great impact on later scholars, including al-Faruzabadi (d. 817/1415), author of al-Qamus al-Muhit, and Murtada al-Zabidi (d. 1205/1791), who wrote the voluminous dictionary Taj al-‘Arus. Yet despite its undisputed authority, wide influence, and popularity, al-Isfahani’s Mufradat seems to be neglected by contemporary scholars concerned with Qur’anic semantics.

Majma’ al-Zawa’id wa Manba’ al-Fawa’id is a 10-volume secondary hadith collection written by Ali ibn Abu Bakr al-Haythami (735-807 AH /1335-1404 CE). It contains those hadiths uniquely reported, in Zawa‘id, by Ahmad ibn Hanbal in his Musnad Ahmad ibn Hanbal, Abu Ya‘la al-Mawsili in his Musnad, Abu Bakr al-Bazzar in his Musnad, and al-Tabarani in his three Ma‘ajim,
in contrast to the six major collections of hadith: al-Bukhari, al-Neyshaburi, al-Sijistani, al-Tirmidhi, al-Nasa’i, and al-Qazwini.

83 Ahmed ibn Hanbal (أحمد بن حنبل) (780 - 855 CE, 164 - 241 AH) was an important Muslim scholar and theologian born in Khorassan to a family of Arab origin. He is considered the founder of the Hanbali school of fiqh (Islamic jurisprudence). His full name was Ahmad bin Muhammad bin Hanbal Abu ’Abd Allah al-Shaybani. Shayban or Banu Shaybah is Ibn Hanbal's tribe. It is an Arabic tribe located in Arabia and it still exists in Arabia.

84 Malik ibn Anas ibn Malik ibn ‘amr al-Asbahi (مانس بن مالك) (c. 711 - 795) (93 AH - 179 AH) is known as "Imam Malik," the "Sheikh of Islam," the "Proof of the Community," and "Imam of the Abode of Emigration." He was one of the most highly respected scholars of fiqh in Sunni Islam. Imam Shafi', who was one of Malik's students for nine years and a scholarly giant in his own right, stated, "When scholars are mentioned, Malik is like the star among them." The Maliki Madhab, named after Malik, is one of the four schools of jurisprudence that remains popular among Muslims to this day.


86 Muhammad ibn Hajj al-Abdari al-Fasi (C.E. 1258 – 1336) was a writer from Morocco, born in Algeria. He wrote Madkhul Ash-Shara Ash-Shareef Ala Al-Mathahib (Introduction to Islamic Jurisprudence According to Schools of Thought). The book was published in 4 volumes of over 300 pages each. It treats many different subjects. He spent much of his life in Tunis and Egypt and, for some time, taught at the university of Fes, Al-Qarawiyyin. He was buried in Qarafa (Egypt).


89 Junayd ibn Muhammad Abu al-Qasim al-Khaqqaz al-Baghdadi (830-910 AD) was one of the great early Sufis of Islam. He was in the company his maternal uncle Sari al-Saqati, al-Harith al-Muhasibi, and others. He was born in Baghdad. He laid the groundwork for sober Sufism in contrast to that of God-intoxicated Sufis like al-Hallaj, Bayazid Bistami and Abusaeid Abul-KhaYr. al-Hallaj, was his disciple, Caliph of the time demanded his fatwa and he issued this fatwa: "From the outward appearance he is to die and we judge according to the outward appearance and God knows better". He lived and died in the city of Baghdad.

90 Family of the Blessed House of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, which included the Blessed Five and all the wives of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.

91 Imam ﺔﮐﺘﺮ أ'immah is an Islamic leadership position, often the leader of a mosque and the community. Similar to spiritual leaders, the Imam is the one who leads the prayer during Islamic gatherings. More often, the community turns to the Mosque Imam if they have an Islamic question. In smaller communities an Imam could be the community leader based on the community setting. It is important to note that the position of the Imam is not clerical in Sunni-
Islam. In the Shia context, Imam has a meaning more central to belief, referring to leaders of the community. Twelver and Ismaili Shi'a believe that these Imams are chosen by God to be perfect examples for the faithful and to lead all humanity in all aspects of life. They also believe that all the Imams chosen are free from committing any sin or infallible. These leaders must be followed since they are appointed by God.

93 Abu Zakaria Muhiuddin Yahya Ibn Sharaf al-Nawawi, popularly known as al-Nawawi, or Imam Nawawi (631 - 676 A.H. / 1234 - 1278 CE), was a Sunni Muslim author on Fiqh and hadith. His position on legal matters is considered the authoritative one in the Shafi'i Madhhab. He was born at Nawa near Damascus, Syria. As with many Arabic and Semitic names, the last part of his name refers to his hometown.

94 Qadi Iyad bin Musa (1083 in Gibraltar, Spain - 1149) was the great imam of Ceuta, a city of Spain located on the North African side of the Strait of Gibraltar and, later, a high judge (Qadi) in Granada. He was one of the most famous scholars of Maliki Jurisprudence. He is also well known as one of the seven saints of Marrakech, Morocco and is buried near Bab Ailen.

95 Al-Haafidh Shihabuddin Abu'l-Fadl Ahmad ibn Ali ibn Muhammad, better known as Ibn Hajar due to a fame of his forefathers, al-Asqalani due to his origin (1372 CE - d. 1448 CE/ 852 AH), was a medieval Shafi Sunni scholar of Islam who represents the entire realm of Sunni world in the field of Hadith.

96 Tazkiyah—i.e., eradication of the positive and the negative evils that obstruct the development of human personality in the spiritual dimension, and consequently in the moral dimension,—thereby ensuring healthy spiritual growth under the impact of Islam—which operates on the wheels of Zikr ('Remembrance of God') and Fikr ('Probe into the mysteries of Creation') (3:190-191), and which ends in the establishment of falah in one's personality (i.e., spiritual development in terms of the harmonius and comprehensive actualization of the latent capabilities that relate to the transcendental dimension of the personality) (87:14). This method is employed in strict adherence to the 'Straight Path' projected in al-Shariah.

97 Let it be noted that these three dimensions are so essential for leadership that they bear reference not only to God-affirming societies but also to Godless societies, such as the Communist, where an effort is made to forge an idealism—even though with materialistic bias. Under that idealism emerges a 'cult of the spirit' and a moral discipline of a certain type suited to the requirements of the ideology. Again, rigorous discipline for Communist leadership, and even for the rank and
file, is a vital element in Communist idealism. And it is all this, more than anything else, which has bestowed success on Communist revolutions.

99 Shaykh 'Abd al-Qaadir Jilaani (1166–1078) the greatest Sufi Master, after the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and his companions, the figurehead of the Qadiriya Sufi order, whose blessings permeate all Sufi orders He was a direct descendent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. He was born during Ramadan in 1078, in the Persian province of JilaAn (Iran) south of the Caspian Sea. His contribution to thought and his spiritual status in the Muslim world earned him the title al-Gauth alAzam (the "Supreme Helper").

100 Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti ﷺ also known as Gharib Nawaaz the most famous Sufi saint of the Chishti Order of South Asia. He was born in 536 A.H./1141 CE, in Sajistan, Khorasan (other accounts say Isfahan) in Persia. He was a direct descendent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. He was one of the most outstanding figures in the annals of Islamic Sufism and founder of the Chishtiyyah order in India.

101 Hazrath Shaykh Khwaja Syed Muhammad Nizamudeen Awliya (1238 – 1325 CE) a famous Sufi saint of the Chishti Order in South Asia, an order that believed in drawing close to God through renunciation of the world and service to humanity. He is one of the great saints of the Chishti order in India. His predecessors were Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti ﷺ, Khwaja Bakhtiyar Kaki ﷺ and Khwaja Fariduddin Ganjshakar. In that sequence, they constitute the initial spiritual chain or silsila of the Chishti Nizami order. Nizamuddin Auliya like his predecessors stressed upon the element of love as a means of realisation of God. For him his love of God implied a love of humanity. His vision of the world was marked by a highly evolved sense of secularity and kindness. It is claimed by the 14th century historiographer Ziauddin Barani that his influence on the Muslims of Delhi was such that a paradigm shift was effected in their outlook towards worldly matters. People began to be inclined towards spirituality and prayers and remaining aloof from the world.

102 Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti ﷺ also known as Gharib Nawaaz the most famous Sufi saint of the Chishti Order of South Asia. He was born in 536 A.H./1141 CE, in Sajistan, Khorasan (other accounts say Isfahan) in Persia. He was a direct descendent of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. He was one of the most outstanding figures in the annals of Islamic Sufism and founder of the Chishtiyyah order in India.


104 Wadi Rabigh is a wadi situated inland of the town of Rabigh, extending along the border of the Al Madinah and Makkah. A natural lake near Haggag, some 35 km inland, fringed with reeds (Phragmites) and fed by several permanent freshwater springs provides a natural wetland unique on the Tihama (a narrow coastal region of Arabia on the Red Sea) north of Jiddah.

105 Tirmidhī has declared it fair, sound and weak (hasan sahīh gharīb) in al-Jāmi‘ussahīh, b. of manṣiqb (merits) 6:79 (#3713), and Shu‘bhi, in the manner of Muṣṭafā Abū ‘Abdullah, has also related it on the authority of Zayd bin Arqam (RA). Ahmad bin Hambal narrated it in Fadū‘i‘us-sahābah (2:569 # 959); Mahāmīlī, Amālī (p.85); Tabarānī, al-Mu‘jam-ul-kabīr (5:195, 204 #
Madinah to Karbala

5071, 5096); Ibn Abī ‘Āsim, as-Sunnah (pp.603, 604 # 1361, 1363, 1364, 1367, 1370); Nawawi, Tahdhib-ul-asmā’ wal-lughāt (p.318); Ibn ‘Asākir, Tārīkh Dimashq al-kabīr (45:163, 164); Ibn Athīr, Asad-ul-ghābāh ft ma’rifat-is-sahābah (6:132); Ibn Kathīr, al-Bidāyah wan-nihāyah (5:463); and ‘Asqalānī in Ta’jīl-ul-manfa'ah (p.464 # 1222).

It has been related from ‘Abbūdullāh bin ‘Abdullāh (رضي الله عنهما) in the following books:

Hākim, al-Mustadrak (3:134 # 4652).
Khatīb Baghdāḍi, Tārīkh Baghdad (12:343).
Haythamī, Majma’-uz-zawā’id (9:108).
Ibn ‘Asākir, Tārīkh Dimashq al-kabīr (45:177, 144).

This tradition has been related on the authority of Jābir bin ‘Abbūdullāh (رضي الله عنهما) in the following books:

Ibn Abī ‘Āsim, as-Sunnah (p.602 # 1355).
Ibn Abī Shaybah, al-Musannaf (12:59 # 12121).
This tradition has been reproduced from Abū Ayyūb al-Ansārī (RA):

Ibn Abī ‘Āsim, as-Sunnah (p.602 # 1354).
Tabarānī, al-Mu’jam-ul-awsat (1:299 # 348).
This tradition has been related by Sa’d (RA) in the following books:

Ibn Abī ‘Āsim, as-Sunnah (pp.602,605 # 1358,1375).
Diyā’ Maqdisī, al-Ahādīth-ul-mukhtārah (3:139 # 937).
The following narrated it through Buraydah (RA):

Tabarānī, al-Mu’jam-us-saghīr (1:71).
This tradition has been reproduced from Ibn Buraydah (رضي الله عنهما) in the following books:

Ibn Abī ‘Āsim, as-Sunnah (p.601 # 1353).
Hindī, Kanz-ul-’ummāl (11:602 # 32904).
The following transmitted it through Hubshā bin Junādah (RA):

Ibn Abī ‘Āsim, as-Sunnah (p.602 # 1359).
Hindī, Kanz-ul-’ummāl (11:608 # 32946).
This tradition has been related from Mālik bin Huwayrith in the following books:

Endnotes

Haythamī, Majma‘-uz-zawā‘id (9:106).
Tabarānī related it from Hudhayfah bin Usayd al-Ghifārī (RA) in al-Mu‘jam-ul-kabīr (3:179 # 3049).

Ibn ‘Asākir has narrated it through Hasan bin Hasan in Tārīkh Dimashq al-kabīr (15:60,61).


Ibn ‘Asākir related it from Buraydah (RA) with slightly different words in Tārīkh Dimashq al-kabīr (45:143).

Ibn Athīr narrated it through ‘Abdullāh bin Yāmīl in Asad-ul-ghābah fi ma‘rifat-is-sahābah (3:412).

Haythamī narrated it through Abū Burdah in Mawārid-uz-zam‘ān (p.544 # 2204).

‘Asqalānī said in Fath-ul-bārī (7:74): Tirmidhī and Nasā‘ī narrated the tradition and it is supported by numerous chains of transmission.

Albānī says in Silsilat-ul-ahādīth-is-sahīhah (4:331 # 1750) that its chain of authorities is sahīh (sound) according to the conditions of Bukhārī and Muslim.

106 Fayz: Divine effusion or overflow of emanation. It is the bestowal from Allah ð to the heart of His Perfect slave, the Perfect Man.
107 Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlavi (شاه ولي الله محدث دهلavi) also known as Shah Waliullah of Delhi (1703–1762) was an important Islamic reformer who has been called "the greatest intellectual Muslim India produced." He worked for the revival of Muslim rule and intellectual learning in the South Asia, during a time of waning Muslim power following the death of Mughal emperor Aurangzeb.
108 Imam-e-Rabbani Mujaddid Alf Sani Shaykh Ahmad al-Farooqi Sirhindi (1564–1624) commonly renowned as Mujaddid Alf Sani was an Indian Islamic scholar and prominent member of the Naqshbandi Sufi order. He is regarded as having rejuvenated Islam, due to which he is commonly called "Mujaddid Alf Thani", meaning "reviver of the second millennium", referring to the Islamic tradition of Mujaddid.
109 al-Khulafā’ ‘Rāshidūn (The Righteous Caliphs) is a term used in Sunni Islam to refer to the first four Caliphs who formulated the Rashidun Caliphate. The concept of "Rightly Guided Caliphs" originated with the Abbasid Dynasty. It is a reference to the Sunni tradition, "Hold firmly to my example (sunnah) and that of the Rightly Guided Caliphs" (Ibn Majah, Abu Dawud).
110 Ghadir Al-Khumm (غدير الخمم ‘Pond of Khumm’ which is a a natural lake near Haggag, some 35 km inland, fringed with Phragmite reeds and fed by several permanent freshwater springs provides a natural wetland unique on the Tihama north of Jeddah. It is a Valley or Wadi Rabigh extending along the border of Madinah and Makkah.
Madinah to Karbala

111 Fakhruddin Razi or Abu Abdullah Muhammad ibn Umar ibn al-Husayn al-Taymi al-Bakri al-Tabaristani Fakhir al-Din al-Razi (أبو عبدالله محمد بن عمر بن الحسين فخري الدين الرازي) was a well-known Persian, Sunni Muslim theologian and philosopher. He was born in 1149 (543 AH) in Ray of Persia (today located in Iran) and died in 1209 (606AH) in Herat (today located in Afghanistan). He also wrote on medicine, physics, astrology, literature, history and law.

112 Tafsir al-Kabir (The Large Commentary, also known as Mafatih al-Ghayb, Keys to the Unknown) is a classical Islamic Tafsir book, written by the well-known Persian theologian and philosopher Muhammad ibn Umar Fakhr al-Din al-Razi d. 606H (1149-1209). It is not unusual for contemporary works to use it as a reference.

113 Sahih Muslim, full title "Al-Musnadu Al-Sahihu bi Naklil Adli") is one of the Six major collections of the hadith in Sunni Islam, oral traditions relating to the words and deeds of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. It is the second most authentic hadith collection according to Sunni Muslims, the most authentic book of hadith after Sahih Al-Bukhari. It was collected by Muslim ibn al-Hajaj, also known as Imam Muslim(206-261 AH/.821-875 CE).

114 Musnad Ahmad ibn Hanbal is a collection of Hadith collected by the famous Sunni scholar Ahmad ibn Hanbal (164 - 241 AH) to whom the Hanbali School of Jurisprudence of Sunnis is attributed. It is said by some that Ibn Hanbal made a comment in regards to his book which read as follows: "There is not a hadith that I have included in this book except that it was used as evidence by some of the scholars."

115 an-ni'mah: The Grace of Allah. His Grace is an aspect of His Mercy (rahma). Ultimately every spiritual experience, every unveiling (kashf), every tasting (dhawq), every drinking (shurb) and every quenching (ri) is through Divine Grace. Without Allah's Grace man cannot do anything

116 al-fayd: Divine effusion or overflow or emanation. One of the ways of gaining knowledge is through the Divine effusion. It is a bestowal from Allah ﷺ to the heart of His perfect 'slave', the Perfect Man. The world itself remains in existence due to this overflowing of the lights of His Self-manifestation.

294
Endnotes


122 Ahmad bin Hambal: Fadail-us-Sahaba (2:262#1070)
123 Mufti Muhammad Khalil Khan Qadri is a great personality spiritually and in the literary field and the arena of oratory and writing. He was educated and groomed in the religious environment of the Sufi center of Barakatia Maarehra Shareef, the great Sufi center where Ala Hazrat Imam Ahmad Raza Khan, was initiated into the Qadri Sufi Order. Mufti Muhammad Khalil Khan Qadri penned a number of books on Islam. Some of his books are under study of religious scholars and masses in almost every country under the sun particularly 'Sunni Behishtee Zaiwar' (The Jewels of Paradise) which is a treasure of Islamic essentials and imperatives. This book 'Hamaaraa Islam' (Islam: The glorious religion) of Khaleel-e-Millat has been widely commended by the religious scholars in general and by the Sunni scholars in particular across the world. This is on the religious curriculum of many seminaries and schools in Pakistan and in India too. The Tanzeem-ul-Madaar Asle Sunnat Pakistan has included this book in the curriculum of all religious seminaries of Sunni creed operating in Pakistan. An organization of religious students of Pakistan (Anjumana Talbah-e-Islam) has also this book in its course of study to educate and train its members and supporters.

124 aqā'id or aqidah is a branch of Islamic studies regarding the beliefs associated with the Islamic faith.
125 People who follow the inner and outer dimensions of the tradition of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and the obedience and love of his Companions for him.
127 Sidna Shaykh was born in 1150/1735 in the blessed village of Ain Madhi at the Eastern Sahara into a Sayed family. According to the book of Shamail Sidna Shaykh’s lineage is a direct descendant of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ through Mawlana Zayn al-Abidin, the son of Mawlana Ahmed, the son of Mawlana Mohammed Nafs- Zakiya, the son of Mawlana Abdellah al-Kamil, the son of Mawlana al-Hasan al-Muthanna, the son of Mawlana al-Hasan, the son of Mawlana Ali ibn Abi Talib and the Lady of the Universe Fatima Zahra, the Daughter of the Prophet ﷺ. He became an orphan at the age of 15 when he applied himself to his studies. Having learned the Qur’an by heart at the early age of seven under the tutelage of Shaykh Abu Abdellah Sidi Mohammed ibn ‘Hammu Tijani, a proponent of the Nafi’ mode of recitation, he studied the fundamentals of Maliki jurisprudence with local righteous scholars such as Shaykh Sidi Aissa Bouakaz Tijani and Shaykh Sidi Ibn Bouafiya Tijani. Sidna Shaykh set himself the
task of seeking knowledge in the religious sciences and to become an icon in the discipline. He was noted for undertaking whatever he intended to do without backing out, perusing it to its logical conclusion. He then took the teaching and even gave legal opinions (fatwa) at a very tender age. He was also noted for strong adherence to the sunnah (tradition) of the Holy Prophet (peace and blessing be upon him) and for following its ethical code of conduct very strictly. He was also said to have restrained himself from indulging in what the people of his time were accustomed to and deemed permissible. He is reputed to have responded to questions very cautiously.

128 Muayyudddeen Ibn 'Arabī (ابن عربی) (July 28, 1165 - November 10, 1240) was an Andalusian Arab Sufi and philosopher. His full name was Abū 'Abdullāh Muhammad ibn 'Alī ibn Muhammad ibn al-'Arabī al-Haṭṭāmī al-Tā'ī (أبو عبدالله محمد بن علي بن محمد بن العربي الحامي الطائي). He died at the age of 76 on 22 Rabi' II 638 AH/November 10, 1240CE, and his tomb in Damascus is still an important place of pilgrimage.

129 Jalāl ad-Dīn Muhammad Rūmī (وجلال الدين محمد رومي) known to the English-speaking world simply as Rumi, (September 30, 1207–December 17, 1273), was a 13th century Persian Sufi, poet, jurist, and theologian. He wrote Masnavī-yi Manāvī ("Rhyming Couplets of Profound Spiritual Meaning"), a six-volume poem regarded by many Sufis as the manual of Tasawwuf. In fact, the Masnavī is often called the "Qur'aan-e Farsi" (The Persian Qur'aan). It is considered by many to be one of the greatest works of mystical poetry.

130 Shah Walīullah Muhaddith Dehlvi (February 21, 1703 - August 20, 1762) was an Islamic scholar and reformer. He worked for the revival of Muslim rule and intellectual learning in South Asia, during a time of waning Muslim power. Shah Walīullah urged Muslim rulers to a jihad against the enemies of Islam and hoped to restore the Ulama's former power and influence. He despised the divisions and deviations within Islam and its practice in India and hoped to "purify" the religion and unify all Indian Muslims under the "banner of truth". He is also thought to have anticipated a number of progressive, social, economic, and political ideas of the modern era such as social reform, equal rights, labour protection, welfare entitlement of all to food, clothing, housing, etc.

131 Kanz al-Ummal fi Sunan wal Aqwal wal Afwal, is the largest available unique collection of Ahadith/Athar by the Hanafi Imam: Ali ibn Husamud-Din al-Muttaqi al-Hindi, who died in the year 975 AH. It contains more than 46,000 narrations composed from many individual earlier collections. It is in essence a continuation of Imam al-Suyuti's Hadith collections, Jami al-Saghir, its Zawa'id and Jami al-Kabir (Jam al-Jawami). The Kanz was printed more than 100 years ago in Hyderabad, India.


134 The first of the great reformers, Sheikh Ahmad Sirhindī al-Farooqi an-Naqshbandī, was born in Sirhind on June 26, 1564. He belonged to a devout Muslim family that claimed descent from Hazrathth Umar Faruq. It was not until he was 36 years old that he went to Delhi and joined the Naqshbandi Silsila under the discipleship of Khwaja Baqi Billah.

135 Maktub Number 123
Endnotes

136 The Spiritual Treasure House whose fountainhead is Hazrath Ali is shared by Hazrath Fatimah, Imam Hasan, Imam Husayn as its direct recipients or legatees.

137 Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi, Maktubat (9:173#123)

138 In Malfoozat-e- Ala Hazrath by Imam Ahmad Raza Khan it is mentioned with reference to the Sheik Muhayuddin Ibne Arabi that there would be three Ghaus-ul Azam till the Day of Judgment. They would have their subordinate in each time that would be called as Ghaus. The first Ghaus-ul-Azam (Ghausiate- Kubra) is the Holy Prophet Muhammad. He had two ministers. One of them was Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique and second one was Hazrath Umar. After the Holy Prophet Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique was appointed the place of Ghaus and Hazrath Umar and Hazrath Uthman his ministers. After Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique Hazrath Umar was Ghaus of his time and Hazrath Uthman and Hazrath Ali were his ministers. After Hazrath Umar Hazrath Uthman became Ghaus and Hazrath Ali and his son Hazrath Hasan were his ministers. After him Hazrath Ali became Ghaus and Hazrath Hasan and Hazrath Husayn became his ministers. And so on. Then came the time of second Ghaus-ul-Azam, Hazrath Sheikh Abdul Qadir Jilaani. He will remain Ghaus-ul Azam till the time of Hazrath Imam Mahdi. During this period the subordinates of Hazrath Sheikh Abdul Qadir Jilaani will come continuously till the time of Imam Mahdi and Hazrath Imam Mahdi would be third and last Ghause Azam. Hazrath Sheikh Abdul Qadri Jilaani mentioned signs of Ghaus in his book Fatuh ul-Ghaib.

139 Tarikh al-Tabari or Tarikh al-Rusul wa al-Muluk. The first of the two large works, generally known as the Annals (Tarikh al-Tabari). This is a universal history from the time of Qur’aanic Descent to AD 915, and is renowned for its detail and accuracy concerning Muslim and Middle Eastern history. His second great work was the commentary on the Qur’aan, (Tafsir al-Tabari).

140 Hijra: Migration. Hijra is to leave one’s homeland in the Way Of Allah (fi sabillillah).

141 Sunnah: The profound Science Of Beautiful Moral Behaviour based upon the 'beautiful model' (uswa Hasana) of the Holy Prophet (s). Following the form of, and contemplating the meaning within, the Sunnah are the most profound ways in which man can prepare himself to receive Divine Knowledge.

142 Abu Da‘ud (817/888), full name Abu Da‘ud Sulayman ibn Ash‘ath al-Azadi al-Sijistani, was a noted Iranian collector of hadith (sayings/traditions of Muhammad), and wrote the third of the six canonical hadith collections recognized by Sunni Muslims, Sunan Abi Da‘ud. He was primarily interested in law, and as a result the collection by him focuses largely on legal ahadith. From about 50,000 ahadith, he chose 4,800 for inclusion in his work based on their superior authenticity.

143 "Al-Haafidh Shihabuddin Abu'l-Fadl Ahmad ibn Ali ibn Muhammad", better known as Ibn Hajar due to a fame of his forefathers, al-Asqalani due to his origin (أبن الحجار-Al-Haafidh Shihabuddin Abu'l-Fadl Ahmad ibn Ali ibn Muhammad), was a medieval Shafiite Sunni scholar of Islam who represents the entire realm of Sunni world in the field of Hadith.
Madinah to Karbala

145 Fath ul-Bari fi Sharh Sahih al-Bukhari or Fathul Bari [Grant of the Creator] is the most valued Sunni commentary of Sahih Bukhari, written by Ibn Hajar Asqalani in 18 volumes. It is reported that it took Asqalani 25 years to finish his work.

146 Muhammad ibn Ismail al-Bukhari (810-870) He traveled widely throughout the Abbasid empire, collecting traditions. He is said to have spent sixteen years writing down those traditions he thought trustworthy.

147 Abu Zakaria Mohiuddin Yahya Ibn Sharaf al-Nawawi (1233-1278) popularly known as al-Nawawi, an-Nawawi or Imam Nawawi (631 - 676 A.H. / 1255 - 1300 CE), was a Sunni Muslim author on fiqh and hadith.[2] His position on legal matters is considered the authoritative one in the Shafi'i Madhab. He was born at Nawa near Damascus, Syria. As with many Arabic and Semitic names, the last part of his name refers to his hometown.

148 The Ethiopians danced in front of the Messenger of Allah (s); dancing and saying [in their language], "Muhammad is a righteous servant." The Prophet (s) said, "What are they saying?" And they said, "Muhammad is a righteous servant" (Musnad al-Imam Ahmad. 6 vols. Cairo 1313/1895. Reprint. Beirut: Dar Sadir, n.d., 3.152) All the narrators are those of Bukhari except Hammad ibn Salama, who is one of the narrators of Muslim.

149 quoted from Ibn al-Husayn al-Sulami's Kitab al-Futuwwah (The Way of Sufi Chivalry). Ibn al-Husayan is a highly respected Sufi saint and scholar of the 10th century and the book is founded on very strong isnad (chain of authorities).

150 nisba: Relationship. Lordship is the relationship (nisba) of the "He-ness" to the entity. The "He-ness" (huwiyah) in itself does not require such a relationship, but it is the entities that
Endnotes

demand it. Allah has placed the Divine Names between Himself and the cosmos, and from this connection relationships (nisab) are formed. Each Name is a relationship, not an entity. Each existent thing has a specific relationship with one particular Divine Name. That Name will exert a stronger effect and a greater power over the existent thing than any of the other Names.

Armstrong Karen: Islam

157

Ibn Kathir in ‘The Beginning and the End’ (5:247) from the hadith of Imam Ahmad from Hamid b. ‘Abdu’r-Rahman b. ‘Awf az-Zuhri (the nephew of Hazrath Uthman ﷺ); ‘Asrul-Khilaafah ar-Raashidah, Al-Umaree

158

Ibn Khaldūn, (May 27, 1332 AD/732 AH – March 19, 1406 AD/808 AH) was a North African astronomer, economist, historian, Islamic scholar, Islamic theologian, hafiz, jurist, lawyer, mathematician, military strategist, nutritionist, philosopher, social scientist and statesman—born in North Africa in present-day Tunisia. He was of Arab or Berber descent. He is considered a forerunner of several social scientific disciplines He is best known for his Muqaddimah (known as Prolegomenon in the West), the first volume of his book on universal history, Kitab al-Ibar.

159

Al-Khilaafah ar-Raashidah, by al-Umaree, p.13

160

Al-Kasa’is al-Kubra - has the distinction of being the foremost work on the characteristics and miracles of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ excerpts from it are to be found in the works on Sirah by eminent Imams and Ulama.

161

Imam Jalaluddin al-Suyuti (c. 1445-1505 AD) was an Egyptian writer and teacher whose works deal with a wide variety of subjects in Islamic theology. Tafsir al-Jalalayn (Tafsir of the twin Jalaals) is a classical Sunni tafsir of the Qur’aan, composed first by Jalal ad-Din al-Mahalli d. 864H and then completed by his student Jalal ad-Din as-Suyuti d. 911H, thus its name. It is recognized as one of the most popular exegeses of the Qur’aan today, due to its simple style and its conciseness: It being only one volume in length

162

Abu Abdullah Muhammad ibn Umar ibn al-Husayn al-Taymi al-Bakri al-Tabaristani Fakhr al-Din al-Razi or Fakhruddin Razi was a well-known Persian Sunni Muslim theologian and philosopher. He was born in 1149/ 543AH in Ray of Persia (today located in Iran) to a family tracing its lineage to the first Muslim Caliph, Abu Bakr ﷺ, and died in 1209/ 606AH in Herat (today located in Afghanistan). He also wrote on medicines, physics, astrology, literature, history and law.

163

al-Kasa’is al-Kubra - has the distinction of being the foremost work on the characteristics and miracles of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ excerpts from it are to be found in the works on Sirah by eminent Imams and Ulama.

164

1

الکاسی الکبر، دمشق تاریخ عسکری، ابن عساکر، تاریخ دمشق الكبير، 30 : 436

2

493، حلبی، السيرة الحلبیة، 3 : 1
Madinah to Karbala

or aqidah, is a branch of Islamic studies regarding the beliefs associated with the Islamic faith.

Tasarruf: Free Disposal or Dispensing. This is spiritual interference by bringing events to pass through directing his spiritual energy towards the sphere of possibilities. Acting in his capacity as khalifatullah fil ard.

This hadith is reproduced in the revised translation of the Urdu book Faza'il-e-Namaaz by Shaikhul Hadith Maulana Muhammad Zakariyya Kaandhla wi; translated by Abdul Rashid Arshad. Part One (a) Importance of Salaah, Page 31

Some scholars claim the author of this work is Zayn al-Qudat Ahmad ibn Muhammad al-Hijji or al-Hajri or Hujuri as found in the catalogue of Arabic manuscripts of the library of Sarajevo (Number 334) and as referenced by Hajji Khalifa in Kashf al-Zunun (2:1848), while other manuscripts attribute it to Ibn Hajar al-Haytami or leave the author unmentioned is 171 Fawa'id Al-Fu'ad; The Fifth Fascicle, Assemby 5 Wednesday, 28 Shawaal, A.H. 719. I have consulted the text on p.333 of the English Translation by Bruce B. Lawrence Published by Paulist Press, 997 Macarthur Boulevards, Mahwah, New Jersey and the Urdu, printed in 1992, Label Art Press, Manzur Book Depot, Bulbul Khana, Delhi

Sama: The spiritual concert or audition or listening. This refers specifically to the Sufi gatherings where music and song are employed as a means of opening the heart to inrushes (waridat) of knowledge and awareness. During the Sama the listener may experience ecstasy (wajd) and find Allah, the Real (al-Haqq) within that ecstasy. However, before true ecstasy can be experienced the listener must be spiritually mature, having been prepared through dhikrullah, mujahadah, riyada. Without this initial contraction (qabd) of spiritual endeavour the expansion (bast) of ecstasy will not be real. True Sama' is a bird which flies from Allah to Allah. Allah is the singer and Allah is the hearer. At this Divine Feast the singer and hearer become one.

Ab'ul Hasan Yamīn al-Dīn Khusrow (1253-1325 CE) better known as Amīr Khusrow an Indian musician, scholar and poet. He was an iconic figure in the cultural history of the Indian subcontinent. A Sufi dervish and a spiritual disciple of Nizamuddin Auliya of Delhi, Amīr Khusrow was not only a notable poet but also a prolific and seminal musician. He wrote poetry primarily in Persian, but also in Hindavi. He is regarded as the "father of qawwali" (the devotional music of the Indian Sufis). He is also credited with enriching Hindustani classical music by introducing Persian and Arabic elements in it. The invention of the tabla is also traditionally attributed to Amīr Khusrow. Amir Khusrow used only 11 metrical schemes with 35 distinct divisions. He has written Ghazal, Masnavi, Qata, Rubai, Do-Beti and Tarkibhand.

Ibn Ishaq was an Arab Muslim historian and biographer. He collected oral traditions that formed the basis of the first biography of the Islamic prophet Muhammad. This biography is usually called Sirat Rasul Allah ("Life of God's Messenger"). The original text of the Sīrat Rasūl Allāh by Ibn Ishaq is unavailable. However, much of it was copied over into a work of his own by Ibn Hisham (Basra - Fustat, 218 A.H.). Ibn Hisham also "abbreviated, annotated, and sometimes altered" the text of Ibn Ishaq
Endnotes


177 178 Qadi Iyad bin Musa (القاضي عياض بن موسى) born 1083 in Gibraltar, Spain - 1149) was the great imam of Ceuta, a city of Spain located on the North African side of the Strait of Gibraltar and, later, a high judge (Qadi) in Granada. He was one of the most famous scholars of Maliki Jurisprudence. He is also well known as one of the seven saints of Marrakech, Morrocco and is buried near Bab Ailen

179 Kitab Ash-shifa’ bi Ta’rif Huquq al-Mustafa, (كتاب الشفاء بتعرف حقوق المختار), Healing by the recognition of the Rights of the Chosen one, of Qadi ‘Iyad (d. 544H / 1149CE) is perhaps the most frequently used and commented upon handbook in which Muhammad’s life, his qualities and his miracles are described in every detail. Generally known by its short title, Ash-Shifa, this work was so highly admired throughout the Muslim world that it soon acquired a sanctity of its own for it is said: “If Ash-Shifa is found in a house, this house will not suffer any harm...when a sick person reads it or it is recited to him, Allah will, restore his health.”

180 Ash-Shifa, Qadi Iyad, Translated by Ayesha Bewley, Second Edition 1992, Page 188

181 Al-Mustadrak alaa al-Sahihain or Mustadrak al-Hakim (المستدرك على الصحيحين )) is a five volume hadith collection written by Hakim al-Nishaburi d. 405H.

182 al-Mas’udi (أبو الحسن علي بن الحسين بن علي المسعدي [896/ 956 CE] Abu al-Hasan Ali ibn al-Husayn ibn Ali al-. was an Arab historian and geographer, known as the “Herodotus of the Arabs.” He was one of the first to combine history and scientific geography in a large-scale work, Muruj adh-dhahab wa ma’adin al-jawhar (The Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gems), a world history


184 Abbas Mahmud al-Aqqad (عباس عميد العقد) (June 28, 1889–March 12, 1964) was an Egyptian writer. He wrote more than 100 books about philosophy, religion, and poetry. He died in 1964 in Cairo. His most famous works were al-Abkariat, Allah, and Sarah.

185 Shah Waliullah Muhaddith Dehlvi (February 21, 1703 - August 20, 1762) was an Islamic scholar and reformer. He worked for the revival of Muslim rule and intellectual learning in South Asia, during a time of waning Muslim power. Shah Waliullah urged Muslim rulers to a
Madinah to Karbala

jihad against the enemies of Islam and hoped to restore the Ulama's former power and influence. He despised the divisions and deviations within Islam and its practice in India and hoped to “purify” the religion and unify all Indian Muslims under the “banner of truth”. He is also thought to have anticipated a number of progressive, social, economic, and political ideas of the modern era such as social reform, equal rights, labour protection, welfare entitlement of all to food, clothing, housing, etc.

Izalat al-Khafa’an Khilafat al-Khulfa (Removal of Ambiguity about the Caliphate of the Early Caliphs) is a book by the Islamic scholar Shah Waliullah in Persian. In the Islamic tradition perhaps only a few works are as remarkable for having so comprehensively and systematically expounded the normative model of the Khilafat (Caliphate).

Jalal ad-Din Muhammad Rumi (known to the English-speaking world simply as Rumi, (September 30, 1207–December 17, 1273), was a 13th century Persian Sufi, poet, jurist, and theologian. He wrote Masnavi-ye Manavi ("Rhyming Couplets of Profound Spiritual Meaning."), a six-volume poem regarded by many Sufis as the manual of Tasawwuf. In fact, the Masnavi is often called the "Qur’aane Farsi" (The Persian Qur’aan). It is considered by many to be one of the greatest works of mystical poetry.

Masnavi-I Ma’navi or Mathnavi (meaning ‘Rhyming Couplets of Profound Spiritual Meaning’); an extensive poem written in Persian by Jalal al-Din Muhammad Rumi, the celebrated Persian Sufi saint and poet. It is one of the best known and most influential works of both Sufism and Persian literature. The Masnavi is a series of six books of poetry that amount to about 25,000 verses or 50,000 lines. It is a spiritual writing that teaches Sufis how to reach their goal of being in union with God.

Abu Isa Muhammad ibn Surat ibn Musa ibn ad-Dahhak as-Sulami at-Tirmidhi (824-892, i.e. 209 AH - 13 Rajab 279 AH) was a collector of hadith. He was born and died in Bâgh (meaning ‘Garden’), a suburb of Termez (Tirmidh), Khurasan - Persia, in present day Uzbekistan. He wrote the Sunan al-Tirmidhi, one of the six canonical hadith compilations used in Sunni Islam. Starting at the age of twenty, he traveled widely, to Kufa, Basra and the Hijaz, seeking out knowledge from, among others, Qutaiba ibn Said, Bukhari, Imam Muslim and Abu Dawud. Tirmidhi was blind in the last two years of his life. Tirmidhi is buried in Sherobod, 60 kilometers north of Termez. He is locally know as Iso At Termizi or Termiz Ota (Father of Termez City).

all the reports and narrations that he could gather for each particular passage. Unlike Al-Tabari, Imam Suyuti completely avoids penning down his personal opinions in the Tafsir nor did he make any private interpretation over any passage of the Qur’an. He, however, did that in his other Tafsir work, known as Tafsir al-Jalalayn, which he compiled together with his teacher, al-Mahally.

Imam ash-Shawkani: Muhammad ash-Shawkani (1759-1834 C.E/ 1250 AH) was a Yemeni scholar of Islam. Born into a Zaydi Shi’a Muslim family, ash-Shawkani later on adopted the Salafi ideology within Sunni Islam and called for a return to the textual sources of the Qur’an and hadith. He viewed himself as a mujtahid, or authority to whom others in the Muslim community had to defer in details of religious law.

Sunnah: The profound Science Of Beautiful Moral Behaviour based upon the ‘beautiful model’ (uswa Hasana) of the Holy Prophet (sallallahu alaihi wa sallam). Following the form of, and contemplating the meaning within, the Sunnah are the most profound ways in which man can prepare himself to receive Divine Knowledge.

Walima (ﻭﻟﻴﻤﺔ), or the marriage banquet, is one of the two traditional parts of an Islamic wedding. The walima is performed after the nikah, or marriage ceremony. The word walima is derived from walam, meaning to gather or assemble. It designates a feast in classical Arabic
Madinah to Karbala


History of Ibn Asakir

204 1. Hakim, al-Mustadrak (3:170#4740)
2. Ibn Hibban, as-Sahih (2:470,471#696)
3. Haythami, Mawarid-uz-zaman (p.631#2540)

205 1. Hakim, al-Mustadrak (3:170#4740)
2. Ibn Hibban, as-Sahih (2:470,471#696)
3. Haythami, Mawarid-uz-zaman (p.631#2540)

206 Bukhari Hadith 5.520 narrated by Salama; 5.521 narrated by Sahl bin Sad; 4.192

207 Abu Abd-Allah Muhammad ibn Abd-Allah al-Hakim al-N ishaburi (d. 403 AH) gained substantial reputation for writing Al-Mustadrak alaa al-Sahihain and Mustadrak al-Hakim. Al-Haakim started writing 'Mustadrak' in the year when he was 72 years old. Al-Hakim is quoted to have said: "I drank water from Zamzam and asked Allah /jalla for excellence in writing books".

208 Malik ibn Anas ibn Maalik ibn 'Āmr al-Asbahi (c. 711 - 795) (93 AH - 179 A.H. ) is known as "Imam Maalik," the "Shaykh of Islam," the "Proof of the Community," and "Imam of the Abode of Emigration." He was one of the most highly respected scholars of fiqh in Sunni Islam. Imam Shafi, who was one of Imam Maalik 's students for nine years and a scholarly giant in his own right, stated, "When scholars are mentioned, Maalik is like the star among them." The Maliki Madhab, named after Maalik, is one of the four schools of jurisprudence that remains popular among Muslims to this day.

209 The Muwatta (ﺍﳌﻮﻃﺄ) is an early statement of Muslim law, compiled and edited by Imam Malik. It is considered the earliest extant source of hadith, the traditions of the Prophet Muhammad that form the basis of Islamic jurisprudence alongside the Qur’an. Nonetheless it is not properly speaking a collection of hadith; many of the legal precepts it contains are based not on hadith at all. The book covers rituals, rites, customs, traditions, norms and laws of the time of the Prophet Muhammad. Much of the book pertains to areas which are not properly "legal" in the western sense, such as Hajj, sacrifice, intercourse etc. This makes it valuable beyond law, for studying historical sociology of the Arabs, for example.

210 Al-Nasa'i(214  – 303 AH/ ca. 829  – 915 AD/CE), full name Ahmad ibn Shu’ayb ibn Ali ibn Sinaan Abu ’Abd ar-Rahmaan al-Nasa’i: He was born in Nas’a, in Khorasan. was a noted collector of hadith (sayings of Muhammad), and wrote one of the six canonical hadith collections recognized by Sunni Muslims, Sunan al-Sughra, or "Al-Mujtaba", which he selected from his "As-Sunan al-Kubra". As well as 15 other books, 6 dealing with the science of hadith.

211 Abu al-Qasim Sulaiman ibn Ahmad ibn Al-Tabarani born 260 AH (821 CE) and lived, according to the sources, until 360 AH (918 CE). He narrated numerous ahadeeth. Amongst his students Ahmad bin ’Amr bin ’Abdul-Khalqi Al-Basri or Abu Bakr Al-Bazzar.

Ahmed ibn Hanbal (‘حﻨﺒﻞ ﺑﻦ ﺃﲪﺪ’ Ahmad bin Hanbal) (780 - 855 CE, 164 - 241 AH) was an important Muslim scholar and theologian born in Khorassan to a family of Arab origin. He is considered the founder of the Hanbali school of fiqh (Islamic jurisprudence). His full name was Ahmad bin Muhammad bin Hanbal Abu ‘Abd Allah al-Shaybani. Shayban or Banu Shaybah is Ibn Hanbal's tribe. It is an Arabic tribe located in Arabia and it still exists in Arabia (أحمد بن محمد بن حنبل جوهرة شعبان).

Abul Husayn Muslim ibn al-Hajjaj Qushayri al-Nishapurī (‘بﻮﺭﻱﺍﻟﻨﻴﺸﺎ ﺍﻟﻘﺸﲑﻱ ﺍﳊﺠﺎﺝ ﻣﺴﻠﻢ ﺍﳊﺴﲔ ﺍﺑﻮ’ Abul Husayn Muslim ibn al-Hajjaj Qushayri al-Nishapurī (lived c. 206-261 AH/c.821-875 CE), Muslim Author of the second most widely recognized collection of Hadith in Sunni Islam, "Sahih Muslim", "Muslim’s authentic (collection)".

Ahmad, Musnad and Muslim Sahih, Also al-Hakim, ibn Hibban, al-Darimi, al-Bazzar, and al-Tabrani.

Ghadir Al-Khumm (‘ﺍﳋﻢ ﻏﺪﻳﺮ’ Pond of Khumm’) which is a a natural lake near Haggag, some 35 km inland, fringed with Phragmite reeds and fed by several permanent freshwater springs provides a natural wetland unique on the Tihmah north of Jeddah. It is a Valley or Wadi Rabigh extending along the border of Madinah and Makkah.

nisbah: Relationship

Family of the Blessed House of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, which included the Blessed Five and all the wives of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.


Khatīb Baghdādī related it in Tārīkh Baghdad (8:290); Wāhidī, ʿAṣāb-un-nuzūl (p.108); Rāzī, at-Tafsīr-ulkabīr (11:139); Ibn ‘Aṣākir, Tārīkh Dimashq al-kabīr (45:176,177); Ibn Kathīr, al-Bidāyah wan-nihāyah (5:464); and Tabarānī in al-Mu’jam-ul-awsat (3:324#).

Ibn ‘Aṣākir narrated it through Abū Sa’īd al-Khudrī in Tārīkh Dimashq al-kabīr (45:179)

Abd al-Rauf Muhammad al-Manawi (b. AH 952 / AD 1545; d. AH 1031 / AD 1621) was an Ottoman period Islamic scholar of Cairo, known for his works on the early history of Islam and the history of Sufism in Egypt. He was a disciple of al-Sharani. His Faḍl al-Qadir Sharh al-Jami’ al-Saghir is a commentary on the Jami by Imam al-Suyuti.

al-Khulafa’ ur-Rāshidūn (The Righteous Caliphs) is a term used in Sunni Islam to refer to the first four Caliphs who formulated the Rashidun Caliphate. The concept of "Rightly Guided Caliphs" originated with the Abbasid Dynasty. It is a reference to the Sunni tradition,
"Hold firmly to my example (sunnah) and that of the Rightly Guided Califhs" (Ibn Majah, Abu Dawud).

Al-Muhibb At-Tabari, Muhibbu 'sd-Din, Abu '1- 'Abbas, Ahmad ibn 'Abdillah ash-Shafi'I (615/1218—694/1295): Dhakha'iru 'l-'uqba (fi manaqibi dhawi 'l-qurba), Beirut, 1974.

Ibn Hajar Haythami al-Makki was a Sunni Muslim Shafi'i scholar, born in 909 AH (1503CE). A brilliant scholar of in-depth applications of Sacred Law, and with al-Imām Ahmad al-Ramlī, represents the foremost resource for jāfata (legal opinion) for the entire late Shafi'i School. He authored major works in Shafi'i jurisprudence, hadith, tenets of faith, education, hadith commentary, and formal legal opinion. His most famous works include Tuhfah al-muhtāj bi sharh al-Minhāj, a commentary on al-Imām al-Nawawī’s Minhāj al-tālibin whose ten volumes represent a high point in Shafi'i scholarship; the four volume al-Fatāwā al-kubrā al-fiqhiyyah; and al-Zawājir an iqtirāf al-kabārīr, which with its detailed presentation of Qurān and Hadith evidence and masterful legal inferences, remains unique among Muslim works dealing with taqwa (God-fearingness) and is even recognized by Hanafi scholars like al-Imām Ibn Ḥibbān as a source of authoritative legal texts valid in their own school. After a lifetime of outstanding scholarship, the Imām died and was buried in Makkah in 974 AH.

Al-Sawa‘iq al-Muhriqah (Loud/Frightening Lightning) is a book written by the Ibn Hajar Al-Haytami, it covers many areas such as how to send greetings upon the Holy Prophet Muhammad /salla1 and the role of Shiaism in Islam. It is deeply critical against Shi’ites as a sect and their views and beliefs.


Al-Arsh- The Divine Throne of Allah /jalla/: It is the heart of the Lover of Allah /jalla/ and around it spiritual realities circle.

Also known as Abu Yazid Bistami or Tayfūr Abu Yazid al-Bustamī, (804-874 CE) was a Persian Sufi born in Bastam, Iran. Bistami’s predecessor Dhu’l-Nun al-Misri (d. CE 859) had formulated the doctrine of ma’rifa (gnosis), presenting a system which helped the murid (initiate) and the Shaykh (guide) to communicate. Bayazid Bastami took this another step and emphasized the importance of ecstasy, referred to in his words as drunkenness (sukr or wajd), a means of annihilation in the Divine Presence. Before him, Sufism was mainly based on piety and obedience and he played a major role in placing the concept of divine love at the core of Sufism. When Bayazid died, he was over seventy years old. Before he died, someone asked him his age.
He said: I am four years old. For seventy years I was veiled. I got rid of my veils only four years ago.”

234 Imam Abu Ja`far Ahmad ibn Muhammad al-Azdi, known as Imam Tahawi after his birthplace in Egypt, is among the most outstanding authorities of the Islamic world on hadith and jurisprudence (fiqh). He lived at a time when both the direct and indirect disciples of the Four Imams of law were teaching and practicing. This period was the greatest age of Hadith and fiqh studies, and Imam Tahawi studied with all the living authorities of the day.

235 Asma bint Umais ibn Ma`bad ibn al Haarith (س Scrolls unebنت اعمس) from the Banu Hashim tribe was a Sahabi who lies buried in Baab Sagheer cemetery, Damascus, Syria. She is probably the only Sahabia ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس) who has this unique honour of being the wife of three different Sahaba ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس) at three different times viz. Hazrath Ja`far ibn Abu Talib ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس) till his martyrdom in Ghazwa-e-Mauta in 8 AH. Then Hazrath Abu Bakr Siddique ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس) till his death in 13 Hijri. When married to Abu Bakr ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس), she was expecting their child but did not want to miss the last and only pilgrimage, of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس) even though her delivery was near and so she decided to accompany her husband. On one of the stops along the pilgrimage route, Asma gave birth to their son who they named Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس). Both Muhammad ibn Abu Bakr ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس) and Umm Kulthum bint Abu Bakr ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس) went to live with Hazrath Ali ( Scrolls unebنت اعمس).

236 Bukhari: 1.568 narrated by ibn Abu Malih. 1.527 narrated by ibn Umar and 1.528 narrated by Abu al-Mahh.

238 Mimpdrk lillahham, 3: 126 – 127. رح: 1106
239 Mimmim zurah, 9: 114.

238 The essence of man the nucleus of the soul

239 Bukhari: 1.568 narrated by ibn Abu Malih. 1.527 narrated by ibn Umar and 1.528 narrated by Abu al-Mahh.

240 Basirah: Insight. Basirah is the inner eye that perceives the World Of The Unseen. Man’s basirah is veiled and covered with rust (rayn) that can only be removed through the sincere practicing of the Remembrance Of Allah (zikrullah). Insight is one of the forms of the inward knowledge of reality.


Madinah to Karbala

* Cf. Prof. Dr. Muhammad Tahir-ul-Qadri, Real Islamic Faith and the Prophet’s Stature.

This hadith is found in Sahih al-Bukhārī (3199, 7424). Its text, as related by Abû Dharr al-Ghifârî, is as follows: The Prophet ﷺ said to me: “O Abû Dharr! Do you know where the Sun goes when it sets?”

I said: “Allah ﻋﻠﻴﻪ and His Messenger ﷺ know best.” He said: “It goes until it prostrates beneath the Throne. Then it seeks permission and permission is granted to it. Soon it will prostrate and it will not be accepted from it, and seek permission and will not be granted permission. It will be said to it: ‘Go back where you came from.’ Then it will rise from its setting place. This is Allah ﻋﻠﻴﻪ’s statement: ‘And the Sun runs on to its place of settlement. That is the determination of the Mighty the Knowing. [Sûrah YâSîn: 38].’” It is also found in Sahîh Muslim, Book 1: The Book of Faith (Kitâb Al-Iman) Chapter 73: Description of the Period in Which Iman Would Not Be Acceptable to Allah ﻋﻠﻴﻪ. Its text is similar and also related by Abû Dharr al-Ghifârî ﷺ.

Ash-Shifa, Qadi Iyad, Translated by Ayesha Bewley, Second Edition 1992, Page 188

Imaam Fakhr al-Din al-Razi Abu Abdullah Muhammad ibn Umar ibn al-Husayn al-Ta’imî al-Bakri al-Tabaristani Fakhr al-Din al-Razî ﷺ was a well-known Persian Sunni Muslim theologian and philosopher. He was born in 1149/ 543AH in Ray of Persia (today located in Iran) to a family tracing its lineage to the first Muslim Caliph, Abu Bakr ﷺ, and died in 1209/ 606AH in Herat (today located in Afghanistan). He also wrote on medicines, physics, astrology, literature, history, and law.

Tafsir al-Kabîr (The Large Commentary, also known as Mafâtîh al-Ghayb, Keys to the Unknown) is a classical Islamic Tafsir book, written by the well-known Persian theologian and philosopher Muhammad ibn Umar Fakhr al-Din al-Razi d. 606H (1149-1209). It is not unusual for contemporary works to use it as a reference.

Jalaluddin Al-Suyuti ﷺ (849 AH /1445–1505 CE) also known as Ibn al-Kutub (son of books) was an Egyptian writer, religious scholar, juristic expert and teacher whose works deal with a wide variety of subjects in Islamic theology. He was gifted and was already a teacher in 1462. In 1486, he was appointed to a chair in the mosque of Baybars in Cairo. He adhered to the Shafi’i Madhab and is one of the latter-day authorities of the Shafi’i School, considered to be one of the Ashabun-Nazzar (Assessors) whose degree of Ijtihad is agreed upon.

Dur al-Manthur (Full title of the book is Ad-Durr Al-Manthur Fi Tafsir Bil-Ma’thur; “The Scattered Pearls; Intertextual Exegesis) is an authoritative Sunni tafsir (classical scholarly exegesis of the Qur’aan), written by the prominent Imam Jalal al-Din al- Suyuti d. 911H. The exegesis explains each passage of the Qur’aan by the reports and narrations from the Prophet, his Companions and the immediate generations following the Companions. Imam Suyuti compiled all the reports and narrations that he could gather for each particular passage. Unlike Al-Tabari, Imam Suyuti completely avoids penning down his personal opinions in the Tafsir nor did he make any private interpretation over any passage of the Quran. He, however, did that in his other Tafsir work, known as Tafsir al-Jalalain (which he compiled together with his teacher, al-Mahallīy).